

SIMPLY CLEVER

ŠKODA



ŠKODA Superb Owner's Manual



Layout of this Owner's Manual (explanations)

This Owner's Manual has been systematically designed to make it easy for you to search for and obtain the information you require.

Chapters, table of contents and subject index

The text of the Owner's manual is divided into relatively short sections which are combined into easy-to-read **chapters**. The chapter you are reading at any particular moment is always specified on the bottom right of the page.

The **Table of contents** is arranged according to the chapters and the detailed **Subject index** at the end of the Owner's Manual helps you to rapidly find the information you are looking for.








Direction indications

All direction indications such as "left", "right", "front", "rear" relate to the direction of travel of the vehicle.

Units of measurement

All values are expressed in metric units.

Explanation of symbols

-  Denotes a reference to a section with important information and safety advice in a chapter.
-  Denotes the end of a section.
-  Denotes the continuation of a section on the next page.
-  Indicates situations where the vehicle must be stopped as soon as possible.
-  Denotes a registered trademark.
-  Indicates the texts displayed in the MAXI DOT screen.
-  Indicates the texts shown in the segment display.

Display

In this owner's manual, the screen on the MAXI DOT display is used as the display illustration, provided it is not otherwise stated.

Notes

WARNING

The most important notes are marked with the heading **WARNING**. These **WARNING** notes draw your attention to a **serious risk of accident or injury**.

CAUTION

A **Caution** note draws your attention to the possibility of damage to your vehicle (e.g. damage to gearbox), or points out general risks of an accident.

For the sake of the environment

An **Environmental** note draws your attention to environmental protection aspects. This is where you will, for example, find tips aimed at reducing your fuel consumption.

Note

A normal **Note** draws your attention to important information about the operation of your vehicle.



Preface

You have opted for a ŠKODA – our sincere thanks for your confidence in us.

You have received a vehicle with the latest technology and range of amenities. Please read this Owner's Manual carefully, because the operation in accordance with these instructions is a prerequisite for proper use of the vehicle.

If you have any questions about your vehicle, please contact a ŠKODA Partner.

We hope you enjoy driving your ŠKODA, and wish you a pleasant journey at all times.

Your ŠKODA AUTO a.s. (hereinafter referred to only as ŠKODA or manufacturer) ▶

Terms used

The on-board literature contains the following terms relating to the service work for your vehicle.

- ▶ "Specialist garage" - a workshop that carries out specialist service tasks for ŠKODA vehicles. A specialist garage can be a ŠKODA partner, a ŠKODA service partner or an independent workshop.
- ▶ "ŠKODA service partner" - A Workshop that has been contractually authorized by the manufacturer ŠKODA AUTO a.s. or its sales partner to perform service tasks on ŠKODA vehicles and to sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.
- ▶ "ŠKODA partner" - A company that has been authorized by the manufacturer ŠKODA AUTO a.s. or its sales partner to sell new ŠKODA vehicles and, when applicable, to service them using ŠKODA Genuine Parts and sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

Owner's Manual

These operating instructions apply to all **body variants** of the vehicle and all related **models**.

The manual describes **all possible equipment variants** without identifying them as special equipment, model variants or market-dependent equipment.

Consequently, this vehicle **does not necessarily contain all of the equipment components** described in this Owner's Manual.

The scope of equipment on your vehicle depends on your purchase contract for the vehicle. More information is available from the ŠKODA Partner from whom you bought the vehicle.

The **illustrations** can differ in minor details from your vehicle; they are only intended for general information.

Supplementary Information (applies to Russia)

The full licence number of the means of transport is indicated in the registration documents.

Table of Contents

Abbreviations

Safety

Passive Safety	6
General information	6
Correct and safe seated position	7
Seat belts	10
Using seat belts	10
Inertia reels and belt tensioners	13
Airbag system	14
Description of the airbag system	14
Airbag overview	15
Deactivating airbags	19
Transporting children safely	21
Child seat	21
Fastening systems	23
Operation	
Cockpit	27
Overview	26
Instruments and Indicator Lights	28
Instrument cluster	28
Warning lights	32
Information system	39
Driver information system	39
Multifunction display (MFD)	41
MAXI DOT display	44
Service interval display	46
Unlocking and opening	48
Unlocking and locking	48
Anti-theft alarm system	54
Luggage compartment lid	55

Electric boot lid (Superb Combi)	57
Electric power windows	59
Electric sliding/tilting roof	62
Panoramic sliding/tilting roof (Superb Estate)	63

Lights and visibility	65
Lights	65
Interior lights	71
Visibility	73
Windscreen wipers and washers	75
Rear mirror	77
Seats and useful equipment	79
Adjusting the seats	79
Seat features	83
Practical equipment	86
Luggage compartment	95
Removable light (Superb Combi)	101
Variable loading floor in the luggage compartment (Estate)	102
Extending variable loading floor with integrated aluminium rails and fastening elements (Superb Combi)	103
Net partition (Superb Combi)	105
Roof rack system	106
Air conditioning system	108
Heating, ventilation, cooling	108
Air conditioning system (manual air conditioning system)	110
Climatronic (automatic air conditioning system)	113
Auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation)	116
Communication and multimedia	119
General information	119
Universal telephone preinstallation GSM II	122
Universal telephone preinstallation GSM III	124
WLAN	127

Voice control	129
Multimedia	131

Driving

Starting-off and Driving	135
Starting and stopping the engine using the key	135
Starting and stopping the engine - KESSY	137
Brakes	140
Manual gear changing and pedals	141
Automatic gearbox	142
Running in	145
Economical driving and environmental sustainability	146
Avoiding damage to your vehicle	149
Driving abroad	150
Assist systems	151
Brake assist systems	151
Parking aid	153
Park assist	154
Cruise Control System	158
START-STOP	159
Fatigue detection (break recommendation)	162
Towing a trailer	163
Towing device	163
Trailer	166

General Maintenance

Car care	169
Services, modifications, and technical alterations	169
Washing your car	172
Taking care of your vehicle exterior	173
Taking care of the interior	176

Inspecting and replenishing	179
Fuel	179
Engine compartment	182
Engine oil	185
Coolant	187
Brake fluid	189
Vehicle battery	189
Wheels	193
Tyres and wheel rims	193
Winter operation	198

Do-it-yourself

Emergency equipment and self-help	200
Emergency equipment	200
Changing a wheel	201
Tyre repair	204
Jump-starting	207
Towing the vehicle	208
Radio remote control	210
Emergency unlocking/locking	212
Emergency operation of the sliding/tilting roof	213
Replacing windscreen wiper blades	214
Fuses and light bulbs	215
Fuses	215
Bulbs	219

Technical data

Technical data	224
Vehicle data	224

Index

Abbreviations

Abbreviation	Definition
rpm	Engine revolutions per minute
ABS	Anti-lock brake system
AF	Multi-purpose vehicles
AHL	Adaptive headlights
AG	Automatic gearbox
APN	Access Point Name - the name of an access point for the Wi-Fi network
TCS	Traction control
CO ₂ in g/km	discharged quantity of carbon dioxide in grams per driven kilometer
DPF	Diesel particle filter
DSG	Automatic double clutch gearbox
DSR	Active driver-steering recommendation
EDL	Electronic differential lock
ECE	Economic Commission for Europe
EPC	EPC fault light
ESC	Electronic Stability Control
EU	European Union
FSI	Stratified petrol direct injection
GSM	Groupe Spécial Mobile - a digital network of mobile devices for the transmission of voice and data
HFP	Hands-free profile - connection of a mobile device by means of its Bluetooth® profile
kW	Kilowatt, measuring unit for the engine output
MG	Manual gearbox
MFD	Multifunction display
N1	Panel van intended exclusively or mainly for the transportation of goods
Nm	Newton meter, measuring unit for the engine torque

Abbreviation	Definition
PIN	Personal Identification Number - personal identification number for the connection of electronic devices using Bluetooth® or WiFi
rSAP	Remote SIM Access Profile - remote transmission of SIM data
SSP	Simple Security Pairing - connection of two devices using Bluetooth® profile
TDI CR	Diesel engine with turbocharging and common rail injection system
TDI PD	Diesel engine with injection system and unit injector injection system
TSA	Trailer stabilisation
TSI	Petrol engine with turbocharging and direct injection
UMTS	Universal Mobile Telecommunication System - the next evolution of the GSM network (3G)
WLAN	Wireless Local Area Network - wireless connection of electronic devices for data transfer (WiFi)

Safety

Passive Safety

General information

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Before setting off _____	6
Driving safety _____	6
Safety equipment _____	6

In this section you will find important information, tips and notes on the subject of passive safety in your vehicle.

We have combined everything here which you should be familiar with, for example, regarding seat belts, airbags, child seats and safety of children.

WARNING

- This chapter contains important information on how to use the vehicle for the driver and his occupants.
- You can find further information on safety concerning you and those travelling with you in the following chapters of this owner's manual.
- The complete on-board literature should always be in the vehicle. This applies in particular, if you rent out or sell the vehicle.

Before setting off

 **Read and observe  on page 6 first.**

For your own safety and the safety of the people travelling with you, please pay attention to the following points before setting off.

- ✓ Ensure that the lighting and the turn signal system are functioning properly.
- ✓ Ensure that the function of the wiper and the condition of the wiper blades are free of any defects.
- ✓ Ensure that all of the windows offer good visibility to the outside.
- ✓ Adjust the rear-view mirror so that vision to the rear is guaranteed.
- ✓ Ensure that the mirrors are not covered.

- ✓ Check the tyre inflation pressure.
- ✓ Check the engine oil, brake fluid and coolant level.
- ✓ Secure all items of luggage.
- ✓ Do not exceed the permissible axle loads and permissible gross weight of the vehicle.
- ✓ Close all doors as well as the bonnet and boot lid.
- ✓ Ensure that no objects can obstruct the pedals.
- ✓ Protect children in suitable child seats with correctly fastened seat belts » [page 21, Transporting children safely](#).
- ✓ Adopt the correct seated position » [page 7, Correct and safe seated position](#). Tell your passengers to assume the correct seated position.

Driving safety

 **Read and observe  on page 6 first.**

The driver is fully responsible for himself and his occupants. If your driving safety is effected, you place yourself and the oncoming traffic at risk.

The following guidelines must therefore be observed.

- ✓ Do not become distracted from concentrating on the traffic situation, e.g. by your passengers or mobile phone calls.
- ✓ Never drive when your driving ability is impaired, e.g. due to medication, alcohol or drugs.
- ✓ Keep to the traffic regulations and the permissible speed limit.
- ✓ Always adjust the driving speed to the road, traffic and weather conditions.
- ✓ Take regular breaks on long journeys – at least every two hours.

Safety equipment

 **Read and observe  on page 6 first.**

The following list contains only part of the safety equipment in your vehicle.

- Three-point seat belts for all the seats.
- Belt force limiter for front and outer rear seats.
- Belt tensioner for front and outer rear seats.
- Seat belt height adjusters for the front seats.
- Front airbag for the driver and the front passenger.
- Driver's knee airbag.

- › Front side airbags.
- › Rear side airbags.
- › Head airbags.
- › Anchoring points for child seats using the ISOFIX system.
- › Anchoring points for child seats using the TOP TETHER system.
- › Head restraints adjustable for height.
- › Adjustable steering column.

The specified safety equipment works together, in order to optimally protect you and those travelling with you in accident situations.

The safety equipment does not protect you or the people travelling with you, if you or your occupants adopt an incorrect seated position or the equipment is not correctly adjusted or used.

If the seat belt is not fastened properly, this may result in injuries if an airbag is activated in the event of an accident.

Correct and safe seated position

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Correct seated position for the driver	7
Adjusting the steering wheel position	8
Correct seated position for the front passenger	8
Correct seated position for the passengers in the rear seats	9
Examples of incorrect seated positions	9

! WARNING

- The front seats and all head restraints must be adjusted to match the body size at all times and the seat belt must always be fastened properly to provide the most effective levels of protection to the passengers.
- Each occupant must correctly fasten the seat belt belonging to the seat. Children must be fastened » page 21, *Transporting children safely with a suitable restraint system.*
- If the occupant adopts an incorrect seated position, he is exposed to life-threatening injuries, in case he is hit by a deployed airbag.

! WARNING (Continued)

- If the occupants on the rear seats are not sitting upright, the risk of injury is increased due to incorrect routing of the seat belt.
- The seat backrests must not be tilted too far back when driving, as this will impair the function of the seat belts and of the airbag system - risk of injury!

Correct seated position for the driver

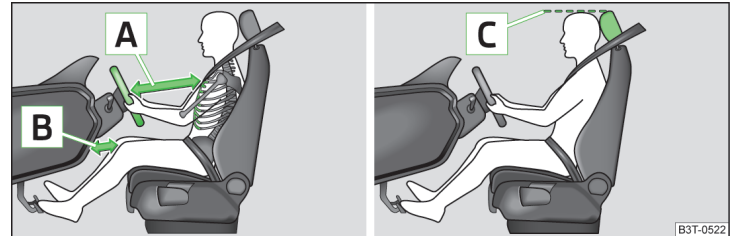


Fig. 1 Correct driver seating position / properly adjusted headrest

Read and observe ! on page 7 first.

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, the following instructions must be observed.

- ✓ Adjust the driver's seat in the forward/back direction so that the pedals can be fully depressed with slightly bent legs.
- ✓ For vehicles with driver knee air-bag adjust the driver's seat in a forward/back direction so that there is a gap of at least 10 cm between the legs and the dash panel in the vicinity of the knee airbag - B » Fig. 1.
- ✓ Adjust the seat backrest so that the highest point of the steering wheel can be reached with your arms at a slight angle.
- ✓ Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance A between the steering wheel and your chest is at least 25 cm » Fig. 1. Adjust the steering wheel » page 8, *Adjusting the steering wheel position.*
- ✓ Adjust the head restraint so that the highest point of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of your head C » Fig. 1.
- ✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 10.

Adjust the seats and head restraints » page 79.

! WARNING

- Always assume the correct seated position before setting off and do not change this position while driving. Also advise your passengers to adopt the correct seated position and not to change this position while the car is moving.
- Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm from the steering wheel, and a distance of at least 10 cm between the legs and the dash panel at the height of the knee airbag. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you - hazard!
- When driving, hold the steering wheel with both hands firmly on the outer edge in the "9 o'clock" and "3 o'clock" position. Never hold the steering wheel in the "12 o'clock" position or in any other way (e.g. in the middle or inner edge of the steering wheel). In such cases, you could severely injure the arms, hands and head when the driver airbag is deployed.
- Ensure that there are no objects in the driver's footwell as they may get caught behind the pedals when driving or applying the braking. You would then no longer be able to operate the clutch, brake or acceleration pedals.

Adjusting the steering wheel position

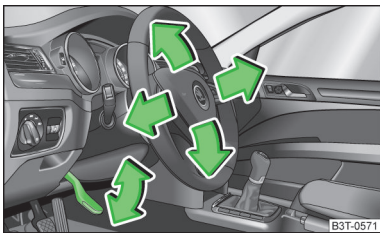


Fig. 2
Adjustable steering wheel: Lever below steering wheel

! Read and observe **!** on page 7 first.

The height and forward/back position of the steering wheel can be adjusted.

- Swivel the lever underneath the steering wheel downwards » Fig. 2.
- Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position (with regard to the height and forward/back position).
- Push the lever upwards to the stop.

! WARNING

- The lever for adjusting the steering wheel must be locked whilst driving so that the steering wheel cannot accidentally change position during the journey - risk of accident!
- Never adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is moving only when the vehicle is stationary!

Correct seated position for the front passenger

! Read and observe **!** on page 7 first.

For passenger safety and to reduce the risk of injury in an accident, the following instructions must be observed.

- ✓ Position the front passenger seat back as far as possible. The front passenger must maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel so that the airbag offers the greatest possible safety if it is deployed.
- ✓ Adjust the head restraint so that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of your head **C** » Fig. 1 on page 7.
- ✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 10.

Adjust the seats and head restraints » page 79.

In exceptional cases the front passenger airbag can be deactivated » page 19, *Deactivating airbags*.

! WARNING

- Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you - hazard!
- Always keep your feet in the footwell when the car is being driven - never place your feet on the instrument panel, out of the window or on the surfaces of the seats. You will be exposed to increased risk of injury if it becomes necessary to apply the brake or in the event of an accident. If an airbag is deployed, you could suffer fatal injuries by adopting an incorrect seated position!

Correct seated position for the passengers in the rear seats

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 7 first.

To reduce the risk of injury in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or an accident, the occupants on the rear seats must observe the following.

- ✓ Adjust the head restraint so that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of the head **C** » Fig. 1 on page 7.
- ✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 10.
- ✓ Use a suitable child restraint system if transporting children in the vehicle » page 21, *Transporting children safely*.

Adjust the seats and head restraints » page 79.

Examples of incorrect seated positions

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 7 first.

Maximum seat belt protection is only achieved if seat belts are fastened correctly.

Incorrect seated positions considerably reduce the protective functions of the seat belts and therefore increase the risk of injury due to an incorrect routing of the seat belt.

The driver is fully responsible for himself and passengers, especially children. Never allow a passenger to adopt an incorrect seated position when the car is moving.

The following list contains instructions which, if not observed, may cause serious injuries or death. This list is not complete, however we would like you to familiarise yourself with this subject.

Observe the following instructions while driving.

- ✓ Do not stand up.
- ✓ Do not stand on the seats.
- ✓ Do not kneel on the seats.
- ✓ Do not tilt the seat backrest too far back.
- ✓ Do not lean against the dash panel.
- ✓ Do not lie on the rear seats.
- ✓ Do not sit only on the front part of the seat.
- ✓ Do not sit facing to the side.

- ✓ Do not lean out of the window.
- ✓ Do not put your feet out of the window.
- ✓ Do not put your feet on the dash panel.
- ✓ Do not put your feet on the seat cushion.
- ✓ Do not allow anybody to travel in the footwell.
- ✓ Do not drive without fastening your seat belt.
- ✓ Do not delay in the luggage compartment.

Seat belts

Using seat belts

Introduction

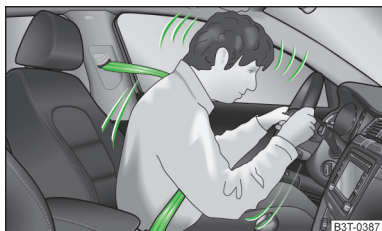


Fig. 3
Driver wearing seat belt

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The physical principle of a frontal collision	11
Fastening and unfastening seat belts	12
Belt height adjustment on the front seats	13

Seat belts that are fastened correctly offer good protection in the event of an accident. They reduce the risk of an injury and increase the chance of survival in the event of a major accident.

Correctly fastened seat belts hold occupants of the car in the correct seated position » Fig. 3.

The seat belts reduce the kinetic energy (energy of motion) to a considerable extent. They also prevent uncontrolled movements which, in turn, may well result in severe injuries.

Occupants of a vehicle who have correctly fastened their seat belts have the major benefit of the fact that the kinetic energy is absorbed as effectively as possible by the belts.

The structure of the front end of the vehicle and other passive safety measures, such as the airbag system, also contribute to the kinetic energy being reduced as effectively as possible. The energy produced is thus absorbed and there is less risk of injury.

Particular safety aspects must be observed when transporting children in the vehicle » page 21.

! WARNING

- Fasten your seat belt before each journey - even when driving in town! This also applies to the passengers seated at the rear - risk of injury!
- Expectant women must also always wear a seat belt. This is the only way of ensuring optimal protection for the unborn child » page 12, *Fastening and unfastening seat belts*.
- Maximum seat belt protection is only achieved if you are correctly seated » page 7, *Correct and safe seated position*.
- The seat backrests of the front seats must not be tilted too far to the rear otherwise the seatbelts can lose their effectiveness.

! WARNING

Information on the correct routing of the belt

- Always ensure that the webbing of the seat belts is properly routed. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even in minor accidents.
- Adjust the height of the belt in such a way that the shoulder part of the belt is roughly positioned across the middle of your shoulder - on no account across your neck.
- A seat belt which is hanging too loose can result in injuries as your body is moved forward by the kinetic energy produced in an accident and is then suddenly held firm by the belt.
- The belt webbing must not run across solid or fragile objects (e.g. spectacles, ball-point pens, bunches of keys etc.). Such objects can cause injury.

! WARNING

Information on dealing with the safety belts

- The belt webbing must not be jammed in-between at any point or twisted, or chafe against any sharp edges.
- Make sure you do not catch the seat belt in the door when closing it.

! WARNING

Information on the proper use of the safety belts

- Never use one seat belt to secure two persons (including children). The seatbelt must not be placed over a child who is sitting on the lap of another passenger.

! WARNING (Continued)

- The lock tongue should only be inserted into the lock which is the correct one for your seat. Wrong use of the safety belt will reduce its capacity to protect and the risk of injury increases.
- The slot of the belt tongue must not be blocked, otherwise the belt tongue will not lock in place properly.
- Many layers of clothing and loose clothing (e. g. a winter coat over a jacket) do not allow you to be correctly seated and impairs proper operation of the seat belts.
- It is prohibited to use clamps or other objects to adjust seat belts (e. g. for shortening the belts for smaller persons).
- The seat belts for the rear seats can only fulfil their function reliably when the seat backrests are correctly locked into position » [page 85](#).

! WARNING

- Information on the care and maintenance of the safety belts
- The belt webbing must always be kept clean. Soiled belt webbing may impair proper operation of the inertia reel » [page 178](#).
 - The seat belts must not be removed or changed in any way. Do not attempt to repair the seat belts yourself.
 - Check the condition of all the seat belts on a regular basis. If any damage to the seat belts, seat belt connections, inertia reel or the lock is detected, the relevant seat belt must be replaced by a specialist garage.
 - Damaged seat belts which have been subjected to stress in an accident and were therefore stretched, must be replaced – this is best done by a specialist garage. The anchorage points of the belts must also be inspected. The anchorage points for the belts should also be checked.

i Note

The national legal requirements must be observed when using seat belts.

The physical principle of a frontal collision

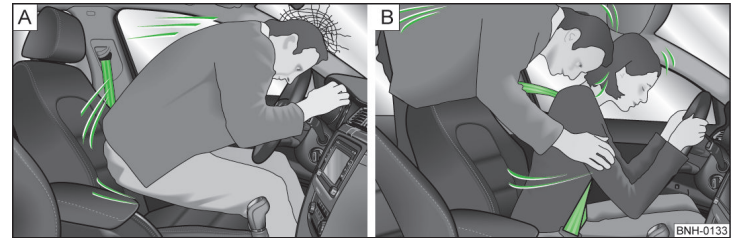


Fig. 4 Driver without a seat belt/rear seat passenger without a fastened seat belt

📖 Read and observe ! on page 10 first.

Motion energy, so-called kinetic energy, is produced as soon as the vehicle is moving, both for the vehicle and its occupants.

The magnitude of this kinetic energy depends essentially on the speed at which the vehicle is travelling and on the weight of the vehicle including the occupants. The greater the speed and weight increase, the greater the amount of energy which has to be absorbed in the event of an accident.

The speed of the vehicle is the most important factor. Doubling the speed of the vehicle from 25 km/h up to 50 km/hour increases the kinetic energy four times.

The idea that it is possible to support your body with your hands in a minor accident is incorrect. Even in a collision at only a low speed, the forces acting on the body are such that it is no longer possible to support your body.

Even if you only drive at a speed of 30-50 km/h, the forces that your body is exposed to in the event of an accident can exceed a metric ton (1000 kg).

For example, a person's weight of 80 kg "increases" to 4.8 tons (4800 kg) at 50 km/h.

In the event of a frontal collision, occupants of the car not wearing a seat belt are thrown forward and strike parts of the interior of the car, such as the steering wheel, dash panel, windscreen in ways which cannot be controlled » [Fig. 4 - A](#). In certain circumstances you could even be thrown out of the vehicle, which could cause life threatening or even fatal injuries. ▶

It is also important that rear passengers fasten their seat belts, as they could otherwise be thrown through the vehicle in an uncontrolled manner in the event of an accident.

A rear seat passenger who has not fastened the seat belt is a danger not only to himself but also for those seated in the front » Fig. 4 - [B].

Fastening and unfastening seat belts

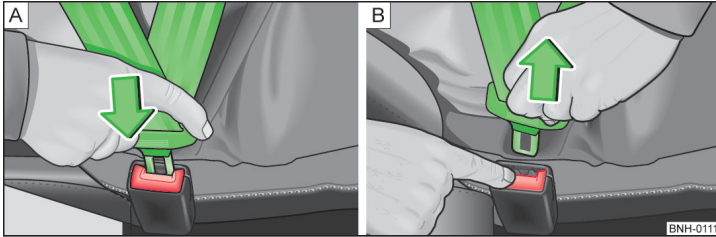


Fig. 5 Fastening/unfastening the seat belt

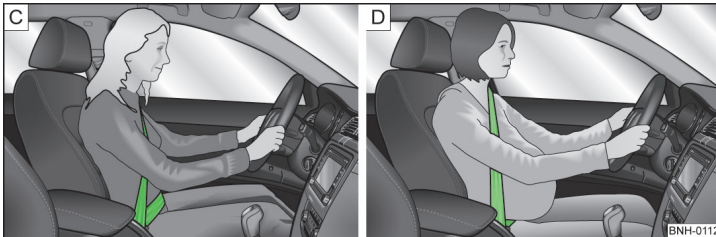


Fig. 6 Routing of belt webbing over the shoulders and the lap belt/Routing of belt webbing for an expectant mother

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 10 first.

Fasten

- › Correctly adjust the front seat and head restraint before fastening the seat belt » page 7.
- › Use the lock tongue to slowly pull the webbing over your chest and pelvis.

- › Insert the lock tongue into the belt buckle belonging to the seat » Fig. 5 - [A] until it you hear it click into place.
- › Pull on the belt to check that it has engaged correctly in the lock.

A plastic knob in the belt webbing holds the belt tongue in a position which is easy to get hold of.

It is important that the belt is properly routed to ensure seat belts offer the maximum protection.

The shoulder part of the seat belt must never run across the neck but must roughly run over the middle of the shoulder and fit snugly against the chest. The lap part of the belt must run across the pelvis, must not lie across the stomach and must always fit snugly » Fig. 6 - [C].

Expectant women must also always wear a seat belt. This is the only way of ensuring optimal protection for the unborn child.

The lap part of the belt must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis on expectant mothers to avoid exerting any pressure on the lower abdomen » Fig. 6 - [D].

Release

Release the seat belt only when the vehicle is stationary.

- › Press the red button in the belt buckle » Fig. 5 - [B], the lock tongue pops out.
- › Manually guide the belt back so that it is easier to fully roll up the webbing, the seat belt does not twist.

! CAUTION

When releasing the seatbelt ensure that the tongue of the lock does not damage the door trim or other parts of the interior.

Belt height adjustment on the front seats

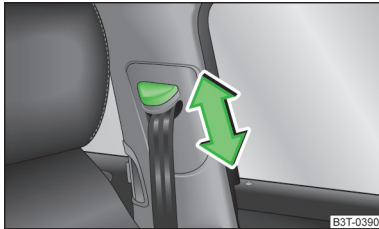


Fig. 7
Front seat: Seat belt height adjuster

Read and observe on page 10 first.

The seat belt height adjuster makes it possible to adjust the routing of the front seat belts in the area of the shoulder to the body size.

- Press the height adjuster and move up or down in the desired direction » Fig. 7.
- Then pull firmly on the belt to ensure that the seat belt height adjuster has correctly locked in place.

Inertia reels and belt tensioners

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Inertia reels	13
Belt tensioners	13

Inertia reels

Each seat belt is equipped with an inertia reel.

When pulling slowly on the seat belt, the belt can move freely. When pulling sharply on the seat belt, the movement is locked by the inertia reel.

The belts also lock when full braking, when the car accelerates, when driving downhill and when cornering.

WARNING

If the seat belt does not lock when pulling sharply on it, have it inspected immediately by a specialist garage.

Belt tensioners

The safety for the driver, front passenger and passengers on the outer rear seats **who are wearing their seat belts**, is enhanced by the belt tensioners fitted to the inertia reels on the front and rear external seat belts.

The three-point seat belts are automatically tensioned in the event of a frontal collision of a certain severity. The belt tensioners can also be deployed if the seat belts are not fastened.

The fastened three-point seat belts are automatically tensioned in the event of a lateral collision of a certain severity.

Belt tensioners are not activated in the event of minor frontal collisions, side and rear-end collisions, in the case of a rollover and also not in accidents in which no major forces are produced from the front.

WARNING

- Any work on the belt tensioner system including removal and installation of system components because of other repair work, must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- The protective function of the system is only adequate for a single accident. If the belt tensioners have been deployed, it is then necessary to replace the entire system.

Note

- Smoke is generated when the belt tensioners are deployed. This is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.
- When disposing of the vehicle or parts of the belt tensioner system, it is important to comply with national legal requirements. SKODA service partners are familiar with these regulations and will be able to provide you with detailed information.

Airbag system

Description of the airbag system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

System description	14
Airbag deployment	14

WARNING

- An airbag can only offer you optimal protection in combination with a fastened seat belt.
- The airbag is not a substitute for the seat belt, but instead forms part of the complete passive vehicle safety concept.
- To ensure passengers are protected with the greatest possible effect when the airbag is deployed, the front seats must be correctly adjusted to match the body size » page 7, *Correct and safe seated position*.
- If you do not fasten the seat belts when driving, lean too far forward or adopt an incorrect seated position, you are exposing yourself to increased risk of injury in the event of an accident.


WARNING

Information on the use of the airbag system

- If there is a fault, the airbag system must be checked by a specialist garage immediately. Otherwise, there is a risk of the airbag not being activated in the event of an accident.
- No modifications of any kind must be made to parts of the airbag system.
- Any work on the airbag system including the installation and removal of system components due to other repair work (e.g. removal of the steering wheel) must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- Never make any changes to the front bumper or bodywork.
- It is prohibited to manipulate individual parts of the airbag system as this might result in the airbag being deployed.
- The protective function of the airbag system is sufficient for only one accident. The airbag system must then be replaced if the airbag has been deployed.

System description

 Read and observe  on page 14 first.

The functional status of the airbag system is indicated by the indicator light  in the instrument cluster » page 38.

When the airbags are deployed, they fill with gas and inflate.

A grey white or red, non-harmful gas is released when the airbag is inflated. This is perfectly normal and is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the airbag system consists of the following modules.

- Electronic control unit.
- Front airbag for the driver and the front passenger » page 15.
- Driver's knee airbag » page 16.
- Side airbags » page 17.
- Head airbags » page 18.
- Airbag warning light in the instrument cluster » page 38.
- Key switch for the front passenger airbag » page 20.
- Warning light for the front passenger airbag deactivation/activation in the middle of the dash panel » page 20.

Note

- The airbag system needs no maintenance during its working life.
- If you sell your vehicle, provide the complete vehicle documentation to the new owner. Please note that the information relating to the possibility of deactivating the front passenger airbag must be included!
- When disposing of vehicle or parts of the airbag system, it is important to comply with the national legal requirements.

Airbag deployment

 Read and observe  on page 14 first.

The airbags inflate in fractions of a second and at a high speed in order to be able to offer additional protection in the event of an accident.

The airbag system is only functional when the ignition is switched on.

In certain accident situations, the several airbags may be deployed simultaneously. ▶

The airbags **are not deployed** in the case of **minor** frontal and side collisions, rear-end collisions, tilting of the vehicle and vehicle rollover.

Deployment factors

It is not possible to generally determine which deployment conditions apply to the airbag system in every situation. An important role is played by factors such as the type of object that the vehicle hits (hard/soft), the impact angle, vehicle speed etc.

A decisive factor for the deployment of the airbags is the deceleration which occurs. The control unit analyses the nature of the collision and activates the relevant restraint system.

If the vehicle deceleration which occurs and is measured during the collision remains below the prescribed reference values specified in the control unit, the airbags are not deployed although the vehicle may well suffer severe damage to the bodywork as a consequence of the accident.

The following airbags will be deployed in the event of a severe frontal collision.

- › Driver's front airbag.
- › Front passenger airbag.
- › Driver's knee airbag.

The following airbags will be deployed in the event of a severe side collision.

- › Front side airbag on the side of the accident.
- › Rear side airbag on the side of the accident.
- › Head airbags on the side of the accident.

In the event of an accident in which the airbags are deployed:

- › the interior lighting comes on (if the switch for the interior light is in the door contact position),
- › the hazard warning light is switched on;
- › all the doors are unlocked;
- › the fuel supply to the engine is interrupted.

Airbag overview

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front airbags _____	15
Driver's knee airbag _____	16

Side airbags _____	17
Head airbags _____	18

Front airbags

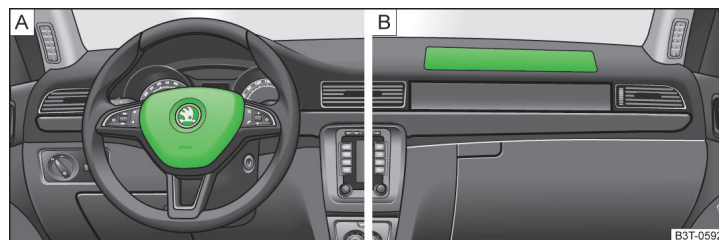


Fig. 8 Driver airbag in the steering wheel/front passenger airbag in the dashboard

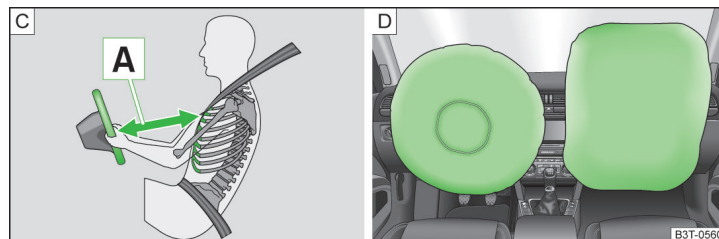


Fig. 9 Safe distance to steering wheel/gas-filled airbags

In the event of a severe frontal collision, the front airbag system offers additional protection for the head and chest area of the driver and front passenger.

The front airbag for the driver is housed in the steering wheel » Fig. 8 - [A].

The front airbag for the front seat passenger is located in the dash panel above the glove compartment » Fig. 8 - [B].

The airbags inflate in front of the driver and front passenger when they are deployed » Fig. 9 - [C]. The forward movement of the driver and of the front passenger is cushioned when they make contact with the fully inflated airbag and the risk of injury to head and chest is thus reduced.

! WARNING

Information on correct seated position

- For the driver and front passenger, it is important to maintain a distance of at least 25 cm from the steering wheel or dashboard **A** » Fig. 9. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you - hazard! The front seats and the head restraints must always also be correctly adjusted to match the body size of the occupant.
- The airbag develops enormous forces when triggered, which can lead to injuries if the sitting position or seated position is not correct.
- There must not be any further persons, animals or objects positioned between the front seated occupants and the deployment area of the airbag.

! WARNING

Front airbag and transporting children

- Never transport children on the front seat of a vehicle without using a proper restraint system. If airbags are deployed in the event of an accident, the child might suffer severe or even fatal injuries!
- The front passenger airbag must be deactivated if using a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat » page 19, *Deactivating airbags*. If this is not done, there is a risk of the child suffering severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag is deployed. When transporting a child on the front passenger seat, pay attention to any relevant national regulations regarding the use of child safety seats.

! WARNING

General information

- The steering wheel and the surface of the airbag module in the dash panel on the passenger side must not have stickers attached, be covered or modified in any other way. These parts should only be cleaned with a cloth that is dry or has been moistened with water. No objects such as cup holders, mobile phone mounts, etc. must be attached to the covers of the airbag modules or be located within their immediate vicinity.
- Never place objects on the surface of the front passenger airbag module in the dash panel.

i Note

- In vehicles with head airbags, the word AIRBAG can be seen on the steering wheel.
- In vehicles with front passenger airbags, the word AIRBAG is located on the dash panel on the passenger side.

Driver's knee airbag

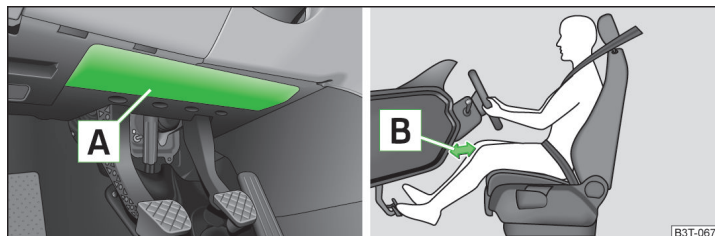


Fig. 10 Installation of the airbag / Safe distance from the switching panel

The driver's knee airbag offers adequate protection for the driver's legs.

The driver's knee airbag **A** is located in the lower part of the dash panel below the steering column » Fig. 10.

In the event of a severe frontal collision, the driver's knee airbag and front airbags are deployed.

The forward movement of the body is cushioned when it makes contact with the fully inflated airbag and the risk of injury to the legs of the driver is thus reduced.

! WARNING

- Adjust the driver's seat in a forward/back direction so that there is a gap of at least 10 cm between the legs **B** and the dash panel in the vicinity of the knee airbag » Fig. 10. If it is not possible to meet this requirement due to your body size, visit a specialist garage.
- The surface of the airbag module in the lower part of the dash panel below the steering column not have stickers attached, be covered or modified in any other way. This part should only be cleaned with a cloth that is dry or has been moistened with water. No objects must be attached to the cover of the airbag module or located within the immediate vicinity.
- Do not attach any bulky and heavy objects (bunch of keys etc.) to the ignition key. These can be ejected by the knee airbag when it is deployed and can cause injuries.

i Note

In vehicles with a driver's knee airbag, a symbol with the word AIRBAG is located on the side panel on the driver's side.

Side airbags

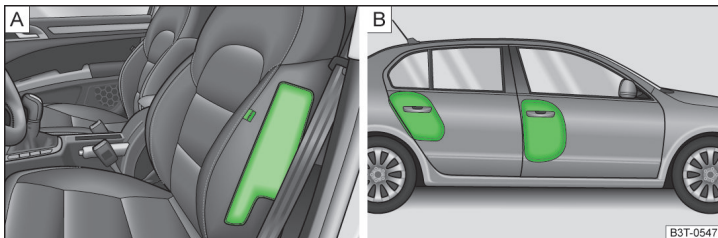


Fig. 11 Location of the side airbag in the driver's seat/gas-filled side airbags

In the event of severe side collisions, the side airbag system provides additional protection for the upper body (chest, stomach and pelvis) of passengers in the vehicle.

The front side airbags are housed in the upholstery of the seat backrests of the front seats » Fig. 11 - **A**.

The rear side airbags are located between the entrance area and the seat backrest.

The head airbag and belt tensioner on the relevant side are also automatically deployed when the side airbags » Fig. 11 - **B** are deployed.

The load of the occupants is cushioned when plunging into the fully inflated airbag and the risk of injury to the entire upper body (chest, stomach and pelvis) is reduced on the side facing the door.

! WARNING

Information on correct seated position

- Your head should never be positioned in the deployment area of the side airbag. You might suffer severe injuries in the event of an accident. This applies in particular to children who are transported without using a suitable child safety seat » page 22, *Child safety and side airbag*.
- There must not be any further persons, animals or objects positioned between the occupants and the deployment area of the airbag. No accessories, such as cup holders, should be attached to the doors.
- If children adopt an incorrect seated position when travelling, they may be exposed to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident. This can result in serious injuries » page 21, *Child seat*.

! WARNING

The airbag control unit operates using pressure sensors located in the front doors. For this reason, no adjustments may be carried out to the doors or door panels (e.g. installation of additional loudspeakers). Resulting damage can have a negative impact on the function of the airbag system. Any work on the front doors and door panels must be carried out by a specialist garage. The following guidelines must be observed.

- Never drive with inner door panels removed.
- Never drive if parts of the inner door panel have been removed and the resulting openings have not been properly sealed.
- Never drive if the loudspeakers in the doors have been removed, unless the loudspeaker openings have been properly sealed.
- Always make sure that the openings are covered or filled if additional loudspeakers or other equipment parts have been installed in the inner door panels.
- Always have work carried out by a ŠKODA service partner or a professional specialist garage.

! WARNING

- Only hang light items of clothing on the hooks fitted in the vehicle. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing.
- Ensure that there are no excessive forces, such as violent knocks, kicks etc., impact on the backrests of the seats otherwise the system may be damaged. The side airbags would not be deployed in such a case!
- Any seat or protective covers which you fit to the driver or front passenger seats must only be of the type expressly authorized by ŠKODA. In view of the fact that the airbag inflates out of the backrest of the seat, use of non-approved seat or protective covers would considerably impair the protective function of the side airbag.
- Any damage to the original seat covers in the area of the side airbag module must be repaired immediately by a specialist garage.
- The airbag modules in the front seats must not display any damage, cracks or deep scratches. It is not permissible to use force in order to open the modules.

i Note

- In vehicles with side airbags at the front, a label with the word AIRBAG is located on the front seat backrests.
- In vehicles with rear side airbags, the word AIRBAG is located between the entrance area and the rear seat rest.

Head airbags

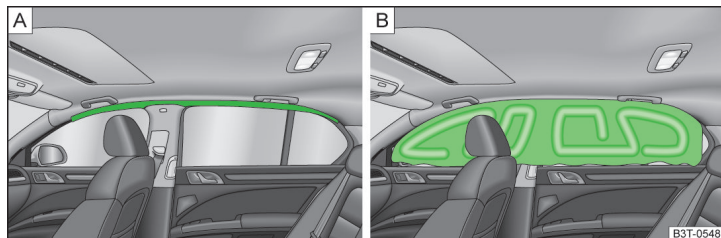


Fig. 12 Location of the head airbag/gas-filled head airbag

In the event of a severe side collision, the head airbag system offers additional protection for the head and neck area of passengers.

The head airbags are positioned above the doors on both sides in the interior of the car » Fig. 12 - A.

In the event of a **side collision** the head airbag is deployed together with the relevant side airbag and the belt tensioner on the side of the car on which the accident occurs.

The airbag covers the windows of the front and rear doors, as well as the door pillar when it is deployed » Fig. 12 - B.

Head impact with interior parts is reduced by the inflated head airbag. The reduction in any impact to the head and the resultant minimizing of any movements of the head additionally reduce the risk of injuries to the neck area.

The head airbag also offers additional protection in the case of an offset impact by covering the front door pillar.

! WARNING

General information

- There must not be any objects in the deployment area of the head airbags which might prevent the airbags from inflating properly.
- Only hang light items of clothing on the hooks fitted in the vehicle. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing. Additionally, clothes hangers must not be used to hang up items of clothing.
- The installation of impermissible accessories in the vicinity of the head airbags can considerably impair the protection offered by the head airbag in the event of it being deployed. When the deployed head airbag is inflated, parts of the accessories fitted could be thrown into the interior of the car and injure the occupants » page 169.
- The sun visors must not be swivelled towards the side windows in the deployment area of the head airbags if any objects, such as ball-point pens, etc. are attached to them. This might result in injuries to the occupants if the head airbag is deployed.
- There must not be any further persons, animals or objects positioned between the seated occupants and the deployment area of the airbag. In addition, none of the occupants should lean their head out of the window when driving, or extend their arms and hands out of the window.

! WARNING

The airbag control unit operates using pressure sensors located in the front doors. For this reason, no adjustments may be carried out to the doors or door panels (e.g. installation of additional loudspeakers). Resulting damage can have a negative impact on the function of the airbag system. Any work on the front doors and door panels must be carried out by a specialist garage. The following guidelines must be observed.

- Never drive with inner door panels removed.
- Never drive if parts of the inner door panel have been removed and the resulting openings have not been properly sealed.
- Never drive if the loudspeakers in the doors have been removed, unless the loudspeaker openings have been properly sealed.
- Always make sure that the openings are covered or filled if additional loudspeakers or other equipment parts have been installed in the inner door panels.
- Always have work carried out by a ŠKODA service partner or a professional specialist garage.

i Note

In vehicles with head airbags, the word AIRBAG can be seen on the B column cladding.

Deactivating airbags

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Deactivating airbags _____	19
Deactivating the front passenger airbag _____	20

Deactivating airbags

Deactivating an airbag should be considered in cases such as the ones below.

- If using a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat (due to different legal regulations, the airbag must be deactivated if using a forwards-facing child seat in some countries) » [page 21, Transporting children safely.](#)
- If it is not possible to maintain a distance of at least 25 cm between the middle of the steering wheel and chest, despite the driver's seat being correctly adjusted.

- If special attachments are required in the area of the steering wheel because of a physical disability.
- If different seats have been fitted (e.g. orthopaedic seats without side airbags).


The front passenger airbag can be switched off with the key-operated switch » [page 20, Deactivating the front passenger airbag.](#)

We recommend that you ask a ŠKODA service partner to deactivate any other airbags.




Monitoring the airbag system

The operational capability of the airbag system is monitored electronically, including when one of the airbags is switched off.

Airbag deactivated using diagnostic equipment

- The warning light  lights up for approximately 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on and then flashes again for approximately 12 seconds.

Front passenger airbag deactivated using the key switch in the storage compartment

- The warning light  lights up for approximately 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on.
- The OFF   » [Fig. 13 on page 20](#) warning light comes on when the ignition is switched on.

i Note

- The national regulations for switching off airbags must be observed.
- A ŠKODA service partner will be able to inform you which, if any, of your vehicle's airbags can or must be deactivated.

Deactivating the front passenger airbag

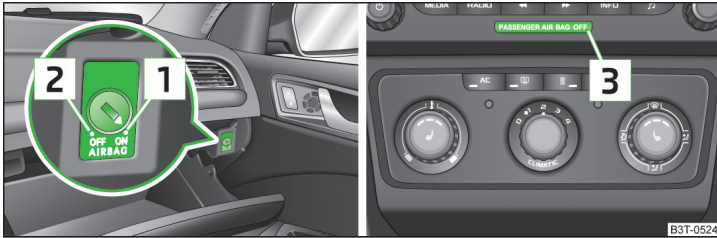


Fig. 13 Key switch for front passenger airbag/warning light for front passenger airbag activation/deactivation

Only the front passenger airbag is deactivated with the key switch.

Switching off

- › Switch off the ignition.
- › Open the storage box on the front passenger's side.
- › Fold the key bit out **completely** for the radio key » **!**.
- › Carefully insert the key into the key slot in the key switch as far as the stop.
- › Use the key to turn the slot of the key switch into position **2** » Fig. 13 **OFF**.
- › Pull the key out of the slot in the key switch » **!**.
- › Close the storage box on the front passenger's side.
- › Check that warning light **OFF** **3** **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** in the text lights up after the ignition is switched on.

Switching on

- › Switch off the ignition.
- › Open the storage box on the front passenger's side.
- › Fold the key bit out **completely** for the radio key » **!**.
- › Carefully insert the key into the key slot in the key switch as far as the stop.
- › Use the key to turn the slot of the key switch into position **1** » Fig. 13 **ON**.
- › Pull the key out of the slot in the key switch » **!**.
- › Close the storage box on the front passenger's side.
- › Check that warning light **OFF** **3** **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** lights up after the ignition is switched on.

! WARNING

- The driver is responsible for whether the airbag is switched on or switched off.
- Only switch off the airbag when the ignition is switched off! Otherwise a fault can occur in the system for deactivating the airbag.
- If the warning light **OFF** is flashing, the front passenger airbag will not be deployed in an accident. Have the airbag system checked by a specialist garage immediately.
- The key cannot be inserted in the key switch while driving.
 - Shocks can cause the key to turn in the slot and trigger the airbag!
 - The airbag could be triggered unexpectedly in an accident - it may result in injury or death!

! CAUTION

An insufficiently folded out key bit can damage the key switch!

Transporting children safely

Child seat

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat	21
Child safety and side airbag	22
Classification of child seats	23
Use of child seats fastened with a seat belt	23

Children are generally safer on the rear seats than on the front passenger seat.

In contrast to adults, the muscles and bone structure of children are not yet fully developed. Thus children are exposed to increased risk of injury.

Children should be transported in accordance with the relevant statutory provisions.

Child seats complying with the ECE-R 44 standard must be used. ECE-R stands for: Economic Commission for Europe - Regulation.

Child seats that comply with the ECE-R 44 standard are identified with a test mark that cannot be removed: a large E within a circle with the test number below.

! WARNING

- The national legal requirements must be observed when using child seats.
- One should never carry children, and also not babies! - on one's lap.
- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle. Certain outside climatic conditions can cause life-threatening temperatures in the vehicle.
- The child must be secured in the vehicle during the entire journey! Otherwise, the child would be thrown through the vehicle in the event of an accident, causing fatal injuries to both the child and other occupants.
- Children are exposed to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident if they lean forward or adopt an incorrect seated position when the vehicle is moving. This particularly applies to children who are transported on the front passenger seat as they can suffer severe, or even fatal injuries if the airbag system is deployed!

! WARNING (Continued)

- Pay particular attention to the information provided by the manufacturer of the child safety seat regarding the correct routing of the belt. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even in minor accidents.
- Safety belts must be checked to ensure that they are running properly. One should also ensure that the belt is not damaged by sharp-edged fittings.
- The front passenger airbag must be deactivated if using a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat. Further information » page 21, *Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat.*

! CAUTION

When installing a child seat in which the child faces forward, adjust the head restraints so that they are as high as possible.

i Note

We recommend that you use child seats from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These child seats were developed and also tested for use in ŠKODA vehicles. They meet the ECE-R 44 standard.

Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat

Never use a backwards-facing child restraint system on a seat that is protected by an active airbag installed in front of it. This could cause the child severe injury or even death.

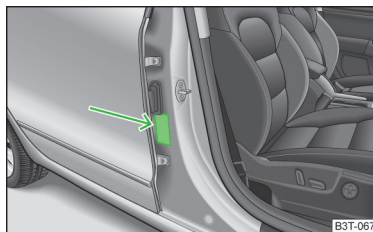


Fig. 14
Sticker on the B column on the front passenger side.



Fig. 15 Front passenger sun visor / sticker

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 21 first.

For safety reasons, we recommend that you install child seats on the rear seats whenever possible.

The following instructions must be followed when using a child seat on the front passenger seat.

- > The front passenger airbag must be deactivated if using a rear-facing child seat » **!**
- > If possible, adjust the front passenger seat backrest so that it is as vertical, so as to ensure secure contact between the passenger seat backrest and the back of the child seat.
- > If possible, move the front passenger seat backwards so that there is no contact between the front passenger seat and the child seat behind it.
- > With child safety seats in groups 2 or 3, make sure that the loop-around fittings attached to the child seat headrest is positioned in front of or at the same height as the loop-around fittings on the B pillar on the passenger side.
- > Set the height-adjustable front passenger seat as high up as possible.
- > Set the front passenger seat belt as high up as possible.
- > Place and fasten the child seat on the seat and the child in the child seat according to the specifications in the manufacturer's user manual of the child seat .

! WARNING

- The front passenger airbag must be deactivated if using a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat » page 19, *Deactivating airbags*.
- **Never** use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is activated. This child safety seat is positioned in the deployment area of the front passenger airbag. The airbag may cause the child severe, or even fatal injuries, in the event of it being deployed.
- This fact is also indicated by the sticker that can be found in one of the following locations.
 - On the B-column on the front passenger side » Fig. 14. The sticker is visible upon opening the front passenger door.
 - On the front passenger's sun visor. In some countries, the sticker is located on the front passenger's sun visor » Fig. 15.
 - With child safety seats in groups 2 or 3, make sure that the loop-around fittings attached to the child seat headrest is positioned in front of or at the same height as the loop-around fittings on the B pillar on the passenger side.
 - As soon as the rear-facing child seat is no longer being used on the passenger seat, the front passenger airbag should be re-activated again.

Child safety and side airbag

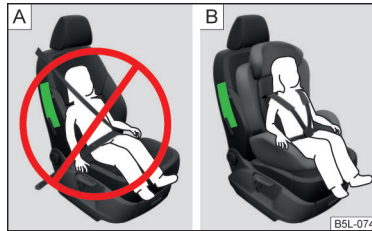


Fig. 16 Incorrect seated position of a child who is not properly secured - risk from the side airbag/Child properly protected by safety seat

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 21 first.

The child must not be positioned in the area into which the side airbag will deploy » Fig. 16 - **A**.

There must be sufficient room between the child and the area into which the side airbag will deploy to allow the airbag to provide as much protection as possible » Fig. 16 - **B**.

! WARNING

- Children must never be seated with their head in the deployment area of the side airbag – risk of injury!
- Do not place any objects within the deployment area of the side airbags – risk of injury!

Classification of child seats

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 21 first.

Classification of child seats according to the ECE-R 44 standard.

Group	Weight of the child	Approximate age
0	up to 10 kg	up to 9 months
0+	up to 13 kg	up to 18 months
1	9-18 kg	up to 4 years
2	15-25 kg	up to 7 years
3	22-36 kg	over 7 years

Use of child seats fastened with a seat belt

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 21 first.

Overview of the usability of child seats fastened with a seat belt on each of the seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard.

Group	Front passenger seat	Rear seats outside	Rear seat Center
0 up to 10 kg	U	U	U
0+ up to 13 kg	U	U	U
1 9-18 kg	U	U	U
2 15-25 kg	U	U	U
3 22-36 kg	U	U	U

U “Universal” child seat category - a child seat designed to be attached to the seat using the seat belt.

Fastening systems

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Anchor eyelets for the ISOFIX system	23
Use of child seats with the ISOFIX system	24
Anchor eyelets for the TOP TETHER system	24

Anchor eyelets for the ISOFIX system



Fig. 17
Labels on the ISOFIX system

There are two locking eyes between the seat backrest and the seat cushion of the outer rear seats and front passenger seat for fixing the ISOFIX system child seat in place.

On the rear outside seats, the fixing eyes are located below the upholstery. The places are marked with labels with the ISOFIX logo » Fig. 17.

! WARNING

- Always refer to the instructions from the manufacturer of the child seat when installing and removing a child seat with the ISOFIX system.
- Never attach other child seats, belts or objects to the anchor eyelets intended for the installation of a child seat with the ISOFIX system – risk to life.

i Note

- A child seat fitted with the ISOFIX system can only be mounted in a vehicle fitted with an ISOFIX system if the child seat has been approved for this type of vehicle. Further information is available from a ŠKODA Partner.
- Child seats with the ISOFIX system can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Use of child seats with the ISOFIX system

Overview of the usability of child seats with the ISOFIX system on each of the seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard.

Group	Size class of the child seat ^{a)}	Front passenger seat ^{b)}	Outer rear seats	Rear seat middle
0 up to 10 kg	E	X	IL-SU	X
	E	X	IL-SU	X
0+ up to 13 kg	D			
C				
1 9-18 kg	D	X	IL-SU IUF	X
	C			
	B			
	B1			
	A			

^{a)} The size category is shown on the label attached to the child seat.

^{b)} If the front passenger seat is fitted with the ISOFIX system attachment points, it is suited for the installation of an ISOFIX child seat with the "Semi-Universal" approval.

IL-SU The seat is suited for installation of an ISOFIX child seat with "Semi-Universal" approval. The "Semi-Universal" category means that the child seat with the ISOFIX system is approved for your vehicle. Observe the list of vehicles that comes with the child seat.

IUF The seat is suitable for the installation of an ISOFIX child seat with "Universal" approval and attachment with the TOP TETHER belt.

X The seat is not fitted with fixing eyes for the ISOFIX system.

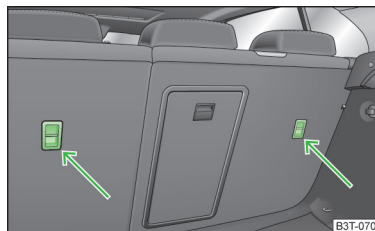
Anchor eyelets for the TOP TETHER system

Fig. 18
Anchor eyelets on the TOP
TETHER system

The anchor eyelets for attaching the belt for a child seat with the TOP TETHER system are located on the rear side of the outer rear seat backrests » [Fig. 18](#).

! WARNING

- Always refer to the instructions from the manufacturer of the child seat when installing and removing a child seat with the TOP TETHER system.
- Only use child seats with the TOP TETHER system on the seats with the locking eyes.
- Only ever attach one belt from the child seat to a locking eye.
- On no account should you equip your vehicle, e.g. mount screws or other anchorage points.

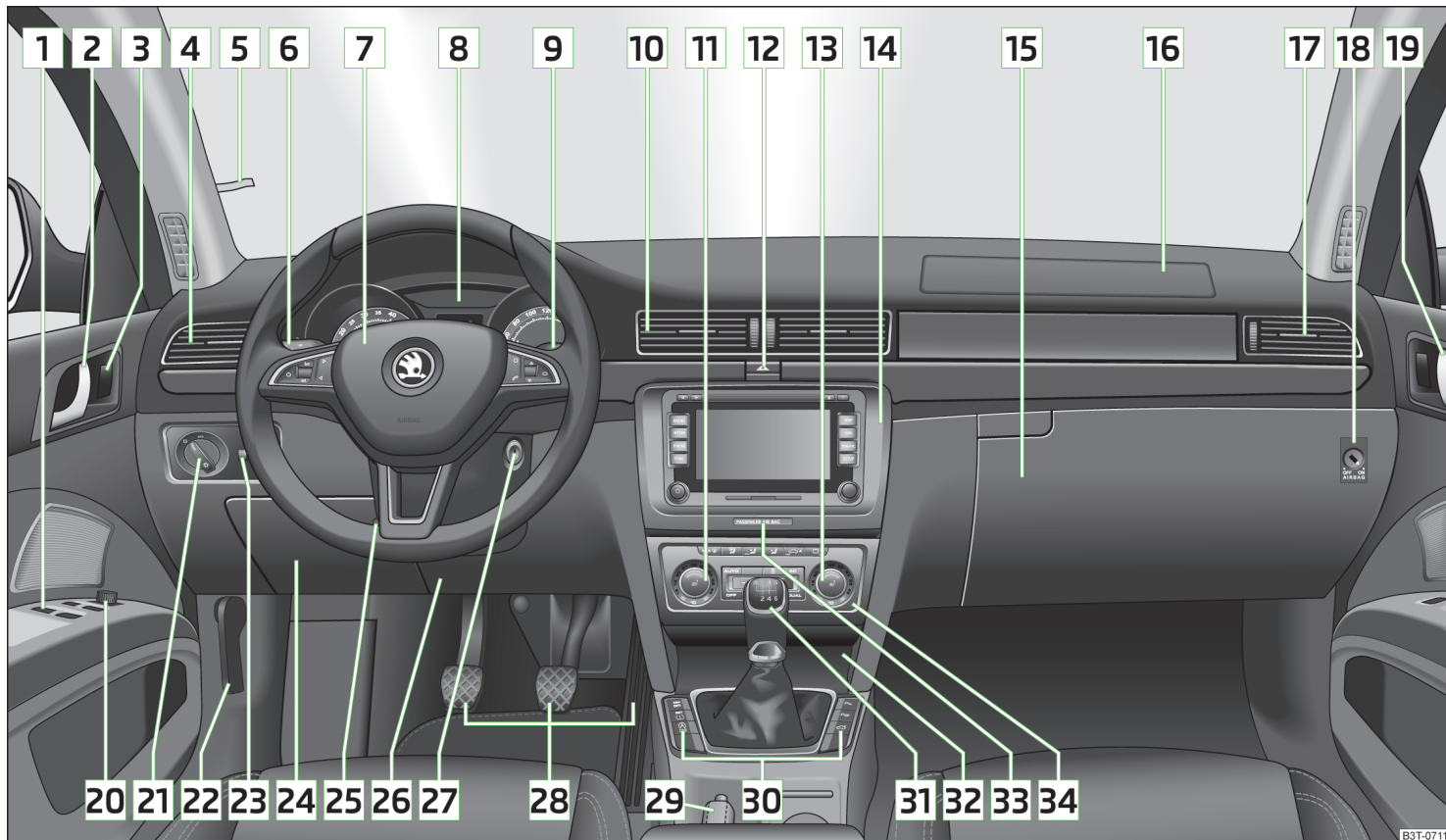









Fig. 19 Cockpit

B3T-0711

Operation

Cockpit

Overview

1	Electric windows	59
2	Door opening lever	53
3	Central locking system	52
4	Air jet	108
5	Parking ticket holder	
6	Operating lever: <ul style="list-style-type: none">> Turn signal light, headlight and parking light, headlight flasher> Speed regulating system	67 158
7	Steering wheel: <ul style="list-style-type: none">> With horn> With driver's front airbag> with pushbuttons for radio, navigation system phone and information system	15 120, 132
8	Instrument cluster: Instruments, warning lights and display	28
9	Operating lever: <ul style="list-style-type: none">> Information system> Windscreen wiper and wash system	39 75
10	Air outlets in the central part of the dash panel	108
11	Regulator for left seat heating	83
12	Button for hazard warning light system	70
13	Regulator for right seat heating	83
14	Depending on equipment fitted: <ul style="list-style-type: none">> Radio> Navigation system	
15	Storage compartment on the front passenger side	92
16	Front passenger airbag	15
17	Air jet	108
18	Key switch for switching off the front passenger airbag (in front passenger storage compartment)	20
19	Door opening lever	53
20	Electric exterior mirror adjustment	78
21	Light switch	66
22	Bonnet release lever	183
23	Regulator for the instrument lighting and regulator for the headlight beam range adjustment	66, 66
24	Storage compartment on the driver's side	87
25	Lever for adjusting the steering wheel	8
26	Driver's knee airbag	16
27	Ignition lock	136
28	Pedals	142
29	Handbrake	141
30	Bars with buttons depending on the equipment fitted: <ul style="list-style-type: none">>  START STOP>  Tyre control display>  Traction control TCS>  Electronic Stability Control ESC>  Park Assist>  Parking aid>  Tailgate operation (Superb Combi)	159 38 152 151 154 153 57
31	Depending on equipment fitted: <ul style="list-style-type: none">> Gearshift lever (manual gearbox)> Selector lever (automatic gearbox)	141 142
32	Depending on equipment fitted: <ul style="list-style-type: none">> Ashtrays> Storage compartment	89 88
33	Warning light for the deactivated front seat passenger airbag	20
34	Depending on equipment fitted: <ul style="list-style-type: none">> Operating controls for the air conditioning system> Operating controls for Climatronic	110 113

i Note

The arrangement of the controls right-hand drive models may differ from the layout shown in » Fig. 19. The symbols on the controls and switches are the same as for left-hand drive models.

Instruments and Indicator Lights

Instrument cluster

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Overview	28
Revolutions counter	29
Speedometer	29
Coolant temperature gauge	29
Display	29
Fuel gauge	30
Counter for distance driven	30
	30
Display of the second speed	31
Display in rear centre console	31
Auto Check Control	31

Fault display

If there is a fault in the instrument cluster, the **Error** message will appear in the display. Have the fault rectified as soon as possible by a specialist garage.

! WARNING

- Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver you are fully responsible for road safety.
- Never operate the controls in the instrument cluster while driving - risk of accident. Operate the controls only when the vehicle is at a standstill.

Overview

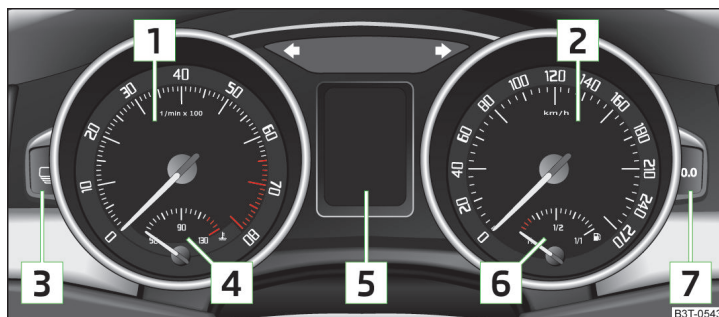


Fig. 20 Instrument cluster

📖 Read and observe ! on page 28 first.

- 1 Engine revolutions counter » page 29
 - with warning lights » page 32
- 2 Speedometer » page 29
 - with warning lights » page 32
- 3 Button for display mode:
 - Time settings » page 30
 - Enable/disable the display of the second speed¹⁾ » page 31
 - Service intervals - Display of the number of days and kilometres remaining until the next service¹⁾ » page 46
- 4 Coolant temperature gauge » page 29
- 5 Display » page 29
- 6 Fuel gauge » page 30
- 7 Button for:
 - Reset trip meter » page 30
 - Setting the time » page 30
 - enable / disable the mode selected by means of the 3 key

¹⁾ Applies to vehicles with a segment display.

Revolutions counter

📖 Read and observe **I** on page 28 first.

The red scale of the revolution counter **1** » Fig. 20 on page 28 indicates the range in which the system begins to limit the engine speed. The system automatically restricts the engine speed to a steady limit.

You should shift into the next higher gear before the red scale of the revolution counter is reached, or select mode **D** on the automatic gearbox.

Follow the recommended gear to prevent engine speeds that are too high or too low » page 40.

Speedometer

📖 Read and observe **I** on page 28 first.

Warning against excessive speeds

An audible warning signal will sound when the vehicle speed exceeds 120 km/h¹⁾. The audible warning signal is switched off when the vehicle speed falls below 120 km/h.

Coolant temperature gauge



Fig. 21
Coolant temperature gauge

📖 Read and observe **I** on page 28 first.

The coolant temperature gauge » Fig. 21 only operates when the ignitions is switched on.

¹⁾ This function is only valid for some countries.

Cold range

The pointer in the left of the scale indicates that the engine has not yet reached its operating temperature. Avoid high speeds, full throttle and high engine loads. This prevents possible damage to the engine.

The operating range

The engine has reached its operating temperature as soon as the pointer moves into the middle of the scale. At very high ambient temperatures or heavy engine loads, the pointer may move even further to the right.

High temperature range

If the pointer reaches the red area of the scale, the coolant temperature is too high. Further information » page 34.

I CAUTION

- Additional headlights and other attached components in front of the air inlet impair the cooling efficiency of the coolant.
- Never cover the radiator - there is a risk of the engine overheating.

Display

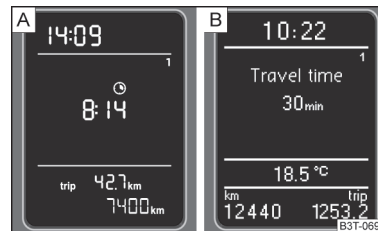


Fig. 22
Display types

📖 Read and observe **I** on page 28 first.

The following information will be displayed.

- Distance travelled » page 30
- Time » page 30
- Details of the information system » page 39
- Details of the service interval display » page 46

Display types » Fig. 22.

- A Segment display
- B MAXI DOT display

! CAUTION

Pull out the ignition key if coming in contact with the display (e.g. when cleaning) to prevent any possible damage. On vehicles with the KESSY system, switch off the ignition and open the driver's door.

Fuel gauge



Fig. 23
Fuel gauge

Read and observe ! on page 28 first.

The fuel gauge » Fig. 23 only operates if the ignition is switched on.

The fuel tank has a capacity of about 60 litres. If the amount of fuel reaches the reserve area (the pointer reaches the red scale range), the indicator symbol is illuminated » page 37.

! CAUTION

Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine and the exhaust system.

i Note

After filling up, it can occur that during dynamic driving (e.g. numerous curves, braking, driving downhill and climbing a steep hill) the fuel gauge indicates approx. a fraction less. When stopping or during less dynamic driving, the fuel gauge displays the correct fuel level again. This is not a fault.

Counter for distance driven

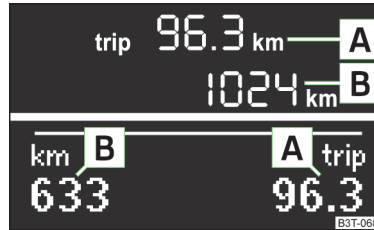


Fig. 24
Segment display / MAXI DOT display

Read and observe ! on page 28 first.

Display » Fig. 24

- A Trip odometer
- B Odometer

Daily trip counter (trip)

The counter indicates the distance you have driven since it was last reset - in steps of 100 metres or 1/10 of a mile.

Reset trip meter

Press and hold the [7] » Fig. 20 on page 28 button.

Odometer

The odometer indicates the total distance which the vehicle has been driven.

i Note

If the second speed display is enabled on vehicles with a segment display, this speed will be shown instead of the odometer.

Read and observe ! on page 28 first.

Use buttons [3] and [7] to set the clock » Fig. 20 on page 28.

- [3] The choice to change the display (hours or minutes).
- [7] The change of the displayed value.

In vehicles equipped with the MAXI DOT display, it is also possible to set the **Time** in the Time menu » page 45.

Display of the second speed

Read and observe  on page 28 first.

The display can show the current speed in mph¹⁾.

This feature is provided for driving in countries with different speed units.

Maxi DOT display

The display of the second speed can be set in the **Alt. speed dis.** menu item » page 45, *Settings*.

Segment display

- Press key **[3]** » Fig. 20 on page 28 repeatedly, until the odometer display flashes » page 30.
- Press the **[7]** key while the display flashes.

The second speed is displayed instead of the odometer.

The display of the second speed can be disabled in the same way.

Display in rear centre console



Fig. 25
Centre console at rear: Display

Read and observe  on page 28 first.

The time and the outside temperature is displayed on the display in the rear centre console when the ignition is switched on » Fig. 25.

The values are taken over by the instrument cluster.

Auto Check Control

Read and observe  on page 28 first.






Vehicle condition

Certain functions and conditions of individual vehicle systems are checked continuously when the ignition is switched on.

Some error messages and other information are displayed in the MAXI DOT display. The messages are displayed simultaneously with the icons in the MAXI DOT display or with the warning lights in the instrument cluster » page 32, *Warning lights*.

The menu item **Vehicle status** is shown in the main menu of the MAXI DOT display whenever at least one fault message exists. After selecting this menu, the first of the error messages is displayed. Several error messages are shown on the display under the message e.g. **1/3**. This indicates that the first of a total of three error messages is being displayed.

Warning symbols in the MAXI DOT display

	Engine oil pressure too low	» page 34
	Clutches of the automatic DSG gearbox are too hot	» page 31
	Check engine oil level, engine oil sensor defective	» page 35
	Thickness of brake pads	» page 38
	Problem with engine oil pressure	» page 31

Problem with the engine oil pressure

If the  symbol is shown in the MAXI DOT display, you must have your vehicle checked immediately by a specialist garage. The information about the maximum permissible engine speed is displayed together with this symbol.


Clutches of the automatic DSG gearbox are too hot

If the symbol appears in the MAXI DOT  display, this indicates that the temperature of the automatic DSG gearbox clutched is too high. ▶

¹⁾ For models with the speedometer in mph, the second speed is displayed in km/h.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

M Gearbox overheated. Stop! Log book!

do not continue to drive! Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and wait until the  icon goes out – risk of gearbox damage! You can continue your journey as soon as the symbol disappears.

! WARNING

If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and activate the hazard warning lights system » [page 70](#). The warning triangle must be set up at the prescribed distance - observe the national legal provisions when doing so.














i Note




















- If the MAXI DOT display shows warning messages, these messages must be confirmed in order to access the main menu » [page 40](#) .
- As long as the operational faults are not rectified, the symbols are always indicated again. After they are displayed for the first time, the symbols continue to be indicated without any extra messages for the driver.

Warning lights

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

	Handbrake	33
	Brake system	33
	Seat belt warning light	33
	Generator	33
	Door open	34
	Engine oil pressure	34
	Coolant	34
	Bonnet	34
	Boot lid	34
	Power steering / steering lock (system KESSY)	34
	Engine oil level	35
	Traction Control System (ASR)	35
	Electronic Stability Control (ESC)	35

	Antilock brake system (ABS)	36
	Rear fog light	36
	Lamp failure	36
	Adaptive headlights (AFS)	36
	Exhaust inspection system	36
	Glow plug system (diesel engine)	36
	Engine performance check (petrol engine)	37
	Diesel particulate filter (diesel engine)	37
	Fuel reserve	37
	Airbag system	38
	Tyre inflation pressure	38
	Windscreen washer fluid level	38
	Pads	38
	Turn signal system	38
	Low beam	39
	Fog lights	39
	Cruise control system	39
	Selector lever lock / starter (system KESSY)	39
	Main beam	39

The warning lights indicate certain functions or faults.

Some warning lights can be accompanied by acoustic signals and messages in the display of the instrument cluster.

After switching on the ignition, some warning lights **illuminate** briefly as a function test.

If the tested systems are OK, the corresponding warning lights go **out** a few seconds after switching on the ignition or after starting the engine. ▶

WARNING

- Ignoring illuminated warning lights and related messages or instructions in the display of the instrument cluster may lead to serious personal injury or damage to the vehicle.
- If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and activate the hazard warning lights system » [page 70](#). The warning triangle must be set up at the prescribed distance - observe the national legal provisions when doing so.
- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » [page 182](#), *Engine compartment*.

Handbrake

 Read and observe  on page 33 first.

The warning light  illuminates if the handbrake is applied.


An acoustic signal will sound if you drive the vehicle above 6 km/h for at least 3 seconds while the handbrake is applied.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

 Release parking brake!


Brake system

 Read and observe  on page 33 first.





The  indicator light illuminates if the brake fluid level in the braking system is too low or there is a fault in the ABS.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

 Brake fluid: Log book!


➤ Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the level of the brake fluid » [page 189](#) » .


WARNING


- If the warning light  is displayed simultaneously with warning light  » [page 36](#),  Antilock brake system (ABS),  do not continue your journey! Seek help from a specialist garage.
- A fault to the ABS system or the braking system can increase the vehicle's braking distance - risk of accident!
- The following guidelines should be observed when opening the bonnet and checking the brake fluid level » [page 182](#), *Engine compartment*.


Seat belt warning light

 Read and observe  on page 33 first.

The warning light  illuminates as a reminder for the driver and front passenger to fasten seat belts.


The indicator light  goes off after the respective seat belt is fastened.

If the driver or front passenger has not fastened their seat belt and the vehicle speed is more than 20 km/h, the warning light  flashes and you will hear an acoustic signal.

The warning signal is switched off and the indicator light is  permanently lit if the driver and front passenger have not fastened their seat belts within the next 90 seconds.




Generator

 Read and observe  on page 33 first.

If the warning light  illuminates when the engine is running, the vehicle battery is not being charged.


Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately. The electrical system requires checking.

CAUTION

If the  warning light (cooling system fault) lights up in addition to the  warning light while driving,  do not continue to drive! Stop the engine - there is a risk of engine damage! Seek help from a specialist garage.

Door open

 Read and observe  on page 33 first.

The indicator light  illuminates if one or several doors are opened.

Engine oil pressure


 Read and observe  on page 33 first.

When the warning light is **flashing** , the engine oil pressure is too low.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

 **Oil pressure: Log book!**

> Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the engine oil level » [page 186](#).

If the warning light **flashes**, , **do not drive any further**, even if the oil level is correct! Also do not leave the engine running at an idling speed.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Coolant

 Read and observe  on page 33 first.


If the warning light  **lights up** or **flashes**, either the coolant temperature is too high or the coolant level is too low.


The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

 **Check coolant! Log book!**



> Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the coolant level » [page 188](#).

> If the coolant level is too low, add coolant to the reservoir » [page 188](#).

If the indicator light  **does not illuminate** after adding coolant and switching on the ignition, you may continue your journey.

If the coolant level is within the specified range and the indicator light  is still **illuminated**, then there may be a malfunction of the cooling fan.

> Check the fuse for the radiator fan, replace if necessary » [page 217](#), *Fuses in the engine compartment*.

If the coolant level and fan fuse are both OK but the indicator light  is still **illuminated**, , **do not continue your journey!**

Seek help from a specialist garage.

WARNING

- Carefully open the coolant expansion bottle. If the engine is hot, the cooling system is pressurized - risk of scalding! It is therefore best to allow the engine to cool down before removing the cap.
- Do not touch the radiator fan. The radiator fan may switch itself on automatically even if the ignition is off.

CAUTION

- Additional headlights and other attached components in front of the air inlet impair the cooling efficiency of the coolant.
- Never cover the radiator - there is a risk of the engine overheating.

Bonnet

 Read and observe  on page 33 first.

The indicator light  illuminates if the bonnet is unlocked.

Boot lid


 Read and observe  on page 33 first.


The indicator light  illuminates if the boot lid is opened.

Power steering / steering lock (system KESSY)



 Read and observe  on page 33 first.



Power steering

If the indicator light  illuminates, this indicates a **partial failure** of the power steering and the steering forces can be greater.

If the indicator light , this indicates a **complete failure** of the power steering and the steering assist has failed (significantly higher steering forces).


> Stop the car, turn the ignition off and on again.



The powered steering is fully functional again if the  or  warning light **does not illuminate** after you switch the engine back on. ▶

If the warning light  or  illuminates again, then immediately obtain help from an authorised dealer.



Steering lock (KESSY system)

As long as the warning light  is flashing, the steering lock cannot be released.

If the warning light  flashes, a signal tone sounds, and the following message appears in the MAXI DOT- display **steering column lock**. If **Workshop!** appears the electrical steering lock is faulty. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

If the warning light  flashes, a beep sounds and in the MAXI DOT display the message **Steering lock defective** appears, then the electric steering lock is broken. Park the car,  **do not continue the journey**. After switching off the ignition, it is then no longer possible to lock the steering, to activate the electrical components (e.g. radio, navigation system), to switch on the ignition again and to start the engine. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Note

The  warning light illuminates after the ignition is switched on if the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected. If the warning light  does not go out after moving a short distance, this means there is an error in the system. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Engine oil level

 **Read and observe  on page 33 first.**

The indicator light lights up (oil quantity too low)

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Check oil level!


➤ Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the engine oil level » [page 186](#).

The warning light will **go out** if the bonnet is left open for more than 30 seconds. If no engine oil has been replenished, the warning light will **come on** again after driving about 100 km.

The indicator light flashes (engine oil level sensor faulty)

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Oil sensor: Workshop!

If the engine oil level sensor is faulty, the warning light  flashes several times and an audible signal sounds when the ignition is turned on.

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Traction Control System (ASR)

 **Read and observe  on page 33 first.**

The warning light  flashes to show that the ASR is currently operating.

If the warning light  illuminates, there is a fault in the ASR.


The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Error: Traction control (ASR)

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.



If the warning light  illuminates immediately after you start the engine, the ASR might be switched off due to technical reasons.

➤ Switch the ignition off and on again.

The ASR is fully functional again if the  warning light **no longer illuminates** after you switch the engine back on.

Further information » [page 152](#).

Note

The  warning light illuminates after the ignition is switched on if the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected. If the warning light  does not go out after moving a short distance, this means there is an error in the system. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

 **Read and observe  on page 33 first.**

The warning light  flashes to show that the ESC is currently operating.

If the warning light  illuminates, there is a fault in the ESC.


The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Error: Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately. ▶



If the warning light  **illuminates** immediately after you start the engine, the ESC might be switched off due to technical reasons.

➤ Switch the ignition off and on again.

The ESC is fully functional again if the warning light  **no longer illuminates** after you switch the engine back on.

Further information » [page 151](#).

Note

The  warning light illuminates after the ignition is switched on if the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected. If the warning light  does not go out after moving a short distance, this means there is an error in the system. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Antilock brake system (ABS)

 **Read and observe  on page 33 first.**





If the warning light  **illuminates**, there is a fault in the ABS.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Error: ABS

The vehicle will only be braked by the normal brake system without the ABS. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

WARNING

- If the warning light  is displayed at the same time as the warning light  » [page 33](#),  *Brake system*,  **do not continue your journey!** Seek help from a specialist garage.
- A fault to the ABS system or the braking system can increase the vehicle's braking distance – risk of accident!

Rear fog light


 **Read and observe  on page 33 first.**

The warning light  **illuminates** when the rear fog light is switched on.

Lamp failure

 **Read and observe  on page 33 first.**

The indicator light  **illuminates** if a lamp is faulty.


The indicator light  **illuminates** within a few seconds after switching on the ignition or when a light with a faulty lamp is switched on.

The following message, for example, may be shown in the MAXI DOT display.

 **INFORMATION Check front right low beam!**


Adaptive headlights (AFS)

 **Read and observe  on page 33 first.**

If the indicator light  **flashes** for 1 minute while driving or after switching on the ignition, there is a problem with the adaptive headlights.


The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

 **Cornering light (AFS) has no function. Log book!**

When the AFS mode "tourist light" (travel mode) is active » [page 69](#), the warning light  **flashes** for 10 seconds each time the ignition is switched on.

Exhaust inspection system


 **Read and observe  on page 33 first.**


If the warning light  **illuminates**, there is a fault in the exhaust inspection system. The system allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode.


Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Glow plug system (diesel engine)

 **Read and observe  on page 33 first.**

The warning light  **illuminates** after the ignition has been switched on. Once the light has gone out, the engine can be started immediately.

There is a fault in the glow plug system if the indicator light  **does not** come on at all or **lights up continuously**.

If the warning light  begins to **flash** while driving, a fault exists in the engine control. The system allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode. ▶

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Engine performance check (petrol engine)

 **Read and observe**  on page 33 first.


If the indicator light **EPC illuminates**, there is a fault in the engine control. The system allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode.



Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Diesel particulate filter (diesel engine)


 **Read and observe**  on page 33 first.



The diesel particulate filter separates the soot particles from the exhaust. The soot particles collect in the diesel particulate filter where they are burnt on a regular basis.

If the indicator light  **illuminates**, soot has accumulated in the filter.

To clean the filter, and where traffic conditions permit **>> **, drive as follows for at least 15 minutes or until the indicator light  goes out.


- ✓ 4th or 5th gear selected (automatic gearbox: position S).
- ✓ Vehicle speed at least 70 km/h.
- ✓ Engine speed between 1800 - 2500 rpm.

If the filter is properly cleaned, the warning icon  **goes out**.

If the filter is not properly cleaned, the warning light  **does not go out** and the warning light  begins to **flash**.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

 **Diesel particulate filter: Log book!**


The system allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode. After switching the ignition off and on again the indicator light, the indicator light  also **illuminates**.

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

WARNING

- The diesel particulate filter reaches very high temperatures - there is a fire hazard and serious injury could be caused. Therefore, never stop the vehicle at places where the underside of your vehicle can come into contact with flammable materials such as dry grass, undergrowth, leaves, spilled fuel or such like.
- Always adjust your speed to suit weather, road, region and traffic conditions. The recommendations indicated by the indicator light must not tempt you to disregard the national regulations for road traffic.

CAUTION


- As long as the indicator light  lights up, one must take into account an increased fuel consumption and in certain circumstances a power reduction of the engine.
- Using diesel fuel with an increased sulphur content can considerably reduce the life of the diesel particle filter. A ŠKODA partner will be able to tell you which countries use diesel fuel with a high sulphur content.

Note

- To assist the combustion process of the soot particles in the filter, we recommend that regularly driving short distances be avoided.
- If the engine is turned off during the filter cleaning process or shortly afterwards, the cooling fan may turn on automatically for a few minutes.

Fuel reserve

 **Read and observe**  on page 33 first.

The warning light  **illuminates** if the fuel level is less than 9 litres.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

 **Please refuel. Range: ... km**

CAUTION


Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine and the exhaust system.

Note

The text in the display goes out only after refuelling and driving a short distance.

Airbag system

 **Read and observe**  on page 33 first.


If the warning light  **illuminates**, there is a fault in the airbag system.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Error: Airbag

The functionality of the airbag system is monitored electronically even if one of the airbags is switched off.


If a front, side or head airbag or belt tensioner has been switched off using the vehicle system tester:

➤ The warning  **illuminates** for approx. 4 seconds after switching on the ignition and then **flashes** again for approx. 12 seconds.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Airbag/belt tensioner deactivated.

If the air bag was switched off using the key-operated switch on the side of the dash panel on the passenger side:

➤ The indicator light  **illuminates** for around 4 seconds after the ignition has been switched on;


➤ The deactivated air bag is indicated by the illumination of the warning light » [page 20](#) **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** in the middle of the dash panel .

WARNING

When a fault in the airbag system occurs, there is a risk of the system not being triggered in the event of an accident. Therefore, this must be checked immediately by a specialized company.


Tyre inflation pressure

 **Read and observe**  on page 33 first.


The warning light  **illuminates**, if there is a substantial drop in inflation pressure in one of the tyres.

An audible signal sounds as a warning signal.

➤ Check and adjust the pressure in all tyres » [page 194](#), *Service life of tyres*.



If the indicator light  **flashes**, there is a fault in the tyre pressure monitoring system.

➤ Stop the car, turn the ignition off and on again.

If the warning light  **flashes** again after re-starting the engine, then the help of a professional service provider must be sought immediately.


Further information » [page 196](#), *Tyre pressure monitor*.

Note

The  warning light illuminates after the ignition is switched on if the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected. If the warning light  does not go out after moving a short distance, this means there is an error in the system. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Windscreen washer fluid level

 **Read and observe**  on page 33 first.

If the windscreen washer fluid level is too low, the warning light  **illuminates**.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Top up wash fluid!

Top up with liquid » [page 184](#), *Windscreen washer system*.

Pads

 **Read and observe**  on page 33 first.

If the indicator light  **is illuminated**, the brake pads are worn.



The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Check brake wear!

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Turn signal system

 **Read and observe**  on page 33 first.

Either the left  or right  warning light **flashes** depending on the position of the turn signal lever.

If there is a fault in the turn signal system, the warning light **flashes** at twice its normal rate. ▶

Switching off the hazard warning light system is switched on will cause all of the turn signal lights as well as both warning lights to **flash**.

Low beam

 **Read and observe**  on page 33 first.

The warning light  illuminates when low beam is selected.

Fog lights

 **Read and observe**  on page 33 first.

The warning light  illuminates when the fog lights are operating.


Cruise control system

 **Read and observe**  on page 33 first.

The warning light  illuminates when the cruise control is active.


Selector lever lock / starter (system KESSY)

 **Read and observe**  on page 33 first.

If the warning light  illuminates, operate the brake pedal. This is necessary to move the selector lever from position **P** and **N** » page 143 or to start the engine in vehicles with the KESSY system » page 139.

Main beam

 **Read and observe**  on page 33 first.

The warning light  illuminates when the main beam is selected or when the headlight flasher is operated.

Information system

Driver information system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Using the information system	40
Display a low temperature	40
Gear recommendation	40
Door, boot or engine compartment warning	41

The information system provides the driver with alerts and messages about individual vehicle systems. This information and advice is shown in the instrument cluster display or indicated by the illumination of the corresponding indicator light in the instrument cluster.

The information system provides the following information and instructions (depending on vehicle equipment).

- Data relating to the multi-function display (MFD) » page 41.
- Data relating to the Maxi DOT display » page 44.
- Service interval display » page 46.
- Auto Check Control » page 31.
- Selector lever positions for an automatic gearbox » page 142.

WARNING

Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver, you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.

Using the information system

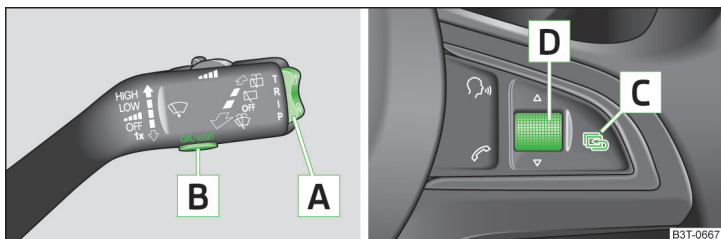


Fig. 26 Buttons / dial: on the operating lever / on the multifunction steering wheel

Read and observe **!** on page 39 first.

Some functions of the information system can be operated using the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel » Fig. 26.

Description of the operation

Button/wheel » Fig. 26	Action	Operation
A	Briefly push up or down	Select data / set data values
	Press and hold button	Main menu of the MAXI DOT display » page 44
B	Press briefly	View information / confirm specification
C	Press briefly	return to go up one level in the menu MAXI DOT display » page 44
	Press button for a long period of time	Main menu of the MAXI DOT display » page 44
D	Turn upwards or downwards	Select data / set data values
	Press briefly	View information / confirm specification

Display a low temperature

Read and observe **!** on page 39 first.

Prompt in the MAXI DOT display

If the outside temperature while driving drops to below +4°C, the following icon appears on the display in front of the temperature display ❄️. An audible signal is emitted.

If the outside temperature is already below +4°C when turning the ignition on, the ❄️ icon appears immediately.

Prompt in the segment display

If the outside temperature while driving drops to below +4°C, the temperature display will show up with the following icon before this occurs ❄️. An audible signal is emitted.

If the outside temperature is already below +4°C when turning the ignition on, the temperature display and the ❄️ icon appear immediately.

After pressing button **A** » Fig. 26 on page 40, the most recently displayed data is shown.

! WARNING

Even at temperatures of around +4 °C, there may still be black ice on the road surface. You should therefore not rely solely on the outside temperature display for accurate information as to whether there is ice on the road.

Gear recommendation

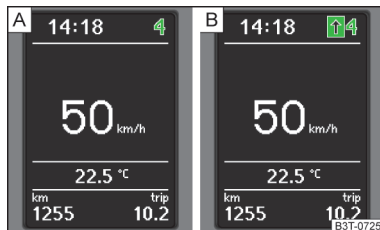


Fig. 27 Information on the selected gear / Gear recommendation

Read and observe **!** on page 39 first.

The function of the gear recommendation is to help reduce fuel consumption. ▶

Caption » Fig. 27

- A Optimal gear engaged
- B Recommended gear

Recommended gear

The gear recommendation is intended only for vehicles with a manual transmission or for vehicles with an automatic transmission in manual shift mode (Tiptronic).

The **recommended**¹⁾ gear and the arrow icon²⁾ is displayed.

- ↑ Recommends that you shift to a **higher** gear.
- ↓ Recommends that you shift to a **lower** gear.

If for example 4↑ is shown in the display with vehicles that have a **manual gearbox** this indicates that it is better to shift from a lower gear to the 4th gear.

If for example 4↑ is shown in the display with vehicles that have an **automatic gearbox** and are in the manual switching mode (Tiptronic), this indicates that it is better to shift from the 4th gear to a higher gear.

! WARNING

The driver is always responsible for selecting the correct gear in different driving situations, such as overtaking.

🌱 For the sake of the environment

A suitably selected gear has the following advantages.

- It helps to reduce fuel consumption.
- It reduces the operating noise.
- It protects the environment.
- It benefits the durability and reliability of the engine.

Door, boot or engine compartment warning

📖 Read and observe ! on page 39 first.

Vehicles with a MAXI DOT display

If at least one door, the boot or bonnet is open, the display indicates the relevant **open** door, boot or bonnet vehicle icon.

¹⁾ With vehicles that have an automatic gearbox and in the manual switching mode (Tiptronic) the **currently engaged gear** is shown.

²⁾ For vehicles with segment display the arrow is displayed behind the gear indication.

Vehicles with a segment display

If at least one door or the boot or bonnet is open, the indicator lights  or  and  come on in the instrument cluster » page 32, *Warning lights*.

An acoustic signal will also sound if you drive the vehicle above 6 km/h when a door is open.

Multifunction display (MFD)

📖 Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Memory	42
Information overview	42
Warning at excessive speeds	43

The driving data is displayed on the multifunction display.

The multifunction display only operates if the ignition is switched on. After the ignition is switched on, the function that was last selected before switching off the ignition is displayed.

For vehicles with a MAXI DOT display, the menu item **MFA** must be selected and confirmed in the main menu » page 44, *MAXI DOT display*.

On vehicles with a MAXI DOT display, there is an option to fade out some of the information » page 45, *Settings*.

! WARNING

- Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver, you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.
- Even at temperatures of around +4 °C, there may still be black ice on the road surface. You should therefore not rely solely on the outside temperature display for accurate information as to whether there is ice on the road.

! CAUTION

Pull out the ignition key if coming in contact with the display (e.g. when cleaning) to prevent any possible damage. On vehicles with the KESSY system, switch off the ignition and open the driver's door. ▶

i Note

- In certain national versions the displays appear in the Imperial system of measures.
- If the display of the second speed is activated in mph, the current speed is not indicated in km/h on the display.
- The amount of fuel consumed will not be indicated.

Memory



Fig. 28
Multi-function display - memory display

Read and observe **i** and **j** on page 41 first.

The multifunction display is equipped with two automatic memories, **1** and **2**.

Display of the selected memory in the display at the position **A** » Fig. 28 .

- 1 Single-trip memory
- 2 Total trip memory

Select memory

» Select the corresponding element of the multifunction display » page 42.

Confirm the element again to switch between the individual memories.

Resetting

» Select the corresponding element of the multifunction display » page 42.

» Select the desired memory.

» Press and hold button **B** or adjustment wheel **D** » Fig. 26 on page 40.

Single-trip memory (memory 1)

The single-trip memory collates the driving information from the moment the ignition is switched on until it is switched off.

New data will also flow into the calculation of the current driving information if the trip is continued **within 2 hours** after switching off the ignition.

If the trip is interrupted for **more than 2 hours**, the memory is automatically erased.

Total-trip memory (memory 2)

The total trip memory collates the data from any number of individual trips up to a total of 19 hours and 59 minutes or a 1999 km distance or, for vehicles with a MAXI DOT display, 99 hours and 59 minutes, or a 9999 km distance.

The memory is deleted when either of these limits is reached and the calculation starts all over again.

Unlike the single-trip memory, the total-trip memory is not deleted after a period of interruption of driving of 2 hours.

The following values of the selected memory are set to zero.

- » Average fuel consumption.
- » Distance driven.
- » Average speed.
- » Driving time

i Note

Disconnecting the vehicle battery will delete all memory data.

Information overview

Read and observe **i** and **j** on page 41 first.

Outside temperature

The current outside temperature is displayed.

For vehicles with a MAXI DOT display this information is always shown.

Driving time

The time travelled since the memory was last erased is displayed.

If you want to measure the time travelled from a particular moment in time on, at this moment, reset the memory by setting the button to zero » page 42, *Memory*.

The maximum time indicated in both memories is 19 hours and 59 minutes and on vehicles which are fitted with a MAXI DOT display, it is 99 hours and 59 minutes. The indicator is set back to zero if this period is exceeded. ▶

Current fuel consumption

The current fuel consumption level is displayed in litres/100 km¹⁾. You can use this information to adapt your driving style to the desired fuel consumption.

The display appears in litres/hour if the vehicle is stationary or driving at a low speed²⁾.

Average fuel consumption


The average fuel consumption since the memory was last erased is displayed in litres/100 km¹⁾.

If you wish to determine the average fuel consumption over a certain period of time, you must set the memory at the start of the new measurement to zero » [page 42, Memory](#). After erasing the memory, no value is displayed until you have driven approx. 300 m.

The display is updated regularly while you are driving.

Range

The range indicates the distance you can still drive with your vehicle based on the level of fuel in the tank and the same style of driving as before.

The display is shown in steps of 10 km. After lighting up of the indicator light  the display is shown in steps of 5 km.

The fuel consumption over the last 50 km is used to calculate the information. The range will increase if you drive in a more economical manner.

If the memory is set to zero (after disconnecting the battery), a fuel consumption of 10 l./100 km is calculated for the range; afterwards the value is updated according to the style of driving.

Distance travelled

The distance travelled since the memory was last erased is displayed.

If you want to measure the distance travelled from a particular moment in time on, at this moment, reset the memory by setting the button to zero » [page 42, Memory](#).

The maximum distance indicated in both memories is 1 999 km or 9 999 km on vehicles with a MAXI DOT display. The indicator is set back to zero if this period is exceeded.

Average speed


The average speed since the memory was last erased is displayed in km/hour .

To determine the average speed over a certain period of time, set the memory to zero at the start of the measurement » [page 42, Memory](#).

After erasing the memory, no data will appear for the first 300 m driven.

The display is updated regularly while you are driving.

Current driving speed

The current speed displayed is identical to the display on the speedometer  » [Fig. 20 on page 28](#).

Oil temperature³⁾

If the engine oil temperature is in the range 80-110 °C, the engine operating temperature is reached.

If the oil temperature is lower than 80 °C or above 110 °C, avoid high engine revs, full throttle and high engine loads.

If the oil temperature is lower than 50 °C or if a fault in the system for checking the oil temperature is present, -- -- symbols are displayed instead of the oil temperature.


Warning against speeding

Set the speed limit, for example, for the maximum permissible speed in town » [page 43, Warning at excessive speeds](#).

Warning at excessive speeds

 **Read and observe  and  on page 41 first.**

Adjust the speed limit while the vehicle is stationary

- Select the menu item **Speed warning** (MAXI DOT display) or  (segment display).
- Activate the speed limit option by confirming this menu item⁴⁾.
- Set the desired speed limit, e.g. 50 km/h.
- Store the speed limit by confirming the set value, or wait several seconds; your settings will be saved automatically. ▶

¹⁾ On some models in certain countries, the display appears in kilometres/litre.

²⁾ On some models in certain countries, -- -- km/ltr. is displayed when the vehicle is stationary.

³⁾ Applies to vehicles using the MAXI DOT display.

⁴⁾ If no value is set the output value 30 km/h is automatically displayed.

The speed limit can be adjusted from 30 km/h to 250 km/h in 5 km/h increments.

Adjusting the speed limit while the vehicle is moving

- Select the menu item **Speed warning** (MAXI DOT display) or ⊖ (segment display).
- Drive at the desired speed, e.g. 50 km/h.
- Confirm the current speed as the speed limit.

If you wish to adjust the set speed limit, you can do so in 5 km/h intervals (e.g. the accepted speed of 47 km/h increases to 50 km/h or decreases to 45 km/h).

- Store the speed limit, or wait several seconds; your settings will be saved automatically.

Change or disable speed limit

- Select the menu item **Speed warning** (MAXI DOT display) or ⊖ (segment display).
- By confirming the stored value, the speed limit is disabled.
- By reconfirming, the option to change the speed limit is activated.

If the set speed limit is exceeded, an audible signal will sound as a warning. The menu item **Speed warning** (MAXI DOT display) or ⊖ (Segment display) appears in the display at the same time as the set threshold.

The set driving mode is stored even after switching the ignition on and off.

MAXI DOT display

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Main menu	44
Settings	45
Compass point display	46

The MAXI DOT display provides you with information about the **current operating state of your vehicle**. Depending on the vehicle equipment, it also provides you with data relating to the radio, multifunction display (MFD), mobile phone, navigation system, automatic gearbox and devices connected via the MDI input. Furthermore, it allows the adjustment of some other features of your vehicle.

! WARNING

Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver, you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.

! CAUTION

Pull out the ignition key if coming in contact with the display (e.g. when cleaning) to prevent any possible damage. On vehicles with the KESSY system, switch off the ignition and open the driver's door.

Main menu

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 44 first.

In order to activate the primary menu **MAIN MENU**, press and hold down Button **[A]** or **[C]** » Fig. 26 on page 40. By briefly pressing the **[C]** button you will reach one level higher.

Main menu items (depending on vehicle equipment)

- **MFD** (Multifunction display) » page 41
- **Audio** » *Operating instructions for the radio*
- **Navigation** » *Operating instructions for the navigation system*
- **Phone** » page 119;
- **Aux. heating** » page 116
- **Assist systems** » page 162
- **Vehicle status** » page 31
- **Settings** » page 45

The **Audio** and **Navigation** menu items are only displayed when the factory-fitted radio or navigation system is switched on.

i Note

- If warning messages are displayed, these messages must be verified to access the main menu » page 40, *Using the information system*.
- If the display is not activated at that moment, the menu always shifts to one of the higher levels after approx. 10 seconds.
- Using the factory-fitted radio or navigation system » *Radio operating instructions* or » *navigation system operating instructions*.

Settings

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 44 first.

You can change certain settings by means of the MAXI DOT display. The current menu item is shown in the top of the display under a line.

The following information can be selected (depending on the equipment installed in the vehicle).

Language

You can set the language for the display texts here.

Automatic blind (Combi)

This is where the automatic roll-up function of the boot roll cover can be deactivated/activated when opening the boot lid.

MFD displays

Activate or deactivate certain displays of the multifunction display here.

Comfort

The following functions can be activated, deactivated or adjusted here:

Rain closing	Activate/deactivate the function for automatically closing the window and the tilt/slide sunroof in a locked vehicle when it starts raining ^{a)} . If the function is activated and it is not raining, the windows including the panoramic tilt/slide sunroof will close automatically after approx. 12 hours.
ATA confirm	Switch on/off the audible signal indicating activation of the anti-theft alarm system. Further information » page 54 .
Central locking	Switch on/off the central locking and automatic locking function, also applies to the KESSY system. Further information » page 52 , <i>Individual settings</i> .
Window op.	Only convenience mode for the driver window or for all of the windows can be adjusted here. Further information » page 61 , <i>Window convenience operation</i> .
Mirror down	Activate/deactivate the function for mirror lowering on the front passenger side when in the reverse gear ^{b)} . Further information » page 78 , <i>Fold in passenger's mirror</i> .

Mirror adjust.	Activation / deactivation of the synchronous exterior mirror function settings. Further information » page 78 , <i>Synchronous adjustment of the mirror</i> .
Factory setting	Restore the Convenience factory setting.

^{a)} This function is only available on vehicles with a rain sensor.

^{b)} This function is only available on vehicles with an electrically adjustable driver seat.

Lights and Visibility

The following functions can be activated, deactivated or adjusted here:

Coming Home	Activate/deactivate and adjust the light duration of the COMING HOME function. Further information » page 70 .
Leaving Home	Switch on/off and adjust the light duration of the LEAVING HOME function. Further information » page 70 .
Footwell light	Activate/deactivate and adjust the footwell light intensity.
Daytime running lights	Activate/deactivate "DAY LIGHT" function. Further information » page 67 , <i>Daylight running lights (DAY LIGHT)</i> .
Rear wiper	Activate/deactivate the function of the automatic rear window wiping. Further information » page 76 , <i>Automatic rear window wiper (Superb Combi)</i> .
Lane ch. flash	Activate/deactivate the lane ch. flash function. Further information » page 67 .
Travel mode	Activate/deactivate the travel mode feature. Further information » page 69 , <i>Tourist lights (Travel mode)</i> .
Factory setting	Restore the factory setting for the lighting.

Time

The time, time format (12 or 24 hour indicator) and the changeover between summer/winter time can be set here.

Winter tyres

Here, the speed and the switching on and off of the acoustic signals when exceeding this speed can be adjusted. This function is, for example, used for winter tyres where the maximum permissible speed is lower than the maximum speed of the vehicle » [page 193](#).

As soon as the parking procedure is completed, an audible signal sounds and the following message appears in the information display.

Winter tyres: maximum ... km/h.

Units of measurement

The units for the temperature, consumption and distance driven can be set here.

Assistants

The tones of the audible signals for the parking aid can be adjusted here.

Alt. speed dis.

Here, the display of the second speed in mph¹⁾ can be activated.

Further information » [page 31](#), *Display of the second speed*.

Service

The days and kilometres remaining until the next service can be displayed here.

Further information » [page 46](#), *Service interval display*.

Factory setting

The factory setting of the functions of the MAXI DOT display can be restored here.

Compass point display

 **Read and observe  and  on page 44 first.**

For vehicles with a factory fitted navigation system, an abbreviation for each point of the compass (depending on the current direction of travel) is shown on the top left-hand corner of the display.

The compass point display only operates when the ignition is switched on.

Service interval display

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Prompt in the MAXI DOT display	46
Prompt in the segment display	47
Resetting the service interval display	47

The service interval display shows the time and mileage to the next service event.

The service due date is automatically displayed on the display and this information can be displayed manually if necessary.

The kilometre indicator or the days indicator reduces in steps of 100 km or, where applicable, days until the service due date is reached.

The information regarding the service intervals can be found in the service schedule.

Note

Information is retained in the Service Interval Display even after the vehicle battery is disconnected.

Prompt in the MAXI DOT display

Oil change service

If an oil change service is **due**, the following message appears: **Oil change in ... km or ... days.**

As soon as the service interval date **has been reached**, the message **Oil change now!** appears once the ignition has been switched on!

Inspection

If an inspection is **due**, the following message appears: **Inspection in ... km or ... days.**

As soon as the service interval date **has been reached**, the message **Inspection now!** appears once the ignition has been switched on! ▶

¹⁾ For models with the speedometer in mph, the second speed is displayed in km/h.

Displaying the distance and days until the next service interval

You can view the remaining distance and days until the next service appointment at any time when the ignition is switched on by going to the **Service** menu item » page 45, *Settings* or from the **Vehicle status** in the main menu of the Maxi DOTdisplay. » page 44, *Main menu* .

The following message is displayed for 10 seconds.

Oil change ... km / ... days

Inspection ... km / ... days

Prompt in the segment display

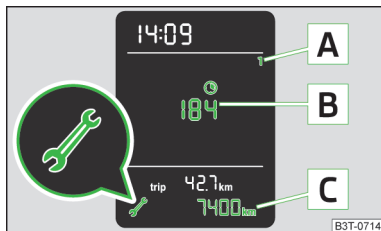


Fig. 29
Segment display: Example of a message

Explanation of a graphic » Fig. 29.

🔧 Service due

A Differentiating between types of service

B Days remaining until the next service interval

C Kilometres remaining until the next service interval¹⁾

Differentiating between types of service

The service type is determined by the number in position **A** » Fig. 29.

1 Oil change service

2 Inspection

Service due

If a service becomes **due**, then the following information is displayed for about 10 seconds » Fig. 29.

➤ The number **1** or **2** is displayed in position **A**.

➤ The symbol 🛠️ and the number of days remaining until the next service interval are displayed in position **B**.

➤ The symbol 🛠️ and the number of kilometres remaining until the next service interval are displayed in position **C**.

As soon as the due date for the service **has been reached**, the flashing icon 🛠️ and the message **OIL CHNG** or **INSPEC_** appear in the display for about 20 seconds after the ignition has been switched on.

Display the days and distance until the next service interval

You can press button **3** » Fig. 20 on page 28 repeatedly to display the remaining distance and time to until the next service whenever the ignition is switched on.

Information on the **oil change service** is displayed at first, followed by information on the **inspection** when button **3** is pressed again.

➤ The number **1** or **2** is displayed in position **A**.

➤ The symbol 🛠️ and the number of days remaining until the next service interval are displayed in position **B**.

➤ The symbol 🛠️ and the number of kilometres remaining until the next service interval are displayed in position **C**.

Resetting the service interval display

We recommend that the display reset is completed by a specialist garage.

We recommend that you do not reset the service interval display yourself. Incorrectly setting the service interval display could cause problems to the vehicle.

Variable service interval

For vehicles with variable service intervals, after resetting the oil change service display, the values of a new service interval are displayed, which are based on the previous operating conditions of the vehicle.

These values are then continuously matched according to the actual operating conditions of the vehicle.

¹⁾ The kilometres remaining until the next service interval are displayed instead of the odometer.

Unlocking and opening

Unlocking and locking

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Vehicle key	49
Unlock/lock with remote control	49
Unlocking / locking - KESSY	50
Information message	51
Parking the vehicle	51
Safe securing	51
Individual settings	52
Locking/unlocking the vehicle from the inside	52
Child safety lock	53
Opening/closing a door	53

Your car is equipped with a central locking system.

The central locking system allows you to lock and unlock **all** doors, the fuel filler flap and tailgate at the same time based on the current setting¹⁾.

The safe securing system » [page 51](#) is integrated in the central locking system. Once the car is locked from the outside, the door locks²⁾ are automatically blocked by the safe securing system » [!](#).

The following takes place after unlocking¹⁾.

- › The doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap are unlocked.
- › The interior light, which is switched by the door contact, comes on.
- › The safe securing system is switched off²⁾.
- › The indicator light in the driver door stops flashing.
- › The anti-theft alarm system is deactivated.

The following takes place after locking¹⁾.

- › The doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap are locked.
- › The interior lights switched by the door contact come on.
- › The safe securing system is switched on²⁾.

- › The indicator light in the driver door begins flashing.
- › The anti-theft alarm system is activated.

Displaying an error

If the indicator light in the driver's door initially flashes quickly for around 2 seconds, and then lights up for 30 seconds without interruption before flashing again slowly, you will need to seek the assistance of a specialist garage.

! WARNING

- Never leave the key in the vehicle when you exit the vehicle. Unauthorized persons, such as children, for example, could lock the car, turn on the ignition or start the engine - there is a danger of injury and accidents!
- When leaving the vehicle, never leave persons who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle. The children might, for example, release the handbrake or take the vehicle out of gear. The vehicle could then start to move - risk of injury and accidents! These individuals might also not be able to leave the vehicle on their own or to help themselves. Can be fatal at very high or very low temperatures!
- If the car is locked from the outside and the safelock system is switched on, there must not be any person in the car as it is then not possible to open either a door or a window from the inside. The locked doors make it more difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency - risk to life.

i Note

- When leaving the vehicle, always check if it is locked.
- In the event of an accident in which the airbags are deployed, the locked doors are automatically unlocked in order to enable rescuers to gain access to the vehicle.
- Upon failure of the central locking system the key can be used only to unlock and lock the driver's door. The other doors and the boot lid can be emergency locked or released.
 - Emergency locking of the door » [page 212](#).
 - Emergency unlocking of the boot lid » [page 212](#).

¹⁾ Depending on the individual setting » [page 52](#).

²⁾ This function is only enabled in certain countries.

Vehicle key

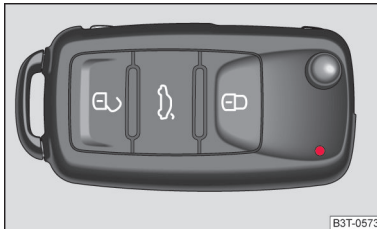


Fig. 30
Remote control key

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 48 first.

Two remote control keys are provided with the vehicle» Fig. 30.

The transmitter with the battery is housed in the handle of the remote control key. The receiver is located in the interior of the vehicle.

The operating range of the remote control key is approx. 30 m. But this range of the remote control can be reduced if the batteries are weak.

The wireless key has a flip-out key bit.

The spare key must be initialised by a specialist garage after repair or replacement of the receiver unit. Only then can the remote control key be used again.

⚠ CAUTION

- Each key contains electronic components; therefore it must be protected against moisture and severe shocks.
- Keep the groove of the keys absolutely clean. Impurities (textile fibres, dust, etc.) have a negative effect on the functionality of the locking cylinder and ignition lock.
- The battery must be replaced if the central locking or anti-theft alarm system does react to the remote control at less than approx. 3 metres away » page 211.

i Note

If you lose a key, please contact a specialist garage, who will be able to provide you with a new one.

Unlock/lock with remote control

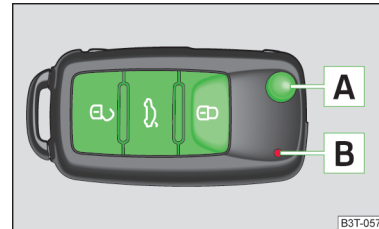


Fig. 31
Remote control key

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 48 first.

Image description » Fig. 31

- 🔓 Unlocking the vehicle
- 🔒 Locking the vehicle
- 🔑 Unlocking the boot lid
- A** Folding out/folding up of the key bit
- B** Warning light

Unlocking

The turn signal lights flash twice as confirmation that the vehicle has been unlocked.

If you unlock the vehicle and do not open a door or the boot lid within the next 30 seconds, the vehicle will lock again automatically and the safe lock system¹⁾ or anti-theft alarm system will be switched on. This function is intended to prevent the car being unlocked unintentionally.

The seat and mirror are adjusted after the vehicle is unlocked » page 82.

Locking

The turn signal lights flash once as confirmation that the vehicle has been locked.

If the doors or the boot lid remain open after the vehicle has been locked, the turn signal lights do not flash until they have been closed.

The current position of the seat and mirror after the vehicle is locked » page 82.

¹⁾ This function is only enabled in certain countries.

Checking the battery condition

If the red indicator light **[B]** » Fig. 31 does not flash when you press a button on the remote control key, the battery is empty. Replace the battery » page 211.

! CAUTION

- Only operate the remote control when the doors and boot lid are closed and the vehicle is in your line of sight.
- If the driver door is open, the vehicle cannot be locked using the remote control key.
- The operation of the remote control may temporarily be affected by signal interference from transmitters close to the car and which operate in the same frequency range (e.g. mobile phone, TV transmitter).

i Note

For vehicles with anti-theft alarm the acoustic signals can also be activated/deactivated by locking/unlocking » page 45.

Unlocking / locking - KESSY

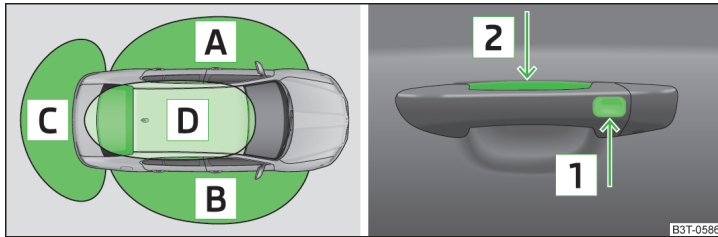


Fig. 32 KESSY: Name of the zones/sensors in the handle of the front door

📖 Read and observe **i** on page 48 first.

The KESSY system (Keyless Entry Start Exit System) enables unlocking and locking of the vehicle without actively using the remote control key.

Unlocking or locking areas » Fig. 32

- [A]** Front door left
- [B]** Front door right
- [C]** Luggage compartment lid
- [D]** Roof front

The KESSY system (Keyless Entry Start Exit System) enables unlocking and locking of the vehicle without actively using the remote control key. The key must be in one of the areas **[A]**, **[B]** or **[C]** » Fig. 32 (about 1.5 meters away from the vehicle).

Unlocking

➤ Grab the door handle of the front door or cover the sensor **[2]** » Fig. 32 with the whole palm of your hand » **i**.

Locking

➤ Touch the sensor **[1]** » Fig. 32 with your fingers.

On vehicles fitted with automatic gearbox, the selector lever must be moved into the position **P** before unlocking.

Unlocking the boot lid

➤ Press the button in the handle of the boot lid » page 55.

Switching off the safelock system

➤ Touch the sensor **[1]** » Fig. 32 twice within 2 seconds with your fingers.

If you cover the sensor **[2]** at the same time as the sensor **[1]** when unlocking the vehicle, it is not unlocked.

If the vehicle is locked via the sensor **[1]**, it will not be possible to unlock it again in the following **[2]** seconds via the sensor 2 - prevents accidental unlocking.

The KESSY system can find the valid key, even if it was left in the front of the vehicle's roof for example **[D]** » Fig. 32. It is therefore not always necessary to know where the key is.

! CAUTION

- Do not use objects which might prevent direct contact between the hand and the sensor.
- Some types of gloves can impair the function of the grip sensor.
- After leaving the vehicle, it does not lock automatically, the procedure for locking the vehicle must therefore be observed.
- If the battery in the key is weak or discharged, the vehicle may not be unlocked or locked via the KESSY system. In this case, use the emergency unlock- or emergency locking on the driver's door » page 212.

Information message

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 48 first.

Key in the vehicle

The protection against inadvertently locking the key in the vehicle unlocks the vehicle automatically if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ The vehicle, including the boot lid, has been locked.
- ✓ The key with which the vehicle has been locked remains in the vehicle in the zone **D** » Fig. 32 on page 50.

The turn signal lights flash four times as confirmation that the vehicle has been unlocked again.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

- M** Key in vehicle.
- S** KEY IN VEHICLE

Additionally, on vehicles which are fitted with the anti-theft alarm system, an audible signal sounds.

The system has not found a key

If the system has not found a key in the vehicle, the following message appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

- M** Key not found.
- S** NO KEY

This can occur if the key is outside the vehicle, the battery in the key is discharged, the key is defective or the electromagnetic field is strongly disturbed.

Fault in KESSY system

If there is a fault in the KESSY system, the following message will appear in the display of the instrument cluster.

- M** Keyless access system faulty.
- S** CHECK KEYLESS

Low voltage of the key battery

If the voltage of the battery in the remote control key is too low, the following message appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

- M** Change the key battery!
- S** KEY BATTERY


Change the key battery » page 211!

Parking the vehicle


📖 Read and observe **!** on page 48 first.

If the vehicle is not unlocked within 60 or 90 hours, the sensors in the handle of the driver or front passenger's door are deactivated automatically » Fig. 32 on page 50.

Activation after 60 hours

- Unlock the driver's door using the sensor **Z** » Fig. 32 on page 50.
- Press the handle of the boot lid.
- Unlock the vehicle using the symbol button  on the remote control key.
- Unlocking the driver's door in an emergency » page 212.

Activation after 90 hours

- Unlock the vehicle using the symbol button  on the remote control key.
- Unlocking the driver's door in an emergency » page 212.

Safe securing

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 48 first.

The door locks are blocked automatically if the vehicle is locked from the outside. Afterwards, it is not possible to open the doors with the door handle either from the inside or from the outside.

This fact is pointed out by the following message on the display of the instrument cluster after switching out the ignition.

- M** Check SAFELOCK! Log book!
- S** CHECK SAFELOCK

Switching off

The safe lock can be switched off in one of the following ways.

- By locking twice within 2 seconds.
- By disabling the interior monitoring » page 54, *Interior monitor and towing protection*.

If the vehicle is locked and the safe securing system is switched off, the door can be opened separately from the inside by a single pull on opening lever.

Switching on

The safelock switches on automatically the next time the vehicle is locked and unlocked. ▶

Switch-on display

The indicator light flashes for around 2 seconds in quick succession, afterwards it begins to flash evenly at longer intervals.

Switch-off display

The indicator light in the driver door flashes for about 2 seconds fast, goes out and starts to flash at longer intervals after about 30 seconds.

! WARNING

If the car is locked and the safe securing system activated, no people must remain in the car as it will then not be possible to either unlock a door or open a window from the inside. The locked doors make it more difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – risk to life!

i Note

This function is only enabled in certain countries.

Individual settings

📖 **Read and observe ! on page 48 first.**

The following central locking functions can be set via the MAXI DOT display » [page 45, Settings](#) .

Opening a single door

This function makes it possible to only unlock the driver's door. The other doors and the boot lid remain locked and are only unlocked after being opened again.

Unlocking doors on one side of a vehicle


This function enables you to unlock both doors on the driver's side. The other doors and the boot lid remain locked and are only unlocked after being opened again.

Unlocking the vehicle with the KESSY system

This function enables you to unlock all the doors, individual doors, both doors on the left or right vehicle side. The other doors and the boot lid remain locked and are only unlocked after being opened again.

Automatic locking/unlocking

All doors are locked from a speed of around 15 km/h. The button in the handle of the boot lid is deactivated.

If the ignition key is withdrawn, the car is then automatically unlocked again. In addition, it is possible for the driver or front passenger to unlock the car by pressing the central locking button .

The vehicle doors can be unlocked and opened at any time by pulling once on the door opening lever.

! WARNING

Locked doors prevent unwanted entry into the vehicle from outside, for example at road crossings.

Locking/unlocking the vehicle from the inside

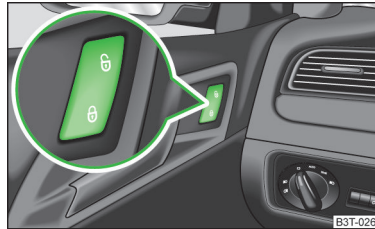


Fig. 33
Central locking button

📖 **Read and observe ! on page 48 first.**

If the vehicle was not locked from the outside, it can also be unlocked and locked with the rocker switch on the door opening lever of the driver or front passenger door » [Fig. 33](#) even without the ignition switched on. While a door is opened, the vehicle cannot be locked.

Locking

➤ Press the button  » [Fig. 33](#) press.

The symbol  in the button lights up.

Unlocking

➤ Press the button  » [Fig. 33](#) press.

The symbol  in the button goes out.

The following applies if your vehicle has been locked using the central locking button.

- It is not possible to open the doors or the boot lid from the outside (safety feature, e.g. when stopping at traffic lights etc.).
- The doors can be unlocked and opened from the inside by a single pull on the opening lever of the respective door.
- In the event of an accident in which the airbags are deployed, the locked doors are automatically unlocked in order to enable rescuers to gain access to the vehicle.

! WARNING

- Doors locked from the inside make it difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – risk to life!
- If the safelock system is switched on » page 51, the door opening lever and the central locking buttons do not operate.

Child safety lock

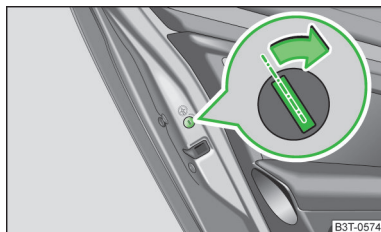


Fig. 34
Parental Control: Left rear door

📖 Read and observe ! on page 48 first.

The child safety lock prevents the rear door from being opened from the inside. The door can only be opened from the outside.

You can switch the child safety lock on and off using the vehicle key.

Switching on

- Turn the slot of the safety lock in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 34 (the other way around on the right-hand door).

Switching off

- Turn the slot of the safety lock in the opposite direction to the arrow » Fig. 34 (the other way around on the right-hand door).

Opening/closing a door

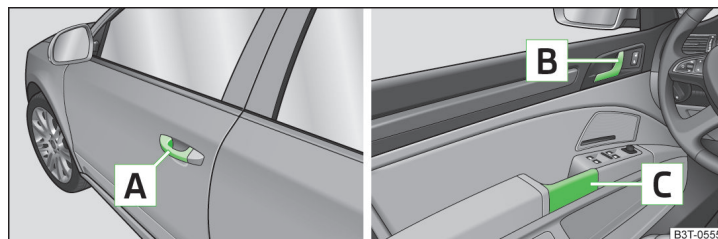


Fig. 35 Door handle/door opening lever:

📖 Read and observe ! on page 48 first.

Opening from the outside

- Unlock the vehicle and pull the door handle [A] » Fig. 35 on the door you wish to open.

Opening from the inside

- Pull on door opening lever [B] of the respective door and push the door away from you.

Closing from the inside

- Grasp pull handle [C] and close the door.

! WARNING

- Make sure that the door has closed correctly as it can open suddenly while driving – risk of death!
- Only open and close the door when there is no one in the opening/closing range – risk of injury!
- An opened door can close automatically if there is a strong wind or the vehicle is on an incline – risk of injury!
- Never drive with the doors open - there is a risk of death!

Anti-theft alarm system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Activating/deactivating	54
Interior monitor and towing protection	54

The anti-theft alarm system (hereinafter referred to only as alarm system) increases protection against break-in attempts into the vehicle.

The alarm system triggers audible and visual signals if an attempt is made to break into the vehicle (hereafter referred to only as alarm).

An alarm is triggered when the following monitored areas of the vehicle have a fault.

- Bonnet.
- Boot lid.
- Doors.
- Ignition lock.
- Vehicle inclination » [page 54](#).
- Interior of car » [page 54](#).
- A drop in voltage of the on-board power supply.
- Socket of the factory-fitted towing device » [page 163](#), *Towing a trailer*.

An alarm is immediately triggered if either of the two battery terminals is disconnected while the anti-theft alarm system is activated.

The alarm is **switched off** by unlocking the vehicle or switching on the ignition.

! CAUTION

Before leaving the vehicle, it must be checked that all of the windows, doors and the sliding/tilting roof are locked in order to ensure the full functionality of the anti-theft alarm system.

i Note

The working life of the alarm siren is 5 years.

Activating/deactivating

📖 Read and observe ! on page 54 first.

Activating

The anti-theft alarm system is activated automatically approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is locked.

If you unlock the vehicle and do not open a door or the boot lid within the next 30 seconds, the vehicle will lock again automatically and the safelock system or anti-theft alarm system will be switched on. This function is intended to prevent the car being unlocked unintentionally.

Deactivating

The anti-theft alarm system is deactivated automatically after the vehicle is unlocked. If the vehicle is not opened within 30 seconds, the anti-theft alarm system is automatically activated again.

The alarm system is also deactivated if you unlock the driver door using the key within 45 seconds of locking the vehicle.

i Note

- If the car is unlocked with the key in the driver door, insert the key into the ignition and switch the ignition to deactivate the alarm system.
- You can switch the audible signalling of the activation of the warning system on and off in the Maxi DOT display in the menu item **ATA confirm** » [page 45](#).

Interior monitor and towing protection

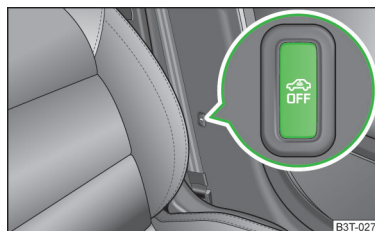


Fig. 36
Button for interior monitor and towing protection

📖 Read and observe ! on page 54 first.



The interior monitor detects movements inside the car and then triggers the alarm. ▶

The tow-away protection triggers the alarm if a vehicle is registered as being on an inclination.

Activating

The interior monitor and the towing protection are activated automatically after the vehicle is locked.

Deactivating

- Switch off the ignition.
- Open the driver door.
- Press  » Fig. 36 on the B-column on the driver's side. The symbol lighting in the button changes  from red to orange.
- Lock the vehicle within 30 seconds.

Deactivate the interior monitor and the towing protection if there is a possibility of the alarm being triggered by movements (e.g. by children or animals) within the vehicle interior or if the vehicle has to be transported (e.g. by train or ship) or towed.

! CAUTION

- The opened glasses storage compartment reduces the effectiveness of the interior monitor. To ensure the full functionality of the interior monitor, the glasses storage compartment must always be closed before locking the vehicle.
- The anti-theft alarm system is activated when the vehicle is locked even if the safe securing system is deactivated. The interior monitor is however not activated.

Luggage compartment lid

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Twindoor - open/close small boot lid	55
TwinDoor - open / close large boot	56
Open / close (Superb Combi)	56
Delayed locking of the boot lid	56

! WARNING

- Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the boot lid. Otherwise, the lid might open suddenly while the vehicle is moving, even if the lid was locked – risk of accident!
- Never drive with the boot lid open or ajar, as otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning!
- Do not press on the rear window when closing the luggage compartment lid, as otherwise this could crack – risk of injury!

! CAUTION

If the vehicle was locked before the boot lid was closed, the lid is immediately locked automatically when closed » page 56.

i Note

- The function of the button in the grip above the licence plate is deactivated when starting off or at a speed of 5 km/hour or more for vehicles with central locking. The function is restored after the vehicle stops and the door is opened.
- Repeated opening and closing of the boot lid can lead to a temporary failure of the function due to the overheating protection of the motors of the Twin-door system.

Twindoor - open/close small boot lid

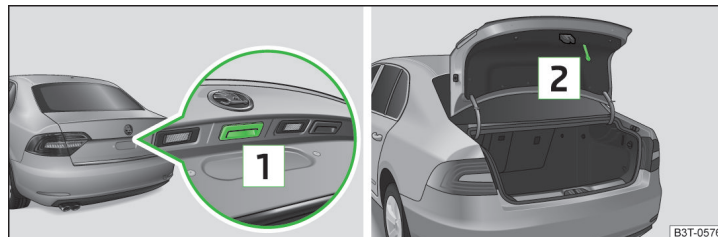


Fig. 37 Handle of boot lid/opened small boot lid

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 55 first.


After unlocking the vehicle, the boot lid can be opened with the button in the handle above the number plate. ▶

Opening

➤ Press the button in the handle at the lower edge of the boot lid **1** » Fig. 37 and lift the boot lid.

Closing

➤ Pull down and strike the lid with the handle **2** » Fig. 37.

The small boot lid can also be opened by pressing the symbol  button on the remote control key » page 49.

TwinDoor - open / close large boot

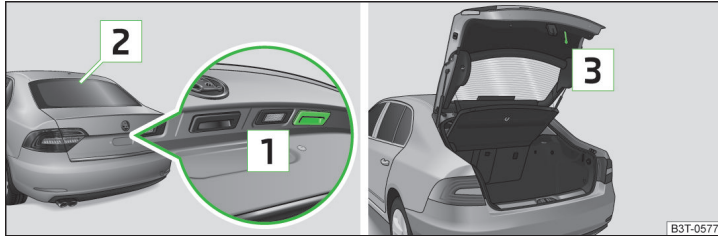


Fig. 38 Handle of boot lid/opened large boot lid

 Read and observe  and  on page 55 first.

After unlocking the vehicle, the boot lid can be opened with the button in the handle above the number plate.

Opening

➤ Press the button in the handle at the lower edge of the tailgate **1** » Fig. 38.

➤ Wait until the brake light **2** in the rear window flashes twice and then lift the lid.

Closing

➤ Pull down and strike the lid with the handle **3** » Fig. 38.

Open / close (Superb Combi)

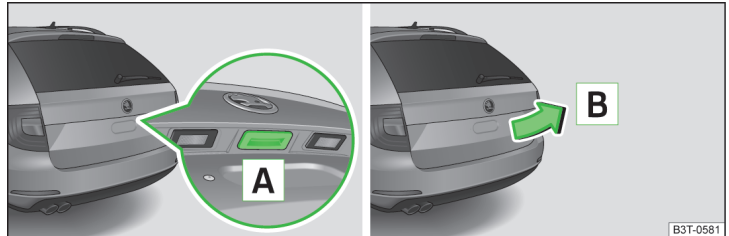


Fig. 39 Boot lid handle/opening the boot lid

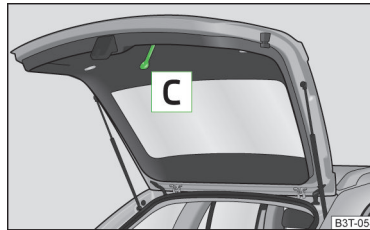


Fig. 40 Handle in the inner panelling of the boot lid

 Read and observe  and  on page 55 first.

After unlocking the vehicle, the boot lid can be opened with the button in the handle above the number plate.

Opening

➤ Press the handle **A** » Fig. 39 and raise the lid in the direction of the arrow **B**.

Closing

➤ Pull the lid down with the handle **C** » Fig. 40 and close with a slight swing.

Delayed locking of the boot lid

 Read and observe  and  on page 55 first.


If the boot lid is unlocked with the symbol button  on the remote control key, then the door is automatically locked after closing. ▶

The period after which the boot lid is locked automatically can be extended by a specialist garage.

After activation of delayed locking, the boot lid can be opened again after closing within a limited period.

Delayed locking can be deactivated by a specialist garage at any time.

! CAUTION

There is a risk of unwanted entry into the vehicle before the boot lid is locked automatically. We therefore recommend locking the vehicle with the symbol button  on the remote control key.

Electric boot lid (Superb Combi)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:


Operating description	57
Acoustic signals	59
Adjusting/deleting the top lid position	59
Malfunctions	59

Force limiter

The electric luggage compartment lid (hereinafter referred to only as a lid) is equipped with a force limiter. If the lid hits an obstacle when closing, it stops and an audible signal sounds.

If you rapidly enter the vehicle during the opening or closing process of the boot lid, the whole vehicle may jerk and as a result the movement of the lid can be interrupted.

Manual operation

Manually opening and closing the lid is only possible in exceptional cases. It must be completed slowly and without sudden movements as close to the centre of the lid as possible » .

! WARNING

- Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the lid. Otherwise, the lid might open suddenly while the vehicle is moving, even if the lid was locked – risk of accident!
- Never drive with the lid open or unlatched, as otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning!

! CAUTION

- The movement of the lid can be stopped by applying an abrupt and quick force against the lid.
- Do not try to close the lid manually during the electrical closing process. Damage can occur to the system of the electric boot lid.
- If the lid is closed manually, it must be ensured that when moving the lid into the lock, pressure is applied to the centre edge of the lid above the ŠKODA logo. Handling the sides of the lid can damage the electric lid.

! CAUTION

- Before opening or closing the lid, check if there are any objects in the opening or closing range which could obstruct the movement (e.g. a load on the roof rack or on the trailer, etc.) – risk of causing damage to the lid!
- Ensure that there is at least 10 cm of clearance above the opened lid (e.g. distance from the garage ceiling). Otherwise, it may happen that the clearance above the opened lid is no longer sufficient after relieving the vehicle of a load (e.g. after unloading) – risk of causing damage to the lid.
- In certain circumstances, if the lid is loaded (e.g. by a thick layer of snow), the opening process of the lid can be interrupted. Remove the load on the lid to re-enable the electrical operation.
- If the lid closes automatically (e.g. under load of snow), you will hear an intermittent beep.

Operating description



Fig. 41 Operation of the lid

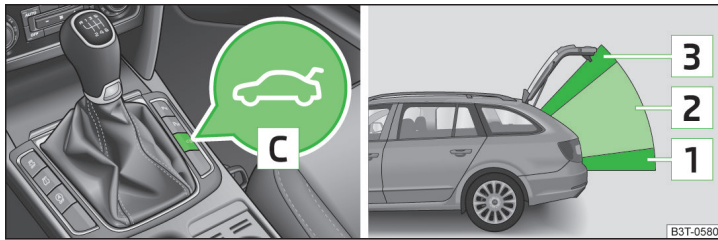



Fig. 42 Lid operation/operating areas

📖 Read and observe **A** and **B** on page 57 first.

Control elements

The lid can be operated with the following control elements.

- With the symbol button  on the remote control key (press for about 1 s).
- With the button in the handle **A** on the outer part of the lid » Fig. 41.
- With the button **B** on the inner part of the lid » Fig. 41.
- With the button **C** in the centre console » Fig. 42.


Operating areas

The system distinguishes 3 operating areas where the function of the individual operating elements changes » Fig. 42. The end positions of the lid - fully closed in the secured lock and fully opened - differ as well.



The range of the area **3** changes proportionally, depending on the setting of the top position of the lid » page 59.

If the lid is set in the uppermost position in the area **2**, the area **3** is not active. The range of the area **2** changes proportionally, depending on the setting of the top position of the lid.

Symbol explanation in the operating description



- Feasible action
- Non-feasible action
-  Movement in the opposite direction to the previous movement

Lid operation with the handle **A**

Action	Closed Lid	Area			Open Lid
		1	2	3	
Opening	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Stop	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Closing	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

The operation of the lid using the handle **A** is only possible when the vehicle is unlocked.

Lid operation with the button **B**

Action	Closed Lid	Area			Open Lid
		1	2	3	
Opening	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Stop	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Closing	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>


Operating the lid with the button **B** is only possible when the lid is open.

Lid operation with the symbol button on the remote control key and the button **C**

Action	Closed Lid	Area			Open Lid
		1	2	3	
Opening	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Stop	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Closing	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

When the ignition is switched on, the operation of the lid does not function using the remote control key.


Operating the lid with the button **C** does not work if the vehicle was locked from the outside.

Operating the lid with the symbol button  on the remote control key and the button **C** does not work when a trailer is coupled to the vehicle.

Acoustic signals

Read and observe **I** and **II** on page 57 first.

The acoustic signals serve as a safety function and provide information about the success of a performed action.

Signals	Status
Interrupted tone	Open (using the button  on the remote control key or the button C » Fig. 42 on page 58) Automatic closing of the lid » page 57, II in section <i>Introduction</i>
1 continuous tone	Force limiter
3 rising tones	Confirmation of the storage of the lid position
3 identical tones	fault

Adjusting/deleting the top lid position

Read and observe **I** and **II** on page 57 first.

Adjusting

- › Stop the lid in the desired position (electrically or manually).
- › Press and hold the button **B** » Fig. 41 on page 57 for longer than 3 seconds.

Storing the new position is confirmed with an audible signal.

Delete

- › Carefully lift up the lid manually to the maximum opening position.
- › Press and hold the button **B** » Fig. 41 on page 57 for longer than 3 seconds.

An audible signal sounds and the height which was originally set is deleted from the memory, while the basic position of the top lid position is again set.

The top lid position is adjusted, for example, in the following situations.

- › When the space for opening the lid is limited (e.g. garage height).
- › For a more convenient operation, such as by a person's height.

The top position which is reached when the lid opens automatically, is always lower than the maximum top position which can be reached when the lid is opened manually.

The lid always opens to the height which was last stored.

Malfunctions

Read and observe **I** and **II** on page 57 first.

If the battery is disconnected and reconnected while the lid is open, it is necessary to activate the system of the electric boot lid. Activation means closing the lid by hand. Thus, the end position of the lid is stored under fully closed in secured lock.

Examples of operational malfunctions

Description of the malfunction	Possible solutions
The lid cannot be lifted out of the lock.	Emergency unlocking of the lid » page 212
The lid does not react to an opening signal	Removing a possible obstacle (e.g. snow), re-opening the lid » page 57 Press handle A and pull the lid upwards
The lid remains in the top position	Manual closing of the lid

Electric power windows

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Opening/closing the window from the driver seat	60
Opening the windows in the front passenger door and in the rear doors	61
Force limit	61
Window convenience operation	61
Operational faults	62 ▶

! WARNING

- Ensure that no persons are still left in the vehicle when locking the vehicle. In an emergency, the windows will no longer be able to be opened from the inside.
- The system is fitted with a force limiter » page 61. If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres. However, the windows should be closed carefully – risk of injury.
- Deactivating the electrically operated power windows in the rear doors is recommended (safety push button) [S] when children are being transported in the rear seats » Fig. 43 on page 60.

! CAUTION

- Keep the windows clean to ensure the correct functionality of the electric windows.
- In the event that the windows are frozen, first of all eliminate the ice » page 175, *Windows and exterior mirrors* and only then operate the electrical power windows. Otherwise, the window sealing and the electrical power window mechanism could be damaged.
- In the winter, ice accumulating on the surface of the window may cause there to be more resistance when closing the window. The window will stop and move back several centimetres.
- It is necessary to deactivate the force limiter to close the window » page 61.
- Make sure that the windows are closed whenever you leave the locked vehicle.

🌿 For the sake of the environment

At high speeds, you should keep the windows closed to prevent unnecessarily high fuel consumption.

i Note

- After switching the ignition off, it is still possible to open or close the windows for approx. 10 minutes. After the driver's or front passenger's door has been opened, the windows can only be operated by using button [A] » Fig. 43 on page 60.
- When driving always use the existing heating, air conditioning and ventilation system for ventilating the interior of the vehicle. If the windows are opened, dust as well as other dirt can get into the vehicle and in addition the wind noise is more at certain speeds.
- The window lift system is equipped with protection against overheating. Repeated opening and closing of the window can cause this mechanism to overheat. If this happens, it will not be possible to operate the window for a short time. You will be able to operate the window again as soon as the overheating protection has cooled down.

Opening/closing the window from the driver seat

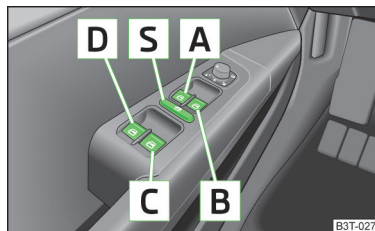


Fig. 43
Buttons on the driver's door

📖 Read and observe ! and ! on page 60 first.

Power window buttons » Fig. 43.

- [A] Button for power window of the driver's door
- [B] Button for power window of the front passenger door
- [C] Button for power window of the rear right door
- [D] Button for power window at the rear left door
- [S] Safety pushbutton

Opening

- Lightly press the appropriate button down and hold it until the window has moved into the desired position. Releasing the button causes the window to stop immediately.



The window can be completely opened automatically by briefly pressing the button as far as the stop. Renewed pressing of the button causes the window to stop immediately.



Closing

► Pull gently on the top edge of the corresponding button and hold until the window has moved into the desired position. Releasing the button causes the window to stop immediately.

The window can also be fully closed automatically by pulling the button up to the stop. Renewed pulling of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

Safety pushbutton

The buttons for power windows in the rear doors can be deactivated by pressing the safety switch  » Fig. 43. The buttons for the electrical power windows in the rear doors are activated again by pressing the safety pushbutton  again.

If the buttons for the rear doors are deactivated, the indicator light  in the safety switch  lights up.

Opening the windows in the front passenger door and in the rear doors

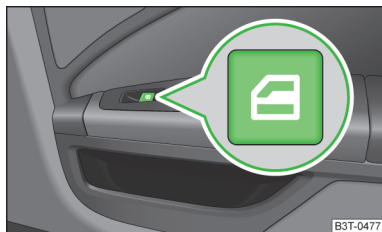


Fig. 44
Button in the rear door

 Read and observe  and  on page 60 first.

There is a button in the front passenger door and in the rear doors for that window.

Opening

► Lightly press the appropriate button down and hold it until the window has moved into the desired position. Releasing the button causes the window to stop immediately.

The window can be completely opened automatically by briefly pressing the button as far as the stop. Renewed pressing of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

Closing

► Pull gently on the top edge of the corresponding button and hold until the window has moved into the desired position. Releasing the button causes the window to stop immediately.

The window can also be fully closed automatically by pulling the button up to the stop. Renewed pulling of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

Force limit

 Read and observe  and  on page 60 first.

The electrical power window system is fitted with a force limiter. It reduces the risk of bruises or injuries when closing the windows.

If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If the obstacle prevents the window from being closed during the next 10 seconds, the closing process is interrupted once again and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If you attempt to close the window again within 10 seconds of the window being moved down for the second time, even though the obstacle was not yet been removed, the closing process is only stopped. During this time it is not possible to automatically close the window. The force limiter is still switched on.

The force limiter is only switched off if you attempt to close the window again within the next 10 seconds - **the window will now close with full force!**

If you wait longer than 10 seconds, the force limiter is switched on again.


Window convenience operation

 Read and observe  and  on page 60 first.


The convenience operation of the windows offers the possibility of opening or closing all the windows at once.

Convenience operation can take place in one of the following ways. ►

Opening

- Press the  button on the remote control key.
- Hold the key in the driver's lock in the unlock position.
- Press and hold the upper part of the central locking button in the driver's door » [page 52](#).
- Hold button **A** » [Fig. 43 on page 60](#) in the opening position.

Closing

- Press  button on the remote control key.
- Hold the key in the driver's lock in the lock position.
- Press and hold the lower part of the central locking button » [page 52](#) in the driver's door.
- Hold button **A** » [Fig. 43 on page 60](#) in the closing position.
- In the KESY system, hold a finger on the sensor **1** » [Fig. 32 on page 50](#).

The speed limit for winter tyres can be set in the MAXI DOT display in the menu item **Window op.** » [page 45](#).

The prerequisite for ensuring that the convenience operating feature correctly is the automatic opening/closing of all windows is operational.

Convenience opening or closing the window using the key in the driver's lock is only possible within 45 seconds after locking the vehicle.

The movement of the window is stopped immediately when the key or the respective button is released.

Operational faults

 **Read and observe**  and  on [page 60](#) first.

The automatic power windows do not work if the vehicle battery has been disconnected and connected again while a window was open. The system must be activated.

Activation sequence:

- Switch on the ignition.
- Pull the top edge of the button and close the window.
- Release the button.
- Pull the relevant button upwards again for approx. 3 seconds, and keep it pressed down.

Electric sliding/tilting roof

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation	62
Convenience operation of sliding / tilting roof	63
Electric sliding/tilting roof with solar cells	63

The electric sliding/tilting roof (abbreviated in the following as 'sliding/tilting roof') can only be operated when the ignition is turned on and when the outdoor temperature is higher than -20 °C.

The sliding/tilting roof can still be operated for approx. 10 minutes after switching the ignition off. However, as soon as the driver or front passenger's door is opened it is no longer possible to operate the sliding/tilting roof.

CAUTION

- Always close the sliding/tilting roof before disconnecting the battery.
- If the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, it is possible that the sliding/tilting roof does not operate correctly. In this case, turn the rotary switch to the switch position **A** » [Fig. 45 on page 62](#) and push forward for about 10 seconds.

Operation

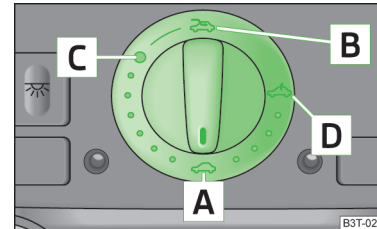


Fig. 45
Control dial for the sliding/tilting roof

 **Read and observe**  on [page 62](#) first.

Comfort position

- Turn the switch to position **C** » [Fig. 45](#).

When the sliding/tilting roof is in the comfort position, the intensity of the wind noise is reduced. ▶

Open partially

➤ Simply turn the knob to a point between **A** and **C**.

Open fully

➤ Turn the switch to position **B** and hold it in this position (spring-tensioned position).

Tilting roof

➤ Turn the switch to position **D**.

Closing

➤ Turn the switch to position **A**.

Sun screen

The sun screen is also opened automatically when the tilt/slide sunroof slides open. When the tilt/slide sunroof is closed the sun screen can be manually operated » **I**.

Force limiter

The sliding/tilting roof is fitted with a force limiter. If an obstacle (e.g. ice) prevents closing, the sliding/tilting roof stops and opens completely. The sliding/tilting roof can be closed completely without the force limiter by pushing the switch in position **A** » Fig. 45 forwards until the sliding/tilting roof is completely closed » **I**.

! WARNING

When operating the tilt/slide sunroof and the sunshade, proceed with caution to avoid causing crushing injuries - risk of injury!

! CAUTION

During the winter it may be necessary to remove any ice and snow in the vicinity of the sliding/tilting roof before opening it to prevent any damage to the opening mechanism.

Convenience operation of sliding / tilting roof

📖 Read and observe **I** on page 62 first.

The sliding/tilting roof can be operated by locking/unlocking using the key or using the KESSY system with the aid of the sensor **1** » Fig. 32 on page 50.

➤ Press the  button on the remote control key.

➤ In the KESSY system, hold a finger on the sensor **1** » Fig. 32 on page 50.

By releasing the lock or lifting your finger off the sensor **1** when using the KESSY system, the closing process is immediately interrupted.

! WARNING

Close the sliding/tilting roof carefully - risk of injury. The force limiter does not operate with the convenience closing.

Electric sliding/tilting roof with solar cells

📖 Read and observe **I** on page 62 first.

If there is sufficient bright sunlight, the solar cells in the sliding/tilting roof deliver the electrical power for the fresh air blower. Further information » page 113, *Climatronic (automatic air conditioning system)*.

The operation of the sliding/tilting roof with solar cells is the same as of a normal sliding/tilting roof.

Panoramic sliding/tilting roof (Superb Estate)

📖 Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation	64
Opening/closing the sun screen	64
Convenience operation of sliding / tilting roof	65

The panoramic sliding/tilting roof (abbreviated in the following as 'sliding/tilting roof') can only be operated when the ignition is turned on and when the outdoor temperature is higher than -20 °C.

The sliding/tilting roof can still be operated for approx. 10 minutes after switching the ignition off. However, as soon as the driver or front passenger's door is opened it is no longer possible to operate the sliding/tilting roof.

! CAUTION

- Always close the sliding/tilting roof before disconnecting the battery.
- If, for example, the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, it is possible that the sliding/tilting roof does not operate correctly. Next, move the rotary switch into position **A** » Fig. 46 on page 64, pull the recess firmly ▶

downwards and hold forwards firmly. The sliding/tilting roof opens and closes again after around 10 seconds. Do not release the control dial until it has done so.

■ If, for example, the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, it is possible that the sun screen does not operate correctly. Then turn the switch to position **A** » Fig. 46 on page 64 and press and hold the button **G** » Fig. 47 on page 64. The sun screen opens and closes again after around 10 seconds. Do not release the control dial until it has done so.

Operation

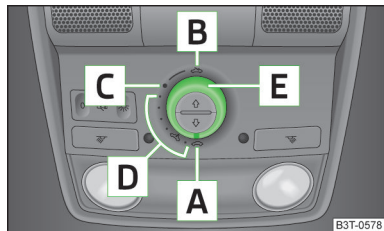


Fig. 46
Control dial for the sliding/tilting roof

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 63 first.

Comfort position

➤ Turn the switch to position **C** » Fig. 46.

When the sliding/tilting roof is in the comfort position, the intensity of the wind noise is reduced.

Open partially

➤ Turn the switch to a position in area **D**.

Open fully

➤ Turn the switch to position **B** and hold it in this position (spring-tensioned position).

Tilting roof

➤ Turn the switch to position **A**.
➤ Press the switch in the region **E** towards the roof.

Closing

➤ Turn the switch to position **A**.
➤ Press the switch on the recess **E** down and pull forwards.

Force limiter

The sliding/tilting roof is fitted with a force limiter. The sliding/tilting roof stops and moves back several centimetres when it cannot be closed because there is something in the way (e.g. ice). The sliding/tilting roof can be fully closed without a force limiter by pressing the switch on the recess **E** down and then pushing it forward until the sliding/tilting roof is fully closed » **!**

! WARNING

When operating the sliding/tilting roof, proceed with caution to avoid causing crushing injuries – risk of injury!

! CAUTION

During the winter it may be necessary to remove any ice and snow in the vicinity of the sliding/tilting roof before opening it to prevent any damage to the opening mechanism.

Opening/closing the sun screen

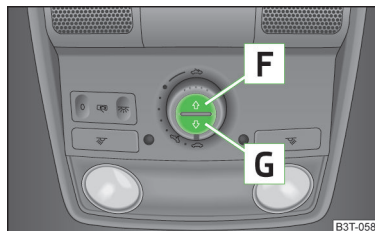


Fig. 47
Buttons for sun screen

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 63 first.

The sun screen can be closed or opened using the buttons » Fig. 47.

Opening

➤ Briefly press the button **F** » Fig. 47 to open fully.
➤ Press and hold the button **F** to open to the desired position.

The opening process stops when one releases the button.

Closing

➤ Briefly press the button **G** » Fig. 47 to close fully.
➤ Press and hold the button **G** to close in the desired position.


The closing process stops when one releases the button.

! WARNING




When operating the sunshade, proceed with caution to avoid causing crushing injuries – risk of injury!


Convenience operation of sliding / tilting roof

 **Read and observe**  on page 63 first.


The sliding / tilting roof can be operated by locking or unlocking using the key or using the KESSY system with the aid of the sensor  » Fig. 32 on page 50.

Closing

➤ Press  and hold the symbol button on the key or hold the key in the locking cylinder of the driver's door in the lock position, or for the KESSY system, keep your finger on the sensor  » Fig. 32 on page 50 » .

By releasing the lock or lifting your finger off the sensor  when using the KESSY system, the closing process is immediately interrupted.

Tilting roof

➤ Press the  button on the remote control key.

! WARNING

Close the sliding/tilting roof carefully – risk of injury. The force limiter does not operate with the convenience closing.

Lights and visibility

Lights

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Parking and low beam lights	66
Daylight running lights (DAY LIGHT)	67
Turn signal and main beam	67
Automatic driving lamp control	68
Adaptive headlights (AFS)	68
Fog lights	69
Fog lights with the CORNER function	69
Rear fog light	69
COMING HOME / LEAVING HOME	70
Hazard warning light system	70
Parking lights	71

Unless otherwise stated, the lights only work when the ignition is switched on.

The arrangement of the controls right-hand drive models may differ from the layout shown in » Fig. 48 on page 66. The symbols which mark the positions of the controls are identical.

Keep the headlights lenses clean. The following guidelines must be observed » page 175, *Headlight lenses*.

! WARNING

- The activation of the lights should only be undertaken in accordance with national legal requirements.
- The driver is always responsible for the correct settings and use of the lights.

! WARNING (Continued)

- The automatic driving lamp control **AUTO** only operates as a support and does not release the driver from his responsibility to check the light and, if necessary, to switch on the light depending on the given light conditions. The light sensor cannot, for example, detect rain or snow. Under these conditions we recommend switching on the low beam or fog lights!
- Never drive with only the side lights on! The side lights are not bright enough to light up the road sufficiently in front of you or to be seen by other oncoming traffic. Therefore always switch on the low beam when it is dark or if visibility is poor.

i Note

The headlights may mist up temporarily. When the driving lights are switched on, the light outlet surfaces are free from mist after a short period, although the headlight lenses may still be misted up in the peripheral areas. This mist has no influence on the life of the lighting system.

Parking and low beam lights

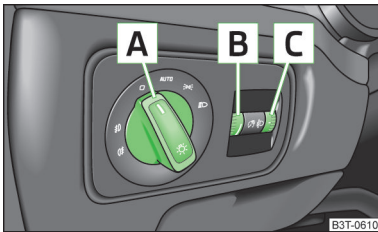


Fig. 48
Light switches, knobs for headlight beam adjustment and brightness of instrument illumination

📖 Read and observe ! on page 65 first.

Light switch positions - turning the switch **A** » Fig. 48

0 Switching off lights (except daytime running lights)

AUTO Automatic switching lights on and off » page 68

☞ Switching on the parking light or parking lights » page 71

☞ Turn on the low beam

Light switch positions - pulling the switch **A**

☞ Switch on the front fog lamp » page 69

☞ Switching on the rear fog light » page 69

Turning the knob **B** » Fig. 48

☞ Lights and visibility

Lights and visibility

By turning the rotary switch from the position — in 3 gradually adjusts the headlight range control and thereby shortens the light cone.

The positions of the width of illumination correspond approximately to the following car load.

- Front seats occupied, boot empty
- 1 All seats occupied, boot empty
- 2 All seats occupied, boot loaded
- 3 Driver seat occupied, boot loaded

Instrument lighting ☞

Turning the rotary switch **C** when the lights are switched on adjusts the brightness of the instrument lighting » Fig. 48 .

The instruments are also illuminated when the side light, low or high beam light is switched on.

! WARNING

- Always adjust the headlight beam to satisfy the following conditions.
 - The vehicle does not dazzle other road users, especially oncoming vehicles.
 - The beam range is sufficient for safe driving.

i Note

- We recommend you adjust the headlight beam when the low beam is switched on.
- The Bi-Xenon bulbs adapt automatically to the load and driving state of the vehicle when the ignition is switched on and when driving. Vehicles that are equipped with Bi-Xenon headlights do not have a manual headlight range adjustment control.
- The light switch is in position ☞ or **AUTO** and the ignition is turned off, the low beam is switched off automatically and the status light is lit. The side light goes out after the ignition key is removed.
- If there is a fault in the light switch, the low beam comes on automatically.

Daylight running lights (DAY LIGHT)

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 65 first.

The daytime running lights (the only function) provides the lighting of the front vehicle range.

The daytime running lights are switched on automatically if the following conditions are met:

- ✓ The light switch is in the position 0 or **AUTO** » Fig. 48 on page 66.
- ✓ The ignition is switched on.
- ✓ The parking aid is activated.

Deactivating the function

- Switch off the ignition.
- Pull the turning signal and main beam lever (» Fig. 49 on page 67) towards the steering wheel, push down and hold in this position.
- Switch on the ignition.
- Hold the lever in this position for at least 3 seconds after switching on the ignition.

Activating the function

- Switch off the ignition.
- Pull the turning signal and main beam lever towards the steering wheel, push it up and hold it in this position.
- Switch on the ignition.
- Hold the lever in this position for at least 3 seconds after switching on the ignition.

On vehicles with MAXI DOT display, the function can be enabled or disabled in the menu item **Dayl. dri. light** » page 45 .

! WARNING

When the daytime running light is switched on, the side lights (neither at the front or rear) and the number plate lights are not lit. Therefore always switch on the low beam when the visibility is poor.

Turn signal and main beam

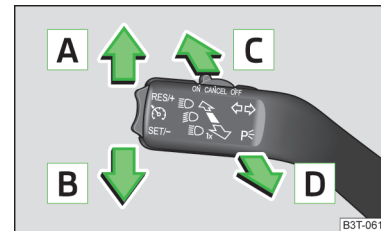


Fig. 49
Operating lever: Turn signal and main beam operation


📖 Read and observe **!** on page 65 first.

Lever positions » Fig. 49



- A** Switch on right turn signal ⇨
- B** Switch on left turn signal ⇦
- C** Switch on high beam (spring-loaded position) ⏏
- D** Switch off main beam and headlamp flasher (spring-loaded position) ⏏

Main beam

The main beam can only be switched on when the low beam lights are on.

When the high beam or headlight flasher is on, the warning light  lights up in the instrument cluster.

Flashing

When the left or right turn signal is on, the warning light  or  flashes in the instrument cluster.

The flashing light is turned on even before the upper and lower pressure point. This is advantageous with some manoeuvres. For example, when changing lanes **hold** the control lever of each pressure point.

The turn signal light switches itself off automatically when driving around a curve or after making a turn.

The indicator light flashes at twice its normal rate if a bulb for the turn signal light fails.

"Convenience turn signal"

If you only wish to flash three times, briefly push **the lever** to the upper or lower pressure point and **release again**. ▶

The "Intelligent turn signal" can be activated or deactivated via the Maxi DOT display in the **Intelligent turn signal** » [page 45](#) menu item.

! WARNING

Only turn on the main beam or the headlight flasher if other road users will not be dazzled.

i Note

The headlight flasher can be operated even if the ignition is switched off.

Automatic driving lamp control

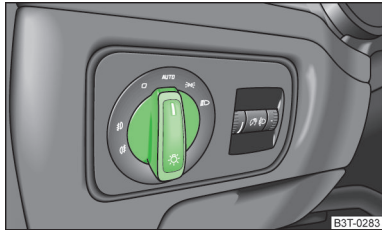



Fig. 50
Light switch: AUTO position

Read and observe ! on [page 65](#) first.

If the light switch is in position **AUTO** » [Fig. 50](#), the parking lights, low beam and number plate lights are switched on or off automatically.

The light is regulated based on data gathered by the sensor fitted in the holder of the rear-view mirror below the windscreen.

If the light switch is in position **AUTO**, the lettering **AUTO** illuminates next to the light switch. If the light is switched on automatically, the symbol  next to the light switch also lights up.

Automatic driving light control during rain

The daytime running lights are switched on automatically if the following conditions are met:

- ✓ The light switch is in the position **AUTO** » [Fig. 50](#).
- ✓ Automatic wiping with rain - position [1](#) or wiping - position [2](#) or [3](#) is turned on » [page 76](#), *Windscreen wipers and washers*.
- ✓ The windscreen wipers are on for more than 15 s.

The light turns off about 4 minutes after turning off the wipers.

! CAUTION

Do not stick any stickers or similar objects in front of the light sensor on the windscreen, so as not to cancel the function of automatic driving light control or to impair its effectiveness.

Adaptive headlights (AFS)

Read and observe ! on [page 65](#) first.

The AFS system makes sure the street remains lit up depending on the traffic and weather situation.

The system automatically adjusts the cone of light in front of the vehicle to the driving speed or the use of the wiper.

The AFS system works in tandem with automatic driving lamp control **AUTO**, please read the following » [page 68](#).

The AFS system can only work if the following condition is met.

- ✓ The light switch is in the position **AUTO**.

The AHL system operates in the following modes.

Out of town mode

The cone of light in front of the vehicle is similar to the low beam. The mode is active if none of the following modes are active.

City mode

The light cone in front of the vehicle is adjusted so that it also illuminates the adjacent pavements, intersections and pedestrian crossings etc. The mode is active at speeds of 15 - 50 km / h.

Motorway mode

The cone of light in front of the vehicle is adjusted so that the driver can respond in time to an obstruction or other hazard in time. The mode is activated gradually from a speed of 90 km/h. It is most effective at speeds above 120 km/h.

Rain mode

The cone of light in front of the vehicle is adjusted so that the driver can reduce the glare from oncoming vehicles in rain.

The mode is active at speeds of 15 - 70 km/h and if the windscreen wipers continuously operate for a period of time longer than 2 minutes. The mode is deactivated when the windscreen wipers are switched off for longer than 8 minutes.

Dynamic cornering lights

The cone of light in front of the vehicle is adjusted to the steering angle so that the road in the curve is illuminated. This function is active at speeds greater than 10 km/h and in all AFS modes.

Tourist lights (Travel mode)

This mode makes it possible to drive in countries with opposing traffic system (driving on the left/right) without dazzling the oncoming vehicles.


When this mode is active, the above-mentioned modes and the side swivel of the headlights is deactivated.

This mode can be enabled or disabled via the Maxi DOT display in the **Travel mode** » page 45, **Lights and Visibility** menu option.

! WARNING

If the AFS system is defective, the headlights are automatically lowered to the emergency position, which prevents a possible dazzling of oncoming traffic. This reduces the cone of light in front of the vehicle. Drive carefully and visit a specialist garage as soon as possible.

i Note

When the "tourist light" mode is active, the warning light  flashes for 10 seconds each time the ignition is switched on.

Fog lights

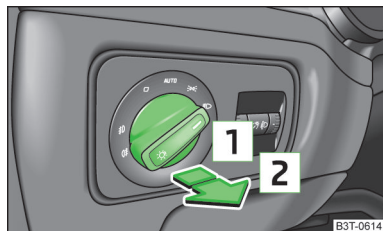





Fig. 51
Light switch

 **Read and observe !** on page 65 first.

Switching on/off

- Turn the light switch to position  or  » Fig. 51.
- Pull the light switch to position **1**.

The rear fog light is switched off in the reverse order.

The indicator light  lights up in the instrument cluster when the fog lights are switched on » page 32.

Fog lights with the CORNER function

 **Read and observe !** on page 65 first.

The CORNER function lights the front fog lamp on each side of the vehicle to illuminate the area around the vehicle when turning, parking, etc.

The CORNER function is switched on automatically if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ The turn signal is switched on or the front wheels are turned sharply to the right or left¹⁾.
- ✓ The engine is running.
- ✓ The vehicle is stopped or moves at a speed of no more than 40 km/h.
- ✓ The low beam is switched on or the light switch is in the position **AUTO** and the low beam is switched on.
- ✓ The daytime running lights are not switched on.
- ✓ The fog lights are not switched on.

i Note

The two fog lights are switched on when you shift into the reverse gear.

Rear fog light

 **Read and observe !** on page 65 first.

Switching on/off

- Turn the light switch to position  or  » Fig. 51 on page 69.
- Pull the light switch to position **2**.

¹⁾ If both switch-on conditions are conflicting, for example, if the front wheels are turned to the left and the right turn signal light is switched on, the turn signal light has the higher priority.

The rear fog light is switched off in the reverse order.

The warning light  lights up in the instrument cluster when the rear fog light is switched on » [page 32](#).

When in reverse gear only the rear fog lamp illuminates on the driver's side.

Only the rear fog light on the trailer lights up if the vehicle has a factory-fitted towing device or a towing device from ŠKODA original accessories and it is driven with a trailer.

COMING HOME / LEAVING HOME

 **Read and observe  on page 65 first.**

COMING HOME/LEAVING HOME (hereafter referred to only as function) switches on the lights for a short time after leaving the vehicle or when approaching the vehicle.

The daytime running lights are switched on automatically if the following conditions are met:

- ✓ The light switch is in the position **AUTO** » [Fig. 50 on page 68](#).
- ✓ The visibility in the vehicle environment is reduced.
- ✓ The ignition is switched off.
- ✓ The parking aid is activated.

The function switches on the following light, depending on the equipment fitted.

- Parking lights
- Low beam
- Entry lighting in the exterior mirrors
- Licence plate light

The light is controlled on the basis of information that is collected from the holder mounted in the rear-view mirror sensor » [page 68](#).

COMING HOME

The light **turns on** automatically when you open the driver's door on (within 60 seconds of turning off the ignition).

The light **turns off** 10 seconds after closing all the doors and the boot lid or after the pre-set time has expired.

If a door or the boot lid remains open, the light **goes out** after 60 seconds.

LEAVING HOME

The light **turns on** automatically after the vehicle is unlocked with the remote control.

The light **turns off** after 10 seconds or after a pre-set time or after the vehicle is locked.

Activate/deactivate the function

The functions and settings of the illumination time can be activated/deactivated via the MAXI DOT display in the menu items **Coming Home** or **Leaving Home** » [page 45](#).

CAUTION

- Do not attach any stickers or similar objects in front of the light sensor on the windscreen to avoid impairing the function or its reliability.
- If this function is activated constantly, the battery will be heavily discharged particularly in short-haul traffic.

Hazard warning light system

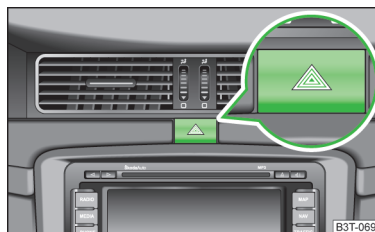


Fig. 52
Button for hazard warning light system

 **Read and observe  on page 65 first.**

Switching on/off

- Press the  » [Fig. 52](#) button.

All the turn signal lights on the vehicle flash at the same time when the hazard warning light system is switched on. The warning light for the turn signals and the warning light in the button also flash at the same time. The hazard warning light system can also be operated if the ignition is switched off.

If one of the airbags is deployed, the hazard warning light system will switch on automatically. ▶

If the turn signal light is switched on when the hazard warning light and the ignition are both switched on, then only the turn signal light on the corresponding vehicle side will flash.

! WARNING

Switch on the hazard warning light system if, for example, the following occurs.

- You encounter a traffic congestion.
- The vehicle has broken down.

Parking lights

📖 Read and observe ! on page 65 first.

Parking light $P\leq$ switching on

- Switch off the ignition.
- Place the control lever into position **A** or **B** as far as it can go » Fig. 49 on page 67 - the parking light on the right/left-hand side of the vehicle is switched on.

If the right or left turn signal light has been switched on and the ignition is switched off, the parking light $P\leq$ is not automatically switched on.

Switching on the side light on both sides \Rightarrow

- Turn the light switch **A** to position \Rightarrow » Fig. 48 on page 66 and lock the vehicle.

Interior lights

📖 Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front interior light _____	71
Rear interior light _____	72
Rear interior light _____	72
Front door warning light _____	72
Entry lighting _____	73

Front interior light

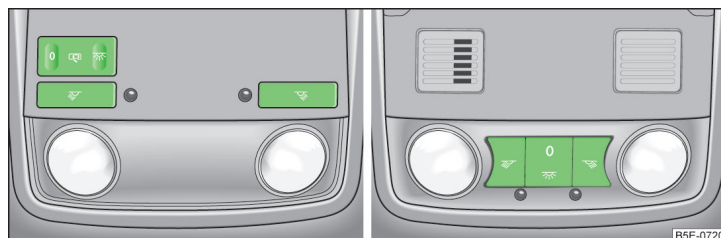


Fig. 53 Operation of the front interior light: Version 1/version 2

Rocker switch positions » Fig. 53

- Switching on
- 0** Switching off
- Control with the door contact switch (middle position)

For vehicles with interior monitoring, there is no icon for the center position (operation with the door contact switch).

Switch for reading lights

- Switching left reading lamp on/off
- Switching right reading lamp on/off

If operating the light with the door contact switch is enabled **the light will come on** when one of the following events occurs:

- The vehicle is unlocked.
- One of the doors or the tailgate is opened.
- The ignition key is removed.

If operating the light with the door contact switch is enabled **the light will go off** when one of the following events occurs:

- The vehicle is locked.
- The ignition is switched on.
- About 30 seconds after all the doors have been closed.

i Note

- If the interior light remains switched on when the ignition is switched off or if one of the doors is open, the light will automatically go out after around 10 minutes.
- Two diffuse lights are integrated in the front interior lighting, that illuminate the gearshift lever and the middle of the dash panel. These are switched on automatically when the parking light is activated. Also, after switching on the ignition when the parking lights are switched on, the door handle lighting comes on.

Rear interior light

Applies to vehicles without a panoramic sliding roof.

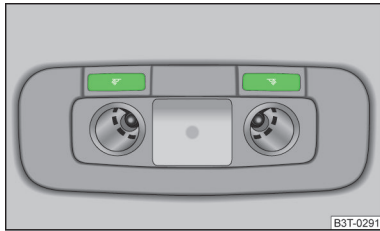


Fig. 54
Interior light and rear reading lights

Switch for reading lights » Fig. 54

- ☞ Switching left reading lamp on/off
- ☞ Switching right reading lamp on/off

The rear interior light is operated together with the front interior light » [page 71](#).

Rear interior light

Applies to vehicles with a panoramic sliding roof.

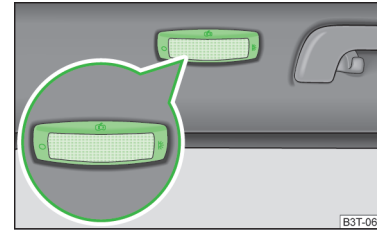


Fig. 55
Interior lights at the rear

The light is operated by moving the lens into one of the following positions » [Fig. 55](#).

- ☞ Switching on
- ☞ Control with the door contact switch (middle position)¹⁾
- 0 Switching off

Front door warning light

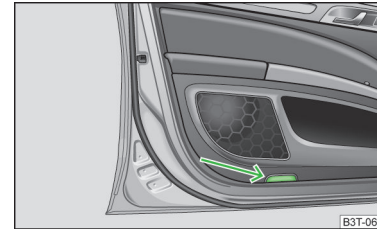


Fig. 56
Warning light

The warning light » [Fig. 56](#) turns on when the front door is opened.

The warning light turns off when the front door is closed.

In vehicles without a warning light only a reflector is installed at this point. ▶

¹⁾ In this position, apply the same rules to the rear interior light as for the front interior light » [page 71](#).

i Note

If the door is open and the ignition switched off, the light extinguishes automatically after around 20 minutes.

Entry lighting

The lighting is positioned on the bottom edge of the exterior mirror and illuminates the entry area of the front door.

The light comes on after the vehicle has been unlocked or on opening the front door. The lighting goes out about 30 seconds after the doors are closed or if the ignition is switched on.

! WARNING

If the entry light is on, do not touch its cover – risk of burns!

i Note

If the door is open and the ignition switched off, the light will extinguish automatically after around 1 minutes.

Visibility

📖 Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Windscreen and rear window heater	73
Sun visors	74
Sun screen	74
Sun screen in the rear doors	74

Windscreen and rear window heater

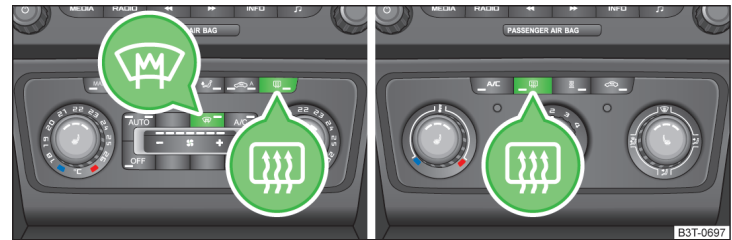




Fig. 57 Buttons for the rear and front window heating Climatronic / manual air conditioning

Buttons in the centre console

-  Switching the rear window heater on/off
-  Switching the windscreen heater on/off

When the heater is switched on, a lamp lights up inside the button.

The heating only works when the engine is running.

The heater automatically switches off after approximately 10 minutes.

For the sake of the environment

The heating should be switched off as soon as the window is de-iced or free from mist. The reduced current consumption will have a favourable effect on fuel economy » [page 148](#), *Saving electrical energy*.

i Note

- If the on-board voltage drops, the heater switches off automatically, in order to provide sufficient electrical energy for the engine control » [page 193](#), *Automatic load deactivation*.
- If the light is flashing inside the button the heater is off due to low battery.

Sun visors

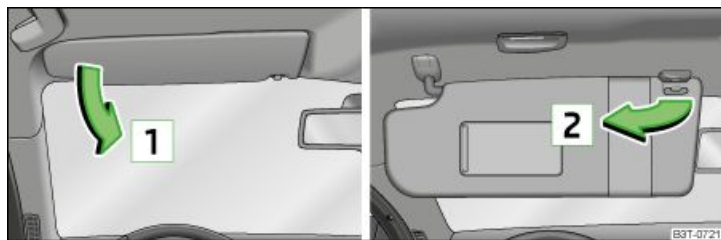


Fig. 58 Sun visor: fold down / pivot to door

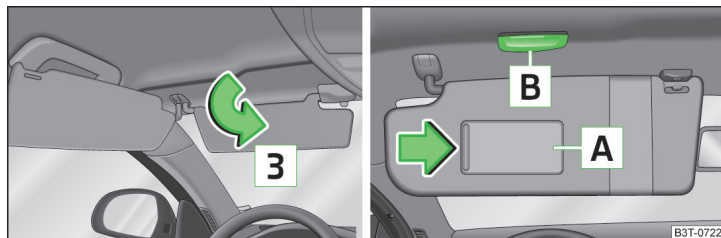


Fig. 59 Sun visor: Auxiliary panel fold down / makeup mirror

Operation of the sun visor » Fig. 58, » Fig. 59

- 1 Fold down the cover
- 2 Swivel cover towards the door
- 3 Fold down the auxiliary cover
- A Make-up mirror, the cover can be pushed in the direction of the arrow
- B Light - turns on automatically when the cover slides open

While sliding the cover **A** or when lifting the cover, the light turns off **B**.

! WARNING

The sun visors must not be swivelled towards the side windows in the deployment area of the head airbags if any objects are attached to them. Initiation of the head airbags may cause injury.

Sun screen

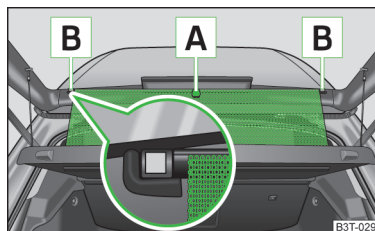


Fig. 60
Unroll the sun screen

The sun screen is located in the lower part of the boot cover.

Extending

- » Pull the sun screen on the handle **A** » Fig. 60 and hang it in the magnetic brackets **B**.

Retracting

- » Remove the sun screen from the magnetic brackets **B** and hold it on the handle **A** so that it can slowly roll up into the housing on the boot cover without being damaged.

i Note

Do not place any objects that react sensitively to influences of magnetic fields (watches, electronics, etc.) in the immediate vicinity of the magnetic brackets. They can be damaged by the magnetic field.

Sun screen in the rear doors

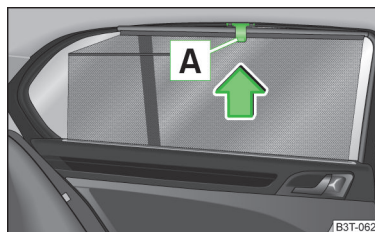


Fig. 61
Rear door: Sun screen

Extending

- » Pull out the sun screen with the handle **A** » Fig. 61 and hang it in the bracket on the top edge of the door.

Retracting

➤ Remove the sun screen from the handle **A** » Fig. 61 and hold it in such a way that it can roll up slowly without being damaged.

Windscreen wipers and washers

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Windscreen wipers and washers _____	76
Headlight cleaning system _____	77

The windscreen wipers and the wash system only operate if the ignition is switched on and the bonnet is closed.

If the intermittent wipe is switched on, the intervals are also controlled depending on speed.

When automatic wiping in rain is active, the wiper intervals are regulated based on the intensity of the rain.

The rear window is wiped once automatically if the windscreen wipers are on when reverse gear is selected.

Top up with windscreen wiper fluid » page 184.

! WARNING

- Properly maintained windscreen wiper blades are essential for clear visibility and safe driving » page 214.
- Replace the windscreen wiper blades once or twice a year for safety reasons. These can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.
- Do not use the windscreen washer system at low temperatures, without heating the windscreen beforehand. Otherwise the window cleaner could freeze on the windscreen and restrict the view to the front.
- Automatic wiping in rain only operates as a support. The driver is not released from the responsibility to set the function of the windscreen wipers manually depending on the visibility conditions.

! CAUTION

- If the ignition is switched off while the windscreen wipers are switched on, the windscreen wipers will continue wiping in the same mode after the ignition is turned back on. The windscreen wipers could freeze up in cold temperatures between the time the ignition was turned off and when it was turned back on again.
- In cold temperatures and during the winter, check before the journey or before switching on the ignition that the wiper blades are not frozen to the windscreen. If the windscreen wipers are switched on when the blades are frozen to the windscreen, this may damage both the blades and windscreen wiper motor!
- Carefully peel frozen wiper blades off the pane.
- Remove snow and ice from the windscreen wipers before driving.
- If the windscreen wipers are handled carelessly, there is a risk of damage to the windscreen.
- Do not switch on the ignition if the front wiper arms are retracted. The wiper blades would move back into their rest position and while doing so damage the paintwork of the bonnet.
- If there is an obstacle on the windscreen, the wiper will try to push away the obstacle. The wiper stops automatically after 5 attempts to eliminate the obstacle, in order to avoid a damage to the wiper. Remove the the obstacle and switch the wiper on again.

i Note

- Each time the ignition switches off for the third time, the position of the windscreen wipers changes. This counteracts an early fatigue of the wiper rubbers.
- The rear window wiper only operates if the boot lid is closed.
- The wiper blades should be cleaned on a regular basis with a windscreen cleaner to avoid any smears. The wiper blades should be cleaned with a sponge or cloth if they are heavily soiled by insect residues, for example.
- Keep the wiper blades clean. They may become soiled, e.g., with wax residues after washing in automatic car wash systems » page 173.
- The windscreen washer nozzles for the windscreen are heated when the engine is running and the outside temperature is less than approx. +10 °C.

Windscreen wipers and washers

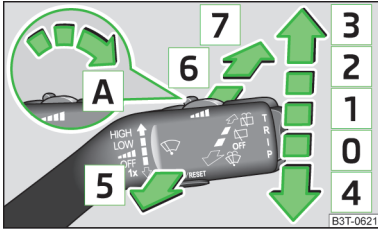


Fig. 62
Operating lever: Windscreen
wipers and washer settings

Read and observe **H** and **Y** on page 75 first.

Lever positions

- 0** OFF Wipers off
- 1** ... Periodic windscreen wiping/automatic wiping in rain
- 2** LOW Slow windscreen wiping
- 3** HIGH Rapid windscreen wiping
- 4** 1x Flick windscreen wiping, service position of the wiper arms » page 214, (spring-loaded position)
- 5** Automatic wipe/wash for windscreen (spring-tensioned position)
- 6** Wiping the rear window pane (the windscreen wiper wipes at regular intervals after a few seconds)
- 7** Automatic wipe/wash for the rear window (spring-tensioned position)
- A** ... Switches for setting the required break between the individual wiper strokes (**1** periodic windscreen wiping) or the wiper speed in rain (**1** automatic windscreen wiping in rain)

Automatic wipe/wash for windscreen

The wash system operates immediately, the windscreen wipers wipe somewhat later. The wash system and the windscreen wiper operate simultaneously at a speed of more than 120 km/h.

Letting go of the lever will cause the windscreen wash system to stop and the wiper to continue for another 3-4 wiper strokes (depending on the period of spraying of the windscreen).

At a speed of more than 2 km/h, the wiper wipes once again 5 seconds after the last wiper stroke in order to wipe the last drops from the windscreen. This function can be activated/deactivated by a specialist garage.

Automatic wipe/wash for the rear window (Superb Combi)

The wash system operates immediately, the windscreen wiper wipes somewhat later.

Letting go of the lever will cause the windscreen wash system to stop and the wiper to continue for another 2-3 wiper strokes (depending on the period of spraying of the windscreen). The operating lever remains in position » Fig. 62 **6**.

Automatic rear window wiper (Superb Combi)

If the lever is in position **2** » Fig. 62 or **3** the rear window is wiped every 30 or 10 seconds if the vehicle's speed exceeds 5 km/h.

If automatic windscreen wiping in rain is activated (the operating lever is in the position **1**) the function is only active if the windscreen wipers operate in continuous mode (no break between each wiping process).

Automatic rear window wiping can be activated/deactivated via the MAXI DOT display in the menu item **Rear wiper** » page 45.

Winter setting of the windscreen wiper

If the windscreen wipers are in rest position, they cannot be folded out from the windscreen. For this reason we recommend adjusting the windscreen wipers in winter so that they can be folded out from the windscreen easily.

- › Switch on the windscreen wipers.
- › Switch off the ignition.

The windscreen wipers remain in the position in which they were when switching off the ignition.

The service position can also be used as a winter position » page 214.

1 Note

If the operating lever is in the position **2** or **3** and the speed of the vehicle drops below 4 km / h, the wiping speed is switched to a lower wiping level. The original setting is restored step by step when the speed of the vehicle exceeds 8 km/h.

Headlight cleaning system

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 75 first.

After the ignition is switched on, the headlights are always cleaned at the first and after every tenth spray of the windscreen (setting **5** » Fig. 62 on page 76), when the low beam or main beam is switched on.

You should remove stubborn dirt (such as insect residues) from the headlight lenses at regular intervals, for example when refuelling. The following guidelines must be observed » page 175, *Headlight lenses*.

To ensure the proper operation of the cleaning system during the winter, any snow should be removed from the washer nozzle fixtures and ice should be cleared with a de-icing spray.

! CAUTION

Never remove the nozzles from the headlight cleaning system by hand - risk of damage!

Rear mirror

📖 Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Interior mirror	77
Exterior mirrors	78

! WARNING

- Make sure that the mirror is not covered by ice, snow, mist or other objects.
- Convex (curved outward) or aspheric exterior mirrors increase the field of vision. They do, however, make objects appear smaller in the mirror. These mirrors are therefore only of limited use for estimating distances to the following vehicles.
- Whenever possible use the interior mirror for estimating the distances to the following vehicles.
- The illuminated display of an external navigation unit can lead to operational faults to the automatic dimming interior mirror - risk of accident.

! WARNING

The mirrors with automatic dimming contain an electrolyte liquid which can escape if mirror glass is broken.

- The leaking electrolytic fluid can irritate the skin, eyes and breath apparatus. Immediately seek out fresh air and leave the vehicle. If this is not possible, at least open the window.
- If you swallow electrolytic fluid, seek medical assistance immediately.
- If your eyes or skin come into contact with the electrolytic fluid, immediately wash the affected area for a few minutes long with a lot of water. Then consult a doctor immediately.

Interior mirror

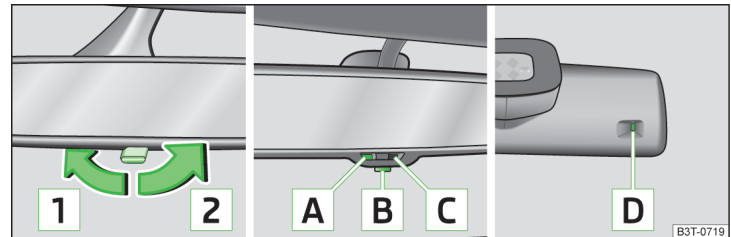


Fig. 63 Interior mirror: manual dimming / auto-darkening / light sensor

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 77 first.

Mirrors with manual dimming » Fig. 63

- 1** Basic position of the mirror
- 2** Mirror blackout

Mirror with automatic dimming » Fig. 63

- A** Warning light - lights when dimming is activated
- B** Switch for the activation of the automatic mirror dimming
- C** Light sensor
- D** Light sensor on the back of the mirror

If the automatic dimming is enabled, the mirror dims automatically depending on the light falling on the sensors. ▶

When the interior lights are switched on or the reverse gear is engaged, the mirror always moves back into the basic position (not dimmed).

Do not attach external navigation devices on to the windscreen or in the vicinity of the automatic dimming mirror » [page 77](#),  in section *Introduction*.

Note

- The automatic dimming mirror only functions smoothly if the light falling on the sensors is not compromised (e.g. by the sun screen back).
- If the automatic interior mirror dimming is switched off, the exterior mirror dimming is also switched off.

Exterior mirrors

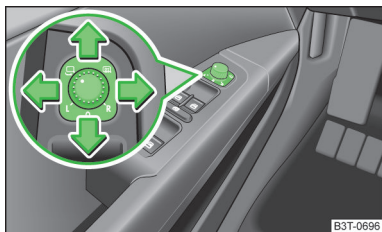




Fig. 64
Knob for the mirrors

 Read and observe  on [page 77](#) first.

The knob can be moved into the following positions.

- L Adjust the left mirror
- R Adjust the right mirror
- 0 Switch off mirror control
-  Mirror heater
-  Folding in the exterior mirrors

Adjust the position

The mirror can be adjusted to the desired position by moving the knob in the direction of the arrow » [Fig. 64](#).

The movement of the mirror surface is identical to the movement of the rotary knob.

Synchronous adjustment of the mirror

► Activate the synchronous adjustment of the mirror above the MAXI DOT display in the menu item **Mirror adjust.** » [page 45](#), *Settings*.


- Turn the knob for the mirror control to the position for the driver mirror adjustment.
- Adjust the mirror to the desired position.

Folding-in both of the exterior mirrors with the rotary knob

It is only possible to fold in both exterior mirrors when the ignition is switched on and at a speed of up to 15 km/h.

The mirrors are folded out into the driving position after the rotary knob is turned from the position  to a different one.

Folding-in both of the exterior mirrors using the remote control key

- Close all windows.
- Press  on the remote control key for about 2 seconds.

The exterior mirror is folded back into the driving position when the ignition is switched on.

Mirror with automatic dimming

The exterior mirror blackout is controlled together with the automatic dimming interior mirror » [page 77](#).

Fold in passenger's mirror

The passenger-side mirror can tilt down to improve the view to the curb when reversing.

The mirror will be folded if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ The vehicle is equipped with the memory function for the driver's seat » [page 82](#).
- ✓ The function is activated via the MAXI DOT display in the menu item **Mirror down.** » [page 45](#), *Settings*.
- ✓ The knob for the mirror control is in the position for the passenger mirror adjustment.
- ✓ The reverse gear is engaged.


Memory function for mirrors

On vehicles fitted with a memory function for the driver seat, the relevant setting for the exterior mirrors can also be stored automatically when the seat position is stored » [page 82](#).

WARNING

Do not touch the exterior mirror surfaces, if the exterior mirror heating is switched on - hazard of burning.

CAUTION

- The exterior mirrors with fold-in function  never mechanically fold by hand - there is a risk of damaging the electric mirror actuator!
- When the mirror is swung by external influences (due to impact during manoeuvring, for example), then first **fold-in** the mirror by turning the knob and wait for a loud clapping noise.

Note

- The mirror heater only operates when the engine is running and up to an outside temperature of +35 °C.
- If the electrical mirror setting fails at any time, the mirrors can be adjusted by hand by pressing on the edge of the mirror surface.

Seats and useful equipment

Adjusting the seats

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Manually adjusting the front seats	80
Electric front seat adjustment	80
Head restraints	81
Memory function of the electrically adjustable seat	82
Memory function of the remote control key	82

The driver's seat should be adjusted in such a way that the pedals can be fully pressed to the floor with slightly bent legs.

The seat backrest on the driver's seat should be adjusted in such a way that the upper point of the steering wheel can be easily reached with slightly bent arms.

Correct adjustment of the seats is particularly important for the following reasons.

- Reaching the controls safely and quickly.
- A relaxed and fatigue-free body position.
- **Achieving the maximum protection offered by the seat belts and the airbag system.**

WARNING

- Only adjust the driver's seat when the vehicle is stationary - risk of accident!
- Caution when adjusting the seat! You may suffer injuries or bruises as a result of adjusting the seat without paying proper attention.
- The electric front seat adjustment is still functional if the ignition is switched off (even with the ignition key removed). Therefore, when leaving the vehicle, never leave people who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle - there is a danger of injury!
- Never carry more people than the number of seats in the vehicle.
- Do not carry any objects on the front passenger seat except objects designed for this purpose (e.g. child seats) - risk of accident!

i Note

- After a certain time, play can develop within the adjustment mechanism of the backrest angle.
- For safety reasons, it is not possible to store the seat position in the electric seat memory and remote control key memory if the inclination angle of the seat backrest is more than 102° in relation to the seat cushion.
- Each time you store the position of the electrically adjustable driver's seat and exterior mirrors, the existing setting is deleted.

Manually adjusting the front seats

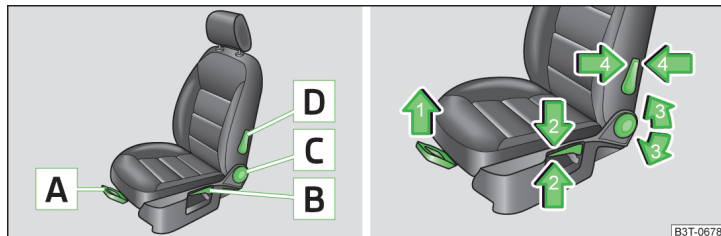


Fig. 65 Controls / setting

Read and observe **i** on page 79 first.

Adjusting a seat in a forward/back direction

- Pull the lever **A** » Fig. 65 in the direction of the arrow 1 and push the seat in the required direction.

The lock must click into place after you release the lever.

Adjusting height of seat

- Again push/pull the lever **B** » Fig. 65 in the direction of one of the arrows 2.

Adjusting the angle of the seat backrest

- Relieve any pressure from the seat backrest (do not lean on it) and turn the handwheel **C** » Fig. 65 in the direction of the arrow 3.

Adjusting lumbar support

- Push the lever **D** » Fig. 65 in the direction of one of the arrows 4.

Electric front seat adjustment

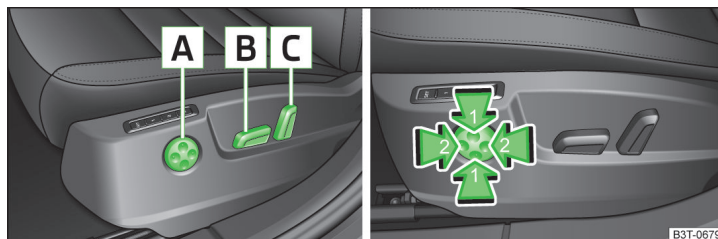


Fig. 66 Adjusting controls / lumbar support



Fig. 67 Setting: Seat pad / backrest

Read and observe **i** on page 79 first.

Adjusting a seat in a forward/back direction

- Push the switch **B** » Fig. 66 in the direction of one of the arrows 3 » Fig. 67.

Set the height of the seat cushion

- Push the switch **B** » Fig. 66 in the direction of one of the arrows 5 » Fig. 67.

Adjust the angle of the seat cushion

- Push the switch **B** » Fig. 66 in the direction of one of the arrows 4 » Fig. 67.

Adjusting the angle of the seat backrest

- Push the switch **C** » Fig. 66 in the direction of one of the arrows 6 » Fig. 67.

Reducing or increasing the curvature of the lumbar support

- Push the switch **A** in the region of one of the arrows 2 » Fig. 66.

Raising or lowering the curvature of the lumbar support

➤ Push the switch **A** in the region of one of the arrows **1** » Fig. 66.

The adjusted driver's seat position can be set in the memory of the seat » page 82 or the remote control key » page 82.

i Note

If the setting procedure is interrupted, you will need to press the button again.

Head restraints

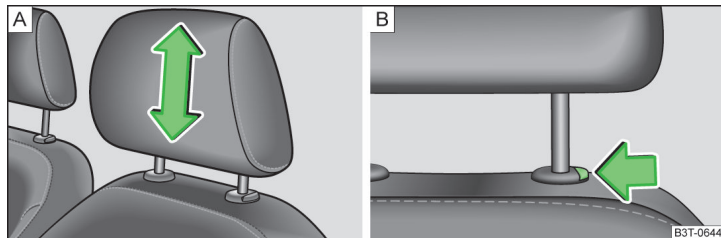


Fig. 68 Head restraints: setting / removing

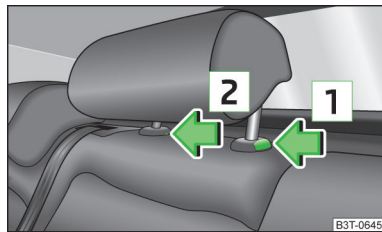


Fig. 69 Rear centre head rests in vehicles with the TOP TETHER system

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 79 first.

Best protection is achieved if the top edge of the head rest is at the same level as the upper part of your head.

Setting height

➤ Grasp the side of the head restraint with both hands and push it upwards as required » Fig. 68 - **A**.

➤ To move the head restraint downwards, press and hold the safety button » Fig. 68 - **B** with one hand and push the head restraint down with the other hand.

The front seats and head rests must be adjusted to match the body size at all times and the seat belt must always be fastened properly to provide the most effective levels of protection to the passengers » page 7, *Correct and safe seated position*.

Removing/installing

➤ Pull the head restraint up out of the seat backrest as far as the stop (for the rear head restraints fold the seat backrest forward).

➤ Press the locking button in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 68 - **B** and pull the head restraint out.

➤ To re-insert the head restraint, push it far enough down into the seat backrest until the locking button clicks into place.

Removing and installing rear middle head rest

Applies to vehicles using the TOP TETHER system.

➤ Pull the head restraint out of the seat backrest as far as the stop.

➤ Press the locking button in the direction of arrow **1** » Fig. 69 simultaneously press the locking button into the opening **2** using a flat screwdriver with a width of maximum 5 mm and pull out the head rest.

➤ To re-insert the head restraint, push it far enough down into the seat backrest until the locking button clicks into place.

! WARNING

- The head rests must be correctly adjusted to avoid risk of injury.
- Never drive with the head restraints removed - risk of injury.
- If the rear seats are occupied, the rear head rests must not be in the lower position.

i Note

The middle rear head restraint is adjustable in two positions.

Memory function of the electrically adjustable seat

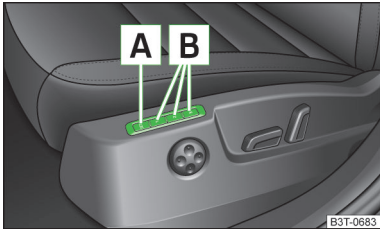


Fig. 70
Memory buttons and SET button

Read and observe **i** on page 79 first.

The memory function for the driver's seat provides the option to store the positions of the driver's seat and the external mirrors. Each of the three memory buttons **B** » Fig. 70 can be assigned a set position.

Storing seat and exterior mirror settings for driving forward

- › Switch on the ignition.
- › Adjust the seat to the desired position.
- › Adjust both of the exterior mirrors » page 78.
- › Press the button **SET** **A** » Fig. 70.
- › Within 10 seconds after pressing the **SET** button, press the desired memory button **B**.

An acknowledgment sound confirms the storage.

Saving front passenger mirror settings when reversing

Above the MAXI DOT display in the menu item **Mirror down**. The lowering function for the mirror on the passenger side when reversing must be enabled » page 45.

- › Switch on the ignition.
- › Press the required memory button **B** » Fig. 70.
- › Turn the knob for the external mirror control to the position for the passenger side mirror adjustment » page 78.
- › Engage reverse gear.
- › Adjust the front passenger's mirror to the desired position » page 78.
- › Disengage reverse gear.

The set position of the exterior mirror is stored.

Retrieving the saved setting

- › Briefly press the desired memory button **B** » Fig. 70 with the ignition on.

or

- › Press and hold the desired memory button **B** with the ignition off or when the ignition is on and travelling at a speed of more than 5 km / h.

Stopping the ongoing adjustment

- › Press any button on the driver's seat or the button **⏏** on the remote control key.

i Note

Each time new seat and exterior mirror settings for forward travel are saved, the individual setting for the right exterior mirror for reverse travel must also be saved again.

Memory function of the remote control key

Read and observe **i** on page 79 first.

The automatic storage of the driver's seat and exterior mirror positions when locking the vehicle can be turned on in the memory of the remote control key (afterwards only as function of automatic storage).

Enable automatic storage

- › Unlock the vehicle with the remote control key.
- › Press and hold any memory button **B** » Fig. 70 on page 82. After the seat has assumed the position stored under this button, at the same time press the button **⏏** on the remote control key within 10 seconds.

The successful activation of the automatic storage function for each key is confirmed by an acoustic signal.

Storing seat and exterior mirror settings for driving forward

- › Enable automatic storage.

When automatic storage is activated, the current positions of the driver's seat and the external mirrors are saved in the memory of the remote control key each time the vehicle is locked. When the vehicle is next unlocked using the same key, the driver's seat and the external mirrors assume the positions stored in the memory of this key¹⁾.

Saving front passenger mirror settings when reversing

Above the MAXI DOT display in the menu item **Mirror down**. The lowering function for the mirror on the passenger side when reversing must be enabled » [page 45](#).

- › Unlock the vehicle with the remote control key.
- › Switch on the ignition.
- › Turn the knob for the external mirror control to the position for the passenger side mirror adjustment » [page 78](#).
- › Engage reverse gear.
- › Adjust the front passenger's mirror to the desired position » [page 78](#).
- › Disengage reverse gear.

The adjusted position of the exterior mirror is stored in the remote control key memory.

Disable the function of automatic storage

- › Unlock the vehicle with the remote control key.
- › Press and hold the **(SET)** button **[A]** » [Fig. 70 on page 82](#). At the same time, press the button **[B]** on the remote control key within 10 seconds.

The successful deactivation of the automatic storage function for each key is confirmed by an acoustic signal.

Stopping the ongoing adjustment

- › Press any button on the driver's seat or the button **[B]** on the remote control key.

Seat features

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Seat heaters	83
Ventilated front seats	84

¹⁾ The vehicle must be locked and unlocked with the same key to save the seat and exterior mirror position to the key.

Convenience features of passenger seat	85
Armrest, front	85
Armrest rear	85
Seat backrests	85
Rear seat folded forward (Superb Combi)	86

Seat heaters

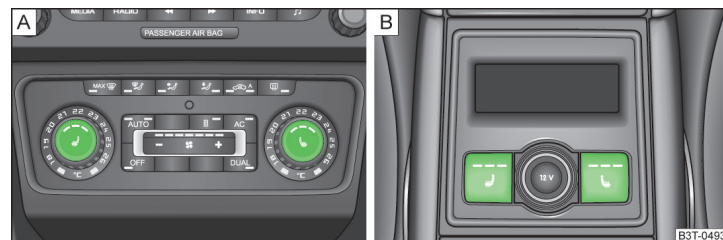


Fig. 71 Heating: Front seats/ rear seats

The seat backrests and surfaces of the front seats and the two outer rear seats can be heated electrically.

The seat heating can only be switched on when the engine is running.

Switching on the front seat heater

- › Press the controller in the area of the symbols and » [Fig. 71 - \[A\]](#)

Switch on rear seat heater

- › Press the symbol button or » [Fig. 71 - \[B\]](#).

By pressing the button once, the heating is switched to the highest intensity - level 3, which is indicated by all three of the indicator lights in the switch lighting up.

With repeated pressing of the switch, the heating is turned down until it goes off.

The seat heating level is indicated by the number of illuminated warning lights in the respective control. ▶

! WARNING

If you have a subdued pain and/or temperature sensitivity, e.g. through medication, paralysis or because of chronic illness (e.g. diabetes), we recommend not to use the seat heating. This can lead to burns on the back, the posterior and the legs which are difficult to heal. If the seat heating is used, we recommend to make regular breaks in your journey when driving long distances, so that the body can recuperate from the stress of the journey. Please consult your doctor, who can evaluate your specific condition.

! CAUTION

- Do not kneel on the seats or otherwise apply concentrated pressure to them.
- Do not turn on the seat heater if seats are not occupied.
- Do not switch on the seat heating if the seats have objects attached to or placed on them, for example a child seat, a bag, etc. A fault of the heating elements in the seat heating can occur.
- If additional seat covers or protective covers are attached to the seats, do not turn on the seat heater - there is a risk of damaging the seat covers and seat heating.
- Do not clean the seats using moisture » [page 178](#), *Seat covers*.

i Note

- If the on-board voltage drops, the seat heating is switched off automatically, in order to provide sufficient electrical energy for the engine control » [page 193](#).
- If the heaters for the rear seats are set to the highest intensity - level 3, they are automatically switched over to level 2 after 10 minutes (two indicator lights are illuminated on the switch).

Ventilated front seats



Fig. 72
Rocker switch for the seat ventilation

Heat and condensation can be removed from the seat cushions and seat backrests on the front seats.

The ventilation is operated using the rocker switch » [Fig. 72](#) in the front part of the seat cushion, in front of the seat control elements for the electric front seat adjustment.

Switching on

- Switch the rocker switch to position 1 - lower intensity and to position 2 - higher intensity.

Switching off

- Switch the rocker switch to the centre position .

! WARNING

If you or a passenger have limited pain and/or temperature sensitivity, e.g. caused by medication, paralysis or because of chronic illness (e.g. diabetes), we recommend that you consult your physician before using the ventilated front seat.

! CAUTION

- Do not kneel on the seats or otherwise apply concentrated pressure to them.
- The fan is located underneath the front seat cushion. Do not place any objects in this area - it may damage the fan.
- Do not clean the seats using moisture » [page 178](#), *Seat covers*.

i Note

- The ventilation should only be switched on when the engine is running. This has a significant effect of saving on the battery capacity.
- We do not recommend using the front seat ventilation and heating at the same time. Using the ventilation to cool the seat surface considerably reduces the heating capacity, at the same time affecting the ability of the control unit to detect the right seat surface temperature.

Convenience features of passenger seat

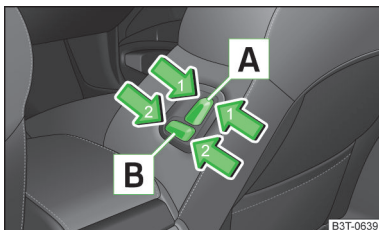


Fig. 73
Operating passenger seat from the rear seat

The front passenger seat can also be operated from the rear seat.

Adjusting the angle of the seat backrest

➤ Push the switch **A** in the direction of one of the arrows **1** » Fig. 73.

Adjusting a seat in a forward/back direction

➤ Push the switch **B** in the direction of one of the arrows **2** » Fig. 73

Armrest, front

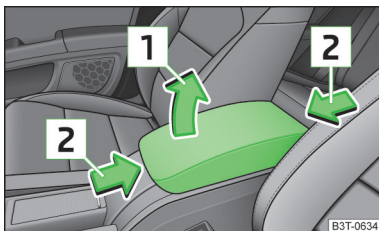


Fig. 74
Adjusting armrest

The armrest is adjustable for height and length.

Setting height

➤ First of all fold the cover downwards and then lift it in the direction of the arrow **1** » Fig. 74 to one of the 4 fixed positions.

Move

➤ Move the cover into the desired position in the direction of the arrow **2** » Fig. 74.

The armrest includes a storage compartment underneath » page 90.

i Note

Push the armrest cover all the way back to the stop before applying the hand-brake.

Armrest rear



Fig. 75
Fold the armrest forwards

Folding forward

➤ Fold down the armrest in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 75.

A cup holder may be located in the armrest » page 88.

Seat backrests

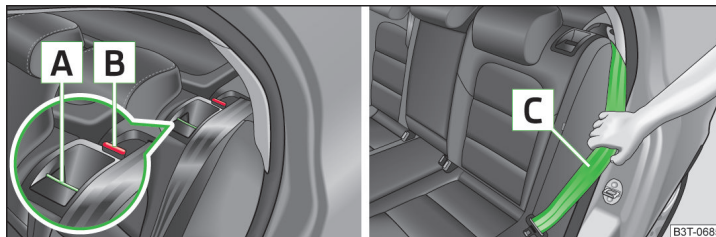


Fig. 76 Seat back: unlock / lock

The luggage compartment can be increased in size by folding the seat backrests forward. The seat backrests can be folded forward individually on vehicles with divided rear seats. ▶

Folding forward

Before folding the seat backrests forwards, adapt the position of the front seats in such a way that they are not damaged by the folded seat backrests ¹⁾.

> Push the lever **A** » Fig. 76 and fold the seat backrest completely forwards.

Folding backward

> If you removed the head restraint, you need to reinsert it with the backrest tilted slightly forwards » page 81.

> Hold the rear outer seat belt **C** » Fig. 76 against the side trim panel.

> Then push the seat backrest back into the upright position until the securing knob **A** clicks into place - check by pulling on the seat backrest » **!**.

> Make sure that the red pin **B** is hidden.

! WARNING

- The seat belts and the belt locks must be in their original position after folding back the seat backrests - they must be ready to use.
- The seat backrests must be securely locked in position so that no objects in the luggage compartment can slide into the passenger compartment on sudden braking - risk of injury.
- Ensure that the rear seat backrests are properly engaged. Only then can the seat belt for the middle seat reliably fulfil its function.

! CAUTION

Ensure that the seat belts are not damaged when operating the seat backrests. Under no circumstances must the rear seat belts be jammed by the folded back seat backrests.

Rear seat folded forward (Superb Combi)

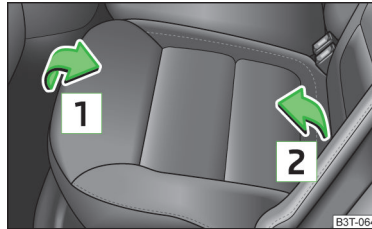


Fig. 77
Folding the seat cushion forwards

> Pull up the seat squab in the direction of the arrow **1** » Fig. 77 and fold forwards in the direction of the arrow **2**.

i Note

To achieve a loading space that is as horizontal as possible, the rear head restraints can be removed before folding the seat backrests forwards. Store the removed head restraints in such a way that they are not be damaged or soiled.

Practical equipment

! Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Car park ticket holder	87
Storage compartment on the driver's side	87
Storage compartments in the doors	88
Storage compartment in the front centre console	88
Cup holders	88
Cigarette lighter	89
Ashtray	89
12-Volt power outlet	90
Storage compartment under the armrest, front	90
Storage net in the front centre console	91
Glasses storage box	91▶

¹⁾ If the front seats are too far back, we recommend removing the rear head restraints before the seat backrests are folded forward, to achieve a loading space that is as horizontal as possible. Store the removed head restraints in such a way that they are not be damaged or soiled.

Storage compartment on the passenger side _____	92
Storage compartment under the passenger seat _____	92
Clothes hook _____	92
Storage pockets on the front seats _____	93
Storage compartment for umbrella _____	93
Storage compartment in rear centre console _____	93
Storage compartment in the rear armrest _____	94
Rear seat backrest with long-cargo channel _____	94
Removable ski bag _____	95

! WARNING

- Do not place anything on the dash panel. These objects might slide or fall down when driving (when accelerating or cornering) and may distract you from concentrating on the traffic - there is the risk of an accident.
- When driving, ensure that no objects from the centre console or from other storage compartments can get into the driver's footwell. You would not be able to brake, operate the clutch pedal or accelerate - danger of causing an accident!
- No objects should be placed in the storage compartments nor in the drinks holders; the vehicle occupants could be endangered if there is sudden braking or the vehicle collides with something.
- Ash and cigarette or cigar stubs must only be discarded in ashtrays!

Car park ticket holder

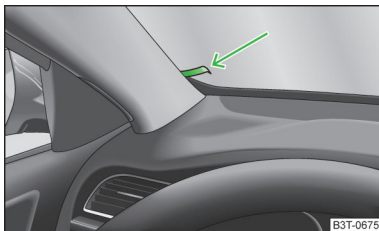


Fig. 78
Windscreen: Parking ticket holder

! Read and observe on page 87 first.

The note holder is designed e.g. for attaching car park tickets.

! WARNING

The attached note has to always be **removed** before starting off in order not to restrict the driver's vision.

Storage compartment on the driver's side

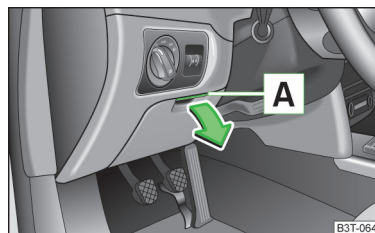


Fig. 79
Storage compartment on the driver's side

! Read and observe on page 87 first.

Opening

- Raise the handle **A** > Fig. 79 and open out the compartment in the direction of the arrow.

Closing

- Swivel the lid against the direction of the arrow until it clicks into place.

! WARNING

The storage compartment must always be closed when driving for safety reasons.

Storage compartments in the doors

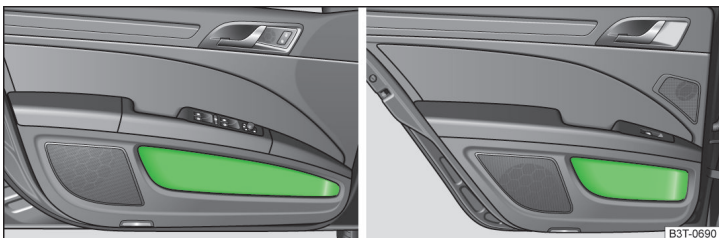


Fig. 80 Storage compartment: in the front door/in the rear door

Read and observe **!** on page 87 first.

! WARNING

Use the storage compartment only for storing objects which do not project so that the effectiveness of the side airbag is not impaired.

Storage compartment in the front centre console

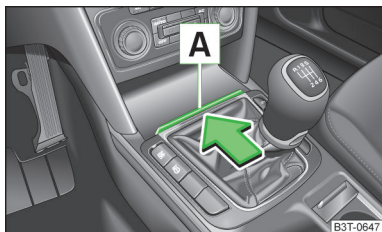


Fig. 81
Opening the storage compartment

Read and observe **!** on page 87 first.

Open/close

► Press on the edge of the roof **A** » Fig. 81 in the direction of the arrow.

Closing takes place in reverse order.

! WARNING

The storage compartment must never be used as an ashtray or for the storage of combustible materials - fire hazard and risk of damage to the storage compartment!

i Note

The storage compartment is equipped with an interior light which lights up when the parking light is on.

Cup holders

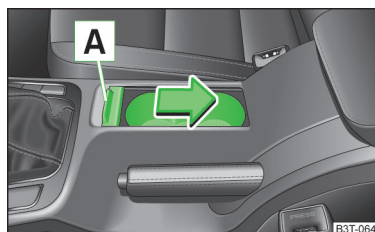


Fig. 82
Front centre console: Cup holder

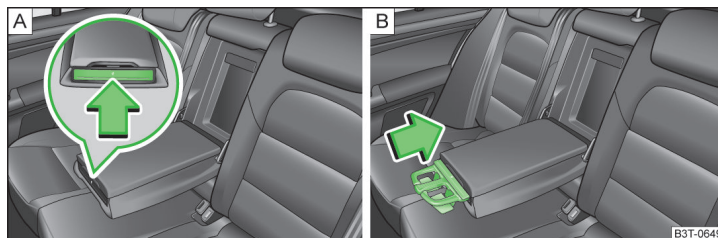


Fig. 83 Rear armrest: Remove cup holder/insert cup holder

Read and observe **!** on page 87 first.

Two beverage containers can be placed into the cup holder.

Cup holder at the front

On vehicles that are fitted with a cover for cup holders, you can cover the cup holder by pulling on the handle **A** » Fig. 82 in the direction of the arrow. ►

Rear cup holder

- Press on the front end of the armrest in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 83 - **A**, the cup holder comes out.
- To slide the cup holder in again, press the middle part of the cup holder » Fig. 83 - **B** and slide it into the armrest in the direction of the arrow.

! WARNING

- Never put hot beverage containers in the cup holder. If the vehicle moves, they may spill – risk of scalding!
- Do not use any cups or beakers which are made of brittle material (e.g. glass, porcelain). This could lead to injuries in the event of an accident.

! CAUTION

- Do not leave open beverage containers in the cup holder during the journey. There is a risk of spilling e.g. when braking which may cause damage to the electrical components or seat upholstery.
- Slide in the cup holder before raising the rear armrest.

Cigarette lighter

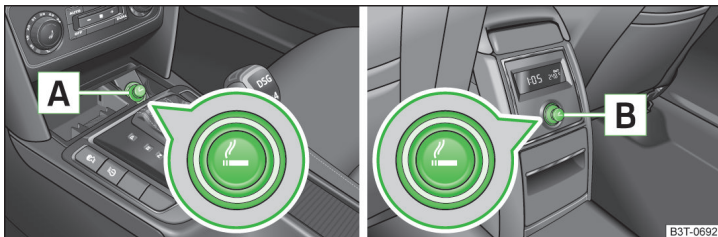


Fig. 84 Centre console: Cigarette lighter, front/rear

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 87 first.

Operation

- Press the button of the cigarette lighter **A** or **B** » Fig. 84.
- Wait until the button pops forward.
- Remove the cigarette lighter immediately and use.
- Place the cigarette lighter back into the socket.

! WARNING

- Take care when using the cigarette lighter! Improper usage can cause burns.
- The cigarette lighter also operates when the ignition is switched off or the ignition key withdrawn. Therefore, when leaving the vehicle, never leave people who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle. They could operate the igniter and burn themselves.

i Note

- The cigarette lighter socket can also be used as a 12Volt socket for electrical appliances » page 90, 12-Volt power outlet.
- Further information » page 169, Services, modifications, and technical alterations.

Ashtray

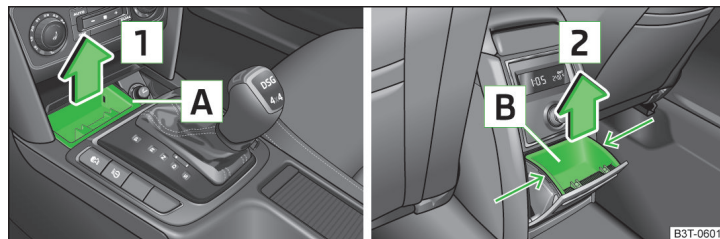


Fig. 85 Centre console: Ashtray at the front/rear

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 87 first.

The ashtray can be used for discarding ash, cigarettes, cigars and the like » **!**.

Removing/inserting the front ash tray

- Open the ashtray » Fig. 81 on page 88.
- Grasp the ashtray insert in the area **A** » Fig. 85 and remove it in the direction of the arrow **1**.

Insertion takes place in reverse order.

Removing/inserting the rear ashtray insert

- Open the ashtray » Fig. 94 on page 93.

➤ Grasp the ashtray insert **B** » Fig. 85 in the area marked with the arrows and remove it in the direction of the arrow **Z**.

Insertion takes place in reverse order.

! WARNING

Never place flammable objects in the ashtray – risk of fire!

i Note

The ashtrays are fitted with an interior light which lights up when the parking light is on.

12-Volt power outlet

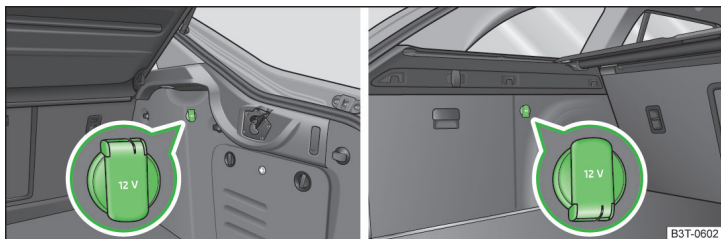


Fig. 86 Boot: Superb / Superb Combi socket

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 87 first.

The 12-volt power socket (hereinafter referred to only as a socket) is located in the front center console **A** » Fig. 84 on page 89 in the rear center console **B** » Fig. 84 on page 89 and in the luggage compartment » Fig. 86.

Use

- Remove the cover from power socket or cigarette lighter » Fig. 84 on page 89 or open the cover for the power socket » Fig. 86.
- Connect the plug for the electrical appliance to the socket.

The power socket and any connected appliances can also be operated when the ignition is switched off or the ignition key is withdrawn » **!**

! WARNING

- Improper use of the power sockets and the electrical accessories can cause fires, burns and other serious injuries. Therefore, when leaving the vehicle, never leave people who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle.
- If the connected electric device becomes too hot, switch it off and disconnect it from the power supply immediately.

! CAUTION

- The power socket can only be used for connecting approved electrical accessories with a power uptake of up to 120 watt.
- Never exceed the maximum power consumption, otherwise the vehicle's electrical system can be damaged.
- Connecting appliances when the engine is not running will drain the battery of the vehicle!
- Only use matching plugs to avoid damaging the power sockets.
- Only use accessories that have been tested for electromagnetic compatibility in accordance with the applicable directives.
- Switch off the devices connected to the power sockets before you switch the ignition on or off and before starting the engine, to avoid damage from voltage fluctuations.
- Observe the operating instructions for the connected devices!

Storage compartment under the armrest, front

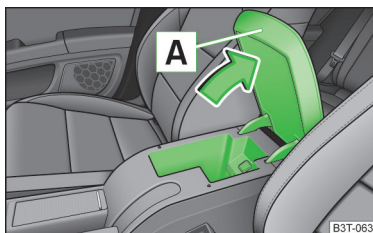


Fig. 87
Armrest: Stowage compartment

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 87 first.

Opening

- Pull and open the cover of the armrest using the handle **A** in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 87.

Closing

➤ Open the lid to the stop, only then can it be folded downwards and against the direction of the arrow » Fig. 87.

The sockets marked **AUX** AUX-IN input and the MDI input are located in the storage compartment.

i Note

The storage compartment is equipped with an interior light which lights up when the parking light is on.

Storage net in the front centre console

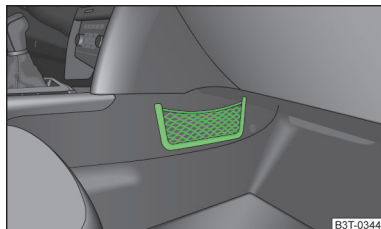


Fig. 88
Front centre console: Storage net

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 87 first.

! WARNING

Only store soft objects with a total weight of 0.5 kg in the storage net. Heavy objects are not secured sufficiently - risk of injury!

! CAUTION

Do not place any sharp objects into the net - risk of net damage.

Glasses storage box

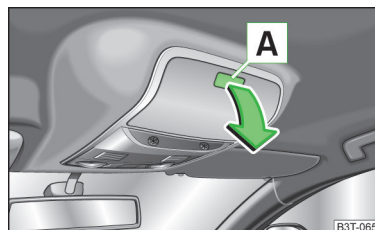


Fig. 89
Opening the glasses storage box

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 87 first.

Opening

➤ Press the button **A** » Fig. 89.

The box folds in the direction of the arrow.

Closing

➤ Swivel the lid of the glasses storage box against the direction of the arrow » Fig. 89 until it audibly clicks into place.

! WARNING

- The compartment must only be opened when removing or inserting the spectacles and otherwise must be kept closed!
- The box must be closed before leaving and locking the vehicle - risk of impairment to the functions of the anti-theft alarm system!

! CAUTION

Do not put any heat-sensitive objects in the glasses storage box - they may be damaged.

Storage compartment on the passenger side

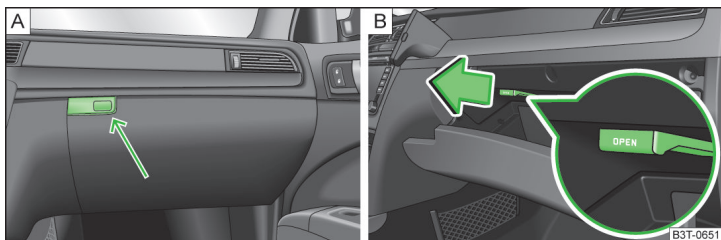


Fig. 90 Tray open / operating air supply

Read and observe **!** on page 87 first.

A pen holder is provided in the stowage compartment.

Opening

➤ Press the button » Fig. 90 - A.

The flap folds down.

Closing

➤ Lift the lid upwards until it clicks into place.

Air supply

➤ Open the air supply by pulling the lever in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 90 - B.

➤ The air supply is closed by pressing the lever in the opposite direction to that of the arrow.

Opening the air supply when the air conditioning system is switched on allows cooled air to flow into the storage compartment.

Opening the air inlet when the air conditioning system is on causes fresh or interior air to flow into the storage compartment.

We recommend closing the air supply if it is operated in heating mode or the cooling system for the storage compartment is not being used.

! WARNING

The storage compartment must always be closed when driving for safety reasons.

i Note

When the stowage compartment is opened, a light lights up.

Storage compartment under the passenger seat

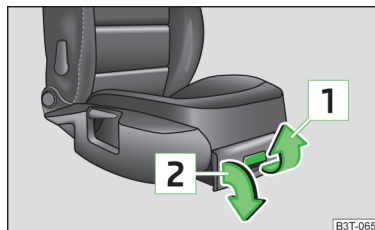


Fig. 91
Front passenger seat: Opening the storage compartment

Read and observe **!** on page 87 first.

Opening

➤ Pull the handle to position **1** » Fig. 91 in the direction of the arrow.

The compartment opens in the direction of the arrow **2**.

Closing

➤ Grip the compartment by the handle and close in the opposite direction to that of the arrow **2** » Fig. 91.

➤ Hold onto the handle until the door is closed.

! WARNING

The storage compartment must always be closed when driving for safety reasons.

! CAUTION

The storage compartment is designed for storing small objects of up to 1.5 kg. in weight.

Clothes hook

Read and observe **!** on page 87 first.

The clothes hooks are located on the middle pillar of the vehicle and on the handle of the headliner above each of the rear doors.

! WARNING

- Only hang light items of clothing on the hooks. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing.
- Do not use clothes hangers for hanging up items of clothing otherwise this may reduce the effectiveness of head airbags.
- Ensure that any clothes hanging from the hooks do not impair your vision to the rear.

! CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the hooks is 2 kg.

Storage pockets on the front seats



Fig. 92
Map pockets

! Read and observe **!** on page 87 first.

Pockets for storing maps, magazines etc. are provided on the back of the front seat backrests » Fig. 92.

! WARNING

Never put heavy items in the map pockets - risk of injury!

! CAUTION

Never put large objects into the map pockets, e.g. bottles or objects with sharp edges - risk of damaging the pockets and seat coverings.

Storage compartment for umbrella

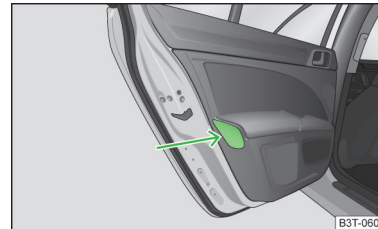


Fig. 93
Left rear door: Storage compartment for an umbrella

! Read and observe **!** on page 87 first.

The storage compartment for an umbrella is located in the rear left door » Fig. 93.

i Note

An umbrella can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Storage compartment in rear centre console

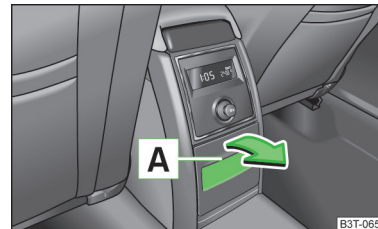


Fig. 94
Opening the storage compartment

! Read and observe **!** on page 87 first.

The storage compartment is equipped with a removable insert.

Open/close

➤ Pull the handle **A** » Fig. 94 on the upper section of the recess and open out the compartment in the direction of the arrow.

Closing takes place in reverse order. ▶

! WARNING

The storage compartment is not a substitute for the ashtray and must also not be used for such purposes - risk of fire!

Storage compartment in the rear armrest



Fig. 95
Opening the storage compartment

Read and observe ! on page 87 first.

Opening

➤ Lift button **A** on the front of the armrest and lift the storage compartment cover in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 95.

Closing

➤ Fold back the storage compartment lid in the opposite direction to that of the arrow » Fig. 95 until it clicks.

Rear seat backrest with long-cargo channel

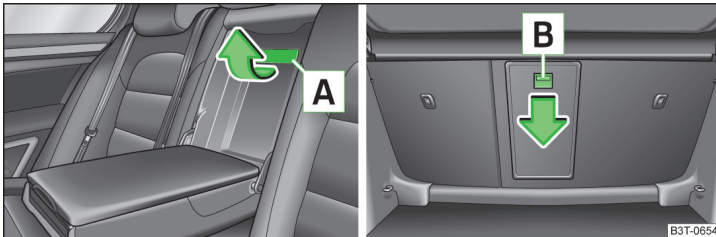


Fig. 96 **Rear seats: Cover handle/boot: Unlock button**

Read and observe ! on page 87 first.

After folding the rear armrest and cover up, an opening in the seat backrest becomes visible through which the removable through-loading bag with skis can be pushed. The armrest and cover can be folded forward from the passenger compartment or the boot.

Opening from the passenger compartment

➤ Fold down the rear armrest » Fig. 75 on page 85.

➤ Pull the handle **A** pull up to the stop in the direction of the arrow and fold the cover down » Fig. 96 .

Opening from the boot

➤ Push the unlock button **B** » Fig. 96 in the direction of the arrow and fold the cover including the armrest forwards.

Closing

➤ Fold the cover and rear armrest upwards to the stop - the cover must click into place.

Ensure that the armrest is always locked into place after closing. This is apparent as the red field above the unlocking button **B** » Fig. 96 is not visible from the boot.

! WARNING

The through-loading channel is only intended for transporting skis that are placed in a properly secured, removable through-loading bag » page 95.

Removable ski bag

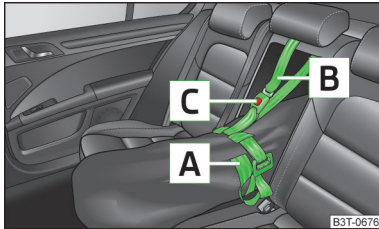


Fig. 97
Securing the through-loading bag

Read and observe **i** on page 87 first.

The removable through-loading bag (hereinafter referred to only as a through-loading bag) is used exclusively for transporting skis.

Loading

- Open the tailgate.
- Fold the rear armrest and the cover in the seat backrest downwards » page 94, *Rear seat backrest with long-cargo channel*.
- Place the empty, through-loading bag in such a way that the end of the bag with the zip is in the boot.
- Push the skis into the through-loading bag from the boot » **i**.
- Close the through-loading bag.

Securing

- Tighten the strap **A** on the free end around the skis in front of the bindings » Fig. 97.
- Fold the seat backrest a little forward.
- Guide the securing strap **B** through the opening in the seat backrest around the upper part of the seat backrest.
- Then push the seat backrest back into the upright position until the unlocking button clicks into place - check by pulling on the seat backrest.
- Insert the securing strap **B** into the lock **C** until it clicks into place.

On vehicles fitted with a luggage net partition, guide the securing strap **B** around the housing when the net partition is rolled up. After fixing the through-loading bag in place, it is not longer possible to unroll the net partition.

i WARNING

- After placing skis into the through-loading bag, you must secure the bag with the securing strap **B** » Fig. 97.
- The strap **A** must hold the skis tight.
- Make sure that the strap **A** holds the skis in front of the binding (also refer to imprint on the through-loading bag).
- The total weight of the skis which are transported must not exceed 24 kg.

i Note

- The through-loading bag is foreseen for four pairs of skis.
- Place the skis with the tips facing to the front and the sticks with the tips facing to the rear, into the through-loading bag.
- If there are several pairs of skis in the through-loading bag, ensure that the bindings are positioned at the same height.
- The through-loading bag must never be folded together or stowed when moist.

Luggage compartment

i Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Class N1 vehicles	96
Fastening elements	97
Fixing nets	97
Folding hook	97
Floor covering	98
Luggage net	98
Luggage compartment cover	98
Roll-up boot cover (Superb Combi)	99
Automatic Retractable cargo cover (Superb Combi)	99
Side pockets in luggage compartment	99
Side compartment in boot with battery	100
Non-closable side pocket (Superb Combi)	100

Please observe the following for the purpose of maintaining good handling characteristics of your vehicle:

- Distribute loads as evenly as possible. ▶

- Place heavy objects as far forward as possible.
- Attach the items of luggage to the lashing eyes or using the nets » [page 97](#).

In the event of an accident, even small and light objects gain so much kinetic energy that they can cause severe injuries.

The magnitude of the kinetic energy is dependent on the speed at which the vehicle is travelling and the weight of the object.

Example: In the event of a frontal collision at a speed of 50 km/h, an object with a weight of 4.5 kg produces an energy, which corresponds to 20 times its own weight. This means that it results in a weight of approx. 90 kg " " .

Luggage compartment light

The light switches on/off when the luggage compartment lid is opened or closed.

If the boot lid is open and the ignition switched off, the light will extinguish automatically after around 10 minutes.

Boot light for Superb Combi vehicles » [page 101](#).

! WARNING

- Store the objects in the boot and attach them to the lashing eyes.
- Loose objects can be thrown forward during a sudden manoeuvre or in case of an accident and can injure the occupants or other road users.
- Loose objects could hit a deployed airbag and injure occupants - danger of death!
- Please note that transporting heavy objects alters the handling properties of the vehicle due to the displacement of the centre of gravity - risk of accident! The speed and style of driving must be adjusted accordingly.
- If the items of luggage or objects are attached to the lashing eyes with unsuitable or damaged lashing straps, injuries can occur in the event of braking manoeuvres or accidents. To prevent items of luggage from moving around, always use suitable lashing straps which must be firmly attached to the lashing eyes.
- The transported items must be stowed in such a way that no objects are able to slip forward on sudden driving or braking manoeuvres - risk of injury!
- When transporting objects in the luggage compartment that has been enlarged by folding the rear seats forward, ensure the safety of the passengers transported on the other rear seats » [page 9](#).

! WARNING (Continued)

- If the rear seat next to the folded forward seat is occupied, ensure maximum safety, e.g. by placing the goods to be transported in such a way that the seat is prevented from folding back in case of a rear collision.
- Do not drive with the luggage compartment lid fully opened or slightly ajar otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle - risk of poisoning!
- Do not exceed the permissible axle loads and permissible gross weight of the vehicle - risk of accident!
- Do not transport people in the boot!

! CAUTION

Make sure that transported objects with sharp edges do not damage the following:

- heating elements in the rear window;
- elements of the aerial integrated in the rear window;
- Aerial filaments integrated in the rear side windows (Superb Combi).

i Note

Tyre pressure must be adjusted to the load » [page 194](#).

Class N1 vehicles

📖 Read and observe ! and ! on page 96 first.

On class N1 vehicles, which are not fitted with a protective grille, a lashing set which complies with the standard EN 12195 (1 - 4) must be used for fastening the load.

The proper functioning of the electrical system is essential for the safe operation of the vehicle. It is important to ensure that it is not damaged during modifications or when loading or unloading the luggage compartment.

Fastening elements

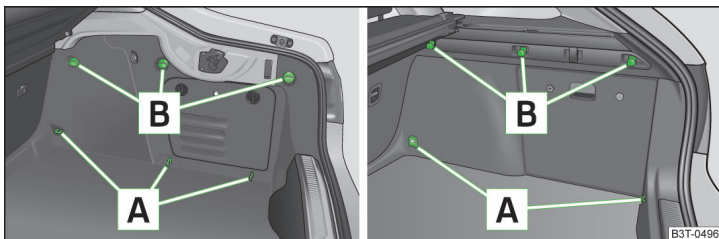


Fig. 98 Lashing eyes and fastening elements: Superb / Superb Combi

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 96 first.

The following fastening elements are found in the luggage compartment » Fig. 98.

- A** Lashing eyes for fastening items of luggage and fixing nets.
- B** Fastening elements for fastening fixing nets.

! CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the lashing eyes is 3.5 kN (350 kg).

Fixing nets

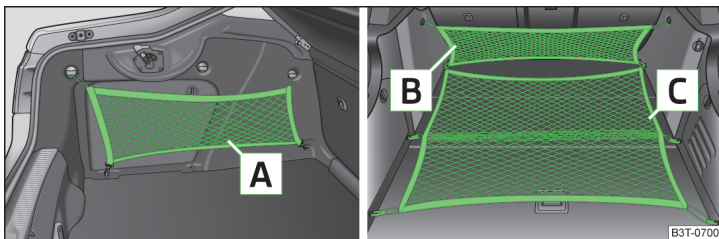


Fig. 99 Fastening examples for nets

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 96 first.

Examples for attaching the fixing nets » Fig. 99.

- A** Vertical pocket
- B** Horizontal pocket
- C** Floor net

! WARNING

Do not exceed the maximum permissible load of the fixing nets. Heavy objects are not secured sufficiently – risk of injury!

! CAUTION

- The maximum permissible load of the fixing nets is 1.5 kg.
- Do not place any sharp objects in the nets – risk of net damage.

Folding hook

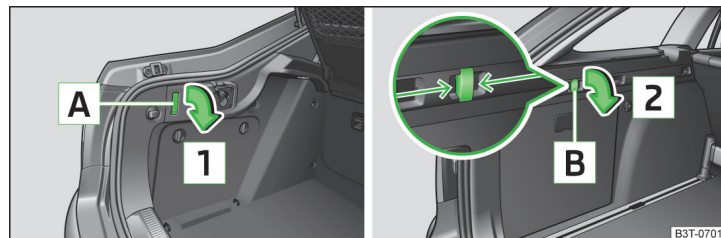


Fig. 100 Folding hooks: Superb / Superb Combi

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 96 first.

Folding hooks for attaching small items of luggage, such as bags etc., are provided on both sides of the boot.

Folding forward

- Superb: Press on the lower portion of the hook **A** and fold down direction of the arrow **1** » Fig. 100.
- Superb Combi: Grip the hook **B** direction of the arrow and fold down in the direction of arrow **2** » Fig. 100.

! CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the hook is 7.5 kg.

Floor covering

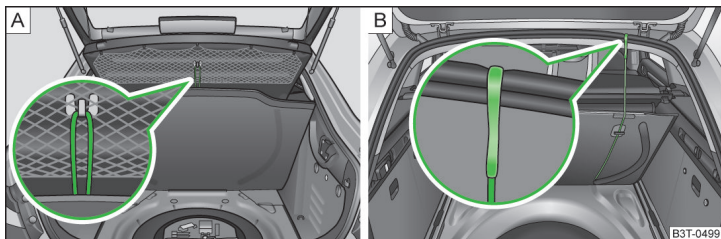


Fig. 101 Fixing the floor covering: Superb / Superb Combi

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 96 first.

The raised floor covering of the luggage compartment can be fixed (e.g. when handling the spare wheel):

- With the loop on a hook on the luggage compartment cover » Fig. 101 - A.
- With the hook on the frame of the luggage compartment lid » Fig. 101 - B.

Luggage net

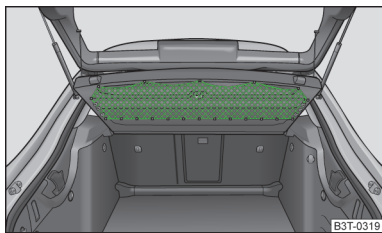


Fig. 102
Luggage net

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 96 first.

The luggage net is located on the underside of the luggage compartment cover.

The net is designed for transporting lighter objects.

! WARNING

Only store soft objects with a total weight of 1.5 kg in the net. Heavy objects are not secured sufficiently - risk of injury!

! CAUTION

Do not place any sharp objects into the net - risk of net damage.

Luggage compartment cover

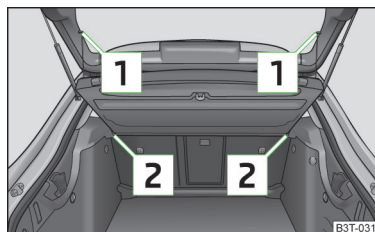


Fig. 103
Removing/installing the luggage compartment cover

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 96 first.

Removing

- Hook the support straps **1** » Fig. 103 onto the tailgate.
- Place the cover in the horizontal position.
- Pull the cover out of the holders **2** horizontally towards the rear.

The removed boot cover can be stowed behind the seat backrest.

Fitting

- Push the boot cover into the brackets **2** » Fig. 103.
- Hook the support straps **1** onto the tailgate.

! WARNING

No objects should be placed on the boot cover, the vehicle occupants could be endangered if there is sudden braking or the vehicle collides with something.

! CAUTION

Please ensure that the heating elements for the rear window heater are not damaged as a result of objects placed in this area.

i Note

If the retaining strips **1** are attached to the tailgate, the boot cover will raise when you open the tailgate.

Roll-up boot cover (Superb Combi)

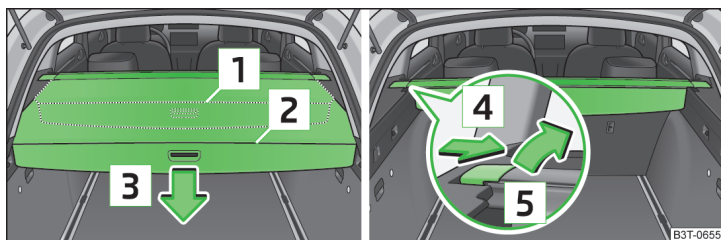


Fig. 104 Roll-up cargo cover: pull out and roll up / take out

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 96 first.

Extending

➤ Pull the foldable boot cover as far as the stop into the secured position **2** » Fig. 104.

Retracting

➤ Press the cover in the handle area in the direction of the arrow **3** » Fig. 104, and the cover automatically rolls up into position **1**.

Press in the grip area again and the cover will roll up.

Removing/inserting

The fully rolled-up boot cover can be removed (e.g. for the transport of bulky objects).

➤ Push on the side of the crossbar in the direction of the arrow **4** » Fig. 104 and remove the cover in the direction of the arrow **5**.

Insertion takes place in reverse order.

! WARNING

No objects should be placed on the foldable boot cover.

Automatic Retractable cargo cover (Superb Combi)

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 96 first.

The automatic rolling up of the foldable boot cover enables an easier entry into the boot.

➤ Open the tailgate.

The foldable boot cover rolls up automatically in the position **1** to » Fig. 104 on page 99.

➤ Push the cover in the area of the handle in the direction of the arrow **3**.

The cover retracts completely.

When the boot lid is opened quickly, the automatic rolling up of the foldable boot cover is blocked for a delay time of approx. 2 seconds.

The function to automatically roll up the foldable boot cover can be activated/deactivated via the MAXI DOT display in the menu:

- Settings
- Auto Rollo

Side pockets in luggage compartment

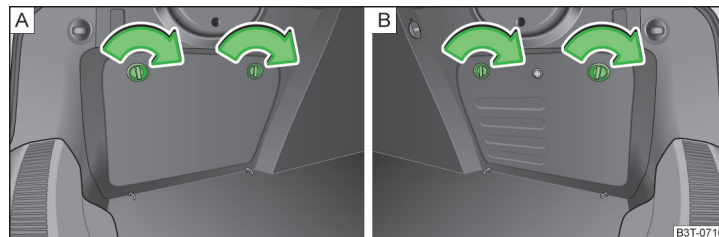


Fig. 105 Superb boot: Open side compartment left / right



Fig. 106
Superb Combi boot: Open right compartment

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 96 first.

Open / close compartment (Superb)

➤ Turn the bolts in direction of arrow » Fig. 105.

Closing takes place in reverse order.

The CD changer and TV tuner are located in the right compartment » Fig. 105 **B**.

The first-aid box can also be stored in this compartment.

Open and close compartment / (Superb Combi)

➤ Pull the handle in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 106.

Closing takes place in the reverse order.

The CD changer and TV Tuner are housed in this compartment.

The first-aid box and warning triangle can also be stored in this compartment.

Side compartment in boot with battery

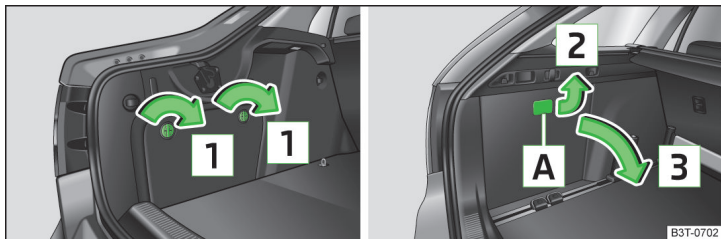


Fig. 107 Open compartment with battery: Superb / Superb Combi

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 96 first.

On some vehicles the battery is located in the left compartment » page 189.

Open / close compartment (Superb)

➤ Unfasten the bolts e.g. with a coin or screwdriver in the direction of the arrow **1** » Fig. 107.

Closing takes place in reverse order.

Open and close compartment / (Superb Combi)

➤ For example, insert a coin in the slot **A** and lift them in the arrow direction **2** » Fig. 107.

The compartment opens in the direction of the arrow **3**.

➤ Close compartment (opposite to arrow direction) **3** until you hear it click.

1 Note

The side compartment where the battery is located is labelled in the Superb Combi vehicles with the symbol .

Non-closable side pocket (Superb Combi)

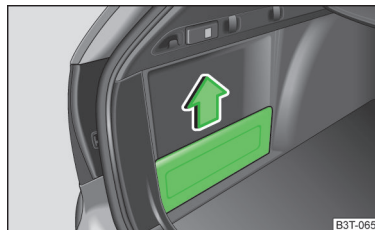


Fig. 108
Removing non-lockable side compartment

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 96 first.

Increasing the size of the boot

➤ Remove the cover of the stowage compartment in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 108.

! CAUTION

When handling the side compartment, ensure that the cover and the cover mountings are not damaged.

Removable light (Superb Combi)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Use light	101
Changing rechargeable light batteries	101

A removable lamp is fitted on the left side of the boot. This lamp has two functions.

- Lighting the luggage compartment - part **B** » Fig. 109 on page 101 illuminated (lamp in holder).
- Portable lamp - part **C** illuminated (lamp removed from the holder).

If the lamp is in the holder, it is automatically switched on when the tailgate is opened and switched off again when the tailgate is closed.

The lamp is supplied by three rechargeable type AAA batteries. The rechargeable batteries are constantly charged when the engine is running. It takes approx. 3 hours to fully charge the rechargeable batteries.

The lamp is fitted with magnets. Therefore it is possible to attach the lamp, for example on the vehicle body, after removing it.

CAUTION

The removable lamp is not watertight and must therefore be protected against moisture.

Note

- If the lamp is not correctly inserted into the holder, it does not light up when the boot lid is opened and the rechargeable batteries are not charged.
- If the lamp is not switched off and it is correctly inserted in the holder, the bulbs in the front part **C** » Fig. 109 on page 101 of the lamp are automatically switched off.

Use light

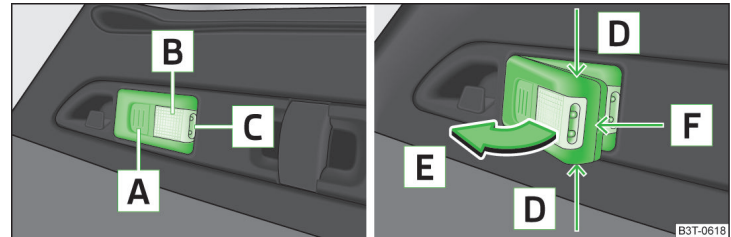


Fig. 109 Use light / remove light

Read and observe **!** on page 101 first.

Use light

- If you press button **A** » Fig. 109 once, the lamp lights up with 100 % light intensity.
- If you press button **A** again, the lamp lights up with 50 % light intensity.
- Press **A** button once again - the light goes out.

Remove the lamp from the holder

- Grasp the lamp in the areas of the arrows **D** » Fig. 109 and swivel it in the direction of the arrow **E**.

Reinserting the lamp the holder

- First of all place the deactivated lamp in the holder on the side facing the boot lid and then press on the lamp from the other side until it clicks into place.

Changing rechargeable light batteries

Read and observe **!** on page 101 first.

Proceed as follows if you wish to replace the faulty rechargeable batteries yourself:

- Remove the lamp.
- Lever off the cover for the rechargeable batteries with a narrow and pointed object from the location of the lock-off clips **F** » Fig. 109 on page 101.
- Remove the faulty rechargeable batteries from the lamp.
- Insert the new rechargeable batteries.

➤ Insert the cover for the rechargeable batteries and press it down until it clicks into place.

! CAUTION

We recommend having faulty rechargeable batteries replaced by a ŠKODA service partner. If the lamp is not correctly opened, it can be damaged.

♻️ For the sake of the environment

Dispose of used rechargeable batteries in accordance with national legal provisions.

i Note

- Pay attention to the correct polarity when changing the rechargeable batteries.
- The replacement rechargeable batteries must have the same specification as the original rechargeable batteries. If other types of rechargeable batteries are used, the power output can be reduced or it can lead to a malfunction of the lamp.

Variable loading floor in the luggage compartment (Estate)

📖 Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Dividing the luggage compartment _____ 102

Remove variable loading floor _____ 102

The variable loading floor makes handling of bulky items of luggage easier.

! CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the variable loading floor is 75 kg.

i Note

The room under the variable loading floor can be used to stow objects.

Dividing the luggage compartment

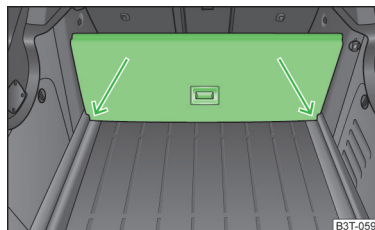


Fig. 110
Dividing the boot with variable loading floor

📖 Read and observe ! on page 102 first.

- Lift up the part with the mounting and secure it by sliding it into the grooves marked with the arrows » Fig. 110.

Remove variable loading floor

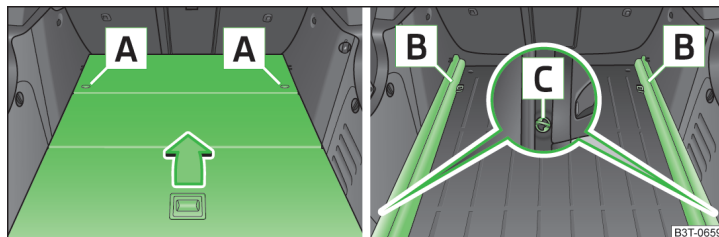


Fig. 111 Boot: Remove variable loading floor/remove carrier rails

📖 Read and observe ! on page 102 first.

- Unlock the variable loading floor by turning the safety eyes **A** » Fig. 111 to the left by around 90°.
- Fold up and remove the loading floor by moving it in the direction of the arrow.
- Unlock the carrier rails **B** by turning the arbour-mounted fixing eyes **C** to the right by approx. 90°.

! WARNING

Ensure that the carrier rails and variable loading floor are correctly fastened when installing the variable loading floor. If this is not the case, there is a risk of injury for the occupants.

Extending variable loading floor with integrated aluminium rails and fastening elements (Superb Combi)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Partial extension of variable load floor	103
Divide boot	103
Fit and remove variable loading floor	104
Fixing set	104
Movable lashing eyes	105

The variable loading floor makes handling of bulky items of luggage easier.

! CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the variable loading floor is 75 kg.

i Note

The space below the variable loading floor can be used for stowing objects, for example the fastening elements, removed foldable boot cover, etc.

Partial extension of variable load floor

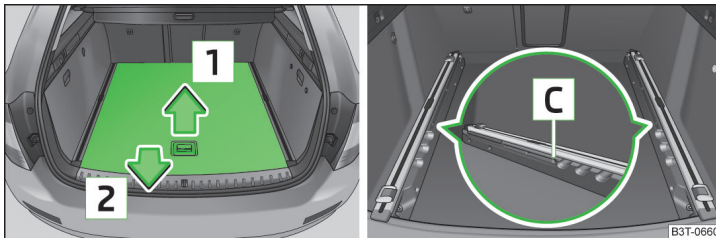


Fig. 112 Boot: partially pulling out the variable loading floor

Read and observe ! on page 103 first.

The variable loading floor can be partially pulled out over the rear bumper.

- Grasp the rear of the variable loading floor by the handle and lift gently in the direction of the arrow **1** » Fig. 112.
- Extend the variable load floor over the bumper in the direction of the arrow **2** until it engages in the opening **C**.

The variable loading floor which is pulled out in such a way is solely used as a seat, for example for changing shoes.

- To push in the rear section of the variable loading floor, grasp by the handle and lift slightly in the direction of the arrow **1**.
- Slide the variable load floor forward up to the stop.

When pulling out the variable loading floor, the front edge (close to the rear seats) is lifted at the same time. Thus, small objects can no longer fall into the space between the boot floor and the variable loading floor.

! CAUTION

Ensure that the raised front edge of the variable loading floor is not damaged.

Divide boot

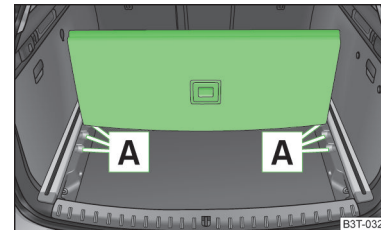


Fig. 113
Dividing the boot

Read and observe ! on page 103 first.

The boot can be divided with the variable loading floor.

- Grasp the rear of the variable loading floor by the handle and lift in the direction of the arrow **1** » Fig. 112 on page 103.
- Insert the trailing edge in one of the openings **A** » Fig. 113.

The variable loading floor is secured in the openings **A** against movement. ▶

The variable loading floor can be pulled out a little more before dividing the boot with the variable loading floor » page 103. This enlarges the space between the rear seats and the separation.

! CAUTION

Ensure that the raised front edge of the variable loading floor is not damaged.

Fit and remove variable loading floor

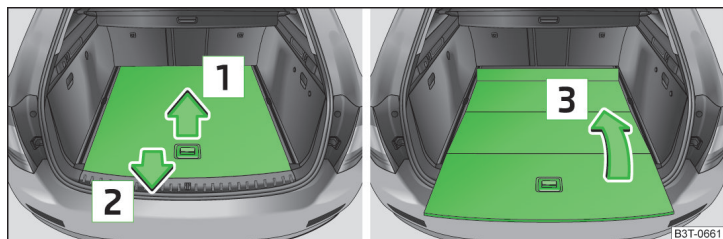


Fig. 114 Boot: Fold up variable loading floor

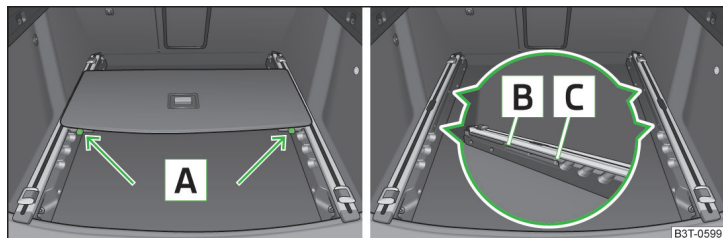


Fig. 115 Boot: remove variable loading floor

Read and observe ! on page 103 first.

The variable loading floor can be removed and reinstalled, if necessary.

Removing

Grasp the rear part of the floor by the handle, raise it slightly in the direction of the arrow **1** » Fig. 114 and pull it out over the bumper in the direction of the arrow **2** until it engages in the opening **C** » Fig. 115.

Fold up the loading floor by moving it in the direction of the arrow **3** » Fig. 114.

Press the safety buttons **A** » Fig. 115 and remove the floor.

Fitting

Fold up the floor and place it on the carrier rails.

Push the floor forwards until it engages in the openings **B** in the carrier rails » Fig. 115.

Carefully press in the vicinity of the openings **C** on the floor until it clicks into place, if necessary press the safety buttons **A**.

! WARNING

Ensure the variable loading floor is attached correctly during installation. If this is not the case, there is a risk of injury for the occupants.

Fixing set

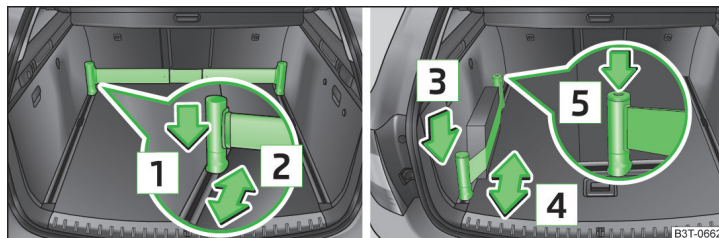


Fig. 116 Telescopic pole and tensioning strap

Read and observe ! on page 103 first.

The fixing set can be used for dividing the boot or for securing the objects which are being transported.

Telescopic pole

Insert the holders for the telescopic pole into the left and right openings of the carrier rails.

Press the top part of the holder in the direction of the arrow **1** » Fig. 116 and simultaneously push in the desired position in the direction of the arrow **2**.

Ensure that the holder is correctly locked in place.

Tensioning strap

- Insert the tensioning strap holders into the opening on the left or right carrier rail.
- Press the holder in the direction of the arrow **3** » Fig. 116 and simultaneously push in the desired position in the direction of the arrow **4**.
- Ensure that the holder is correctly locked in place.
- Place the object that is to be secured behind the tensioning strap.
- Press the button **5** on the top side of the holder and tighten the strap.

! WARNING

The objects in the boot must be firmly secured with the fixing set so that they cannot move freely and uncontrollably and to prevent damage to objects or injuries to occupants.

i Note

- Do not use the fixing set to secure objects that might damage the fixing set.
- The tensioning strap can also be fully reeled up by pressing the button **5** » Fig. 116.

Movable lashing eyes

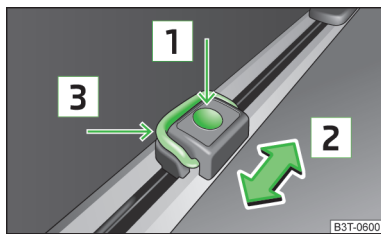


Fig. 117
Moveable lashing eyes

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 103 first.

There are four moveable lashing eyes in the boot that can, for example, be used to attach the fixing nets.

- Press the button **1** » Fig. 117 and push the lashing eye in the desired position in the direction of the arrow **2**.
- Fold up the clamp **3** » Fig. 117 and, for example, attach the fixing net.

Net partition (Superb Combi)

📖 Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Using the net partition behind the rear seats	105
Using the net partition behind the front seats	106
Removing and refitting the net partition housing	106

! WARNING

- Make sure that the transverse rod is inserted into the mounts **C** » Fig. 118 on page 105 or » Fig. 119 on page 106 in the forward position.
- The belt locks and the belts must be in their original position after folding back the seat cushions and backrests - they must be ready to use.
- The seat backrests must be securely locked in position so that no objects in the luggage compartment can slide into the passenger compartment on sudden braking - risk of injury.
- Ensure that the rear seat backrests are properly engaged. Only then can the seat belt for the middle seat reliably fulfil its function.

Using the net partition behind the rear seats

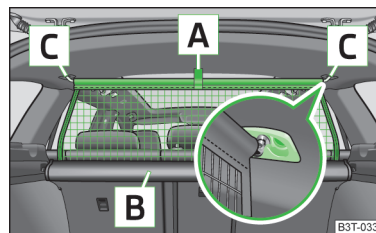


Fig. 118
Net partition behind the front seats in the pulled-out state

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 105 first.

Extending

- Pull the net partition by the tab **A** » Fig. 118 in the direction of the fasteners **C**.
- Insert the cross rod into one of the mounts **C** and push forwards.
- Insert the transverse rod into the mount **C** on the other side of the vehicle in the same way.

Retracting

- Pull the transverse rod back slightly first on one side and then on the other and remove it from the mounts **C** » Fig. 118.
- Hold the cross rod in such a way that the net partition can slowly roll up into the housing **B** without being damaged.

i Note

If you wish to use the entire luggage compartment, the roll-up luggage compartment cover can be removed » page 99.

Using the net partition behind the front seats

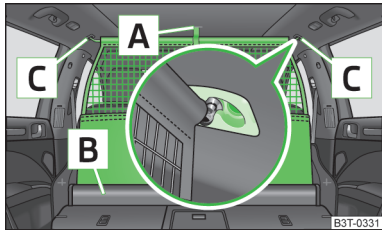


Fig. 119
Net partition behind the front seats in the pulled-out state

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 105 first.

Extending

- Fold the rear seats forward » page 85.
- Pull the net partition by the tab **A** » Fig. 119.
- First of all insert the cross rod into the mount **C** on one side and push it forward.
- Insert the transverse rod into the mount **C** on the other side of the vehicle in the same way.

Retracting

- Pull the transverse rod back slightly first on one side and then on the other and remove it from the mounts **C** » Fig. 119.
- Hold the cross rod in such a way that the net partition can slowly roll up into the housing **B** without being damaged.
- Fold the rear seats back into their original positions » page 85.

Removing and refitting the net partition housing

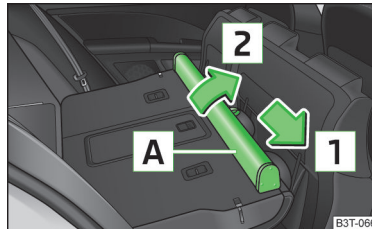


Fig. 120
Rear seats: Removing the net partition housing

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 105 first.

Removing

- Fold the rear seats forward » page 85.
- Open the rear right door.
- Push the housing **A** in the direction of the arrow **1** and remove it from the mounts on the right seat backrests in the direction of the arrow **2** » Fig. 120.

Fitting

- Insert the recesses on the housing **A** » Fig. 120 into the mounts on the rear seat backrests.
- Push the net partition housing in the opposite direction of the arrow **1** as far as the stop.
- Fold the rear seats back into their original positions » page 85.

Roof rack system

📖 Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Attachment points	_____	107
Roof load	_____	107

! WARNING

- The transported items on the roof rack must be securely attached - risk of accident!
- Always secure the load with appropriate and undamaged lashing straps or tensioning straps.

! WARNING (Continued)

- Distribute the load evenly over the roof rack system.
- When transporting heavy objects or objects which take up a large area on the roof rack system, the handling of the car may change as a result of the displacement of the centre of gravity. The style of driving and speed must therefore be adapted to the current circumstances.
- Avoid abrupt and sudden driving/braking manoeuvres.
- Adjust the speed and driving style to the visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- The permissible roof load, permissible axle loads and permissible total vehicle weight must not be exceeded under any circumstances – risk of accident!

! CAUTION

- Only roof racks from the ŠKODA Original Accessories range should be used.
- When dealing with roof racks, the installation instructions supplied with the roof luggage rack system must be observed.
- On models fitted with a power sliding/tilting roof or a panoramic sliding roof, ensure that the opened sliding/tilting roof or the panoramic sliding roof does not strike any items of luggage transported on the roof.
- Ensure that the boot lid does not hit the roof load when opened.
- The height of the vehicle changes after mounting a roof luggage rack system and the load that is secured to it. Compare the vehicle height with available clearances, such as underpasses and garage doors.
- Always remove the roof luggage rack system before entering an automated car wash.
- Ensure the roof aerial is not impaired by the secured load.

🌿 For the sake of the environment

The increased aerodynamic drag results in a higher fuel consumption.

Attachment points

Does not apply to the Superb Combi.



Fig. 121 Attachment points for roof bars

📖 Read and observe ! and ! on page 106 first.

Installation position of the attachment points for roof bars » Fig. 121:

A Forward attachment point

B Rear attachment point

Perform the assembly and disassembly according to the enclosed instructions.

! CAUTION

Observe the information regarding the assembly and disassembly in the enclosed instructions.

Roof load

📖 Read and observe ! and ! on page 106 first.

The maximum permissible roof load (including roof rack system) of **100 kg** and the maximum permissible total weight of the vehicle should not be exceeded.

The full permissible roof load cannot be used if a roof rack system with a lower load carrying capacity is used. In this case, the roof rack system must only be loaded up to the maximum weight limit specified in the fitting instructions.

Air conditioning system

Heating, ventilation, cooling

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Air outlets	108
Using the air conditioning system economically	109
Operational problems	110

The heating effect is dependent upon the coolant temperature, thus full heat output only occurs when the engine has reached its operating temperature.

If the cooling system is switched on, the temperature and air humidity drops in the vehicle. The cooling system prevents the windows from misting up during winter months.

It is possible to briefly activate recirculated air mode to enhance the cooling effect.

Please refer to the information regarding recirculated air mode for the air-conditioning system » [page 112](#) or for Climatronic » [page 115](#).

! WARNING

For your own safety and that of other road users, ensure that all the windows are free of ice, snow and misting. Please familiarize yourself about how to correctly operate the heating and ventilation systems, how to demist and defrost the windows, as well as with the cooling mode.

! CAUTION

- The air inlet in front of the windscreen must be free (e.g. of ice, snow or leaves) to ensure that the heating and cooling system operates properly.
- After switching on the cooling **Condensation** from the evaporator of the air conditioning may drip down and form a puddle below the vehicle. This is not a leak!

i Note

- The exhaust air streams out through vents at the rear of the luggage compartment.
- We recommend that you do not smoke in the vehicle when the recirculating air mode is operating since the smoke which is drawn at the evaporator from the interior of the vehicle forms deposits in the evaporator of the air conditioning system. This produces a permanent odour when the air conditioning system is operating which can only be eliminated through considerable effort and expense (replacement of compressor).

Air outlets

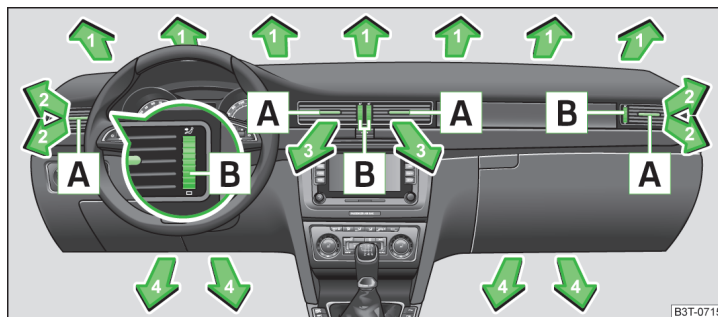


Fig. 122 Air vents at the front

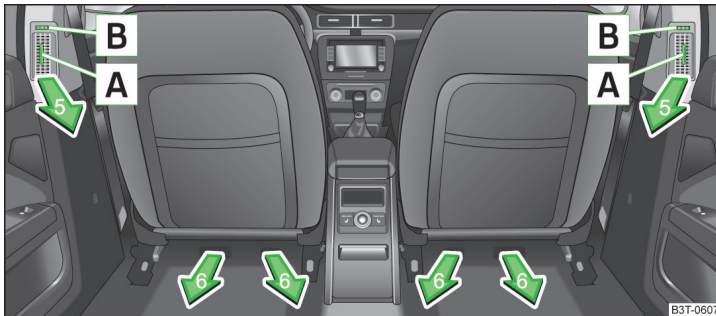


Fig. 123 Air vents at the rear

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 108 first.

Unwarmed or cooled air will flow out of the opened air outlet vents according to the setting of control dial and the outside atmospheric conditions.

The direction of airflow can be adjusted using the air outlet vents **2**, **3** » Fig. 122 and **5** » Fig. 123 - the outlets can be opened and closed individually.

Set the air flow direction

- ▶ To adjust the height of the air flow, turn the horizontal vanes up or down with the movable adjuster **A** » Fig. 122 » Fig. 123.
- ▶ To change the lateral direction of the air flow, turn the vertical fins with the movable adjuster **A** » Fig. 122 or » Fig. 123 to the left or right.

Setting the amount of airflow

- ▶ Turn the knob **B** » Fig. 122 and » Fig. 123 to position to fully open the air outlet.
- ▶ Turn the knob **B** » Fig. 122 and » Fig. 123 to position **0** to close the air outlet.

The knob can be adjusted to any position in between.

An overview of the available settings for adjusting the direction of the air outlet

Setting the direction of the air outlet	Active air outlet vents
	1, 2
	1, 2, 4, 6
	2, 3, 5
	4, 6

Note

Do not cover the air outlet vents with objects of any kind.

Using the air conditioning system economically

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 108 first.

The compressor on the air conditioning system uses power from the engine when in cooling mode which will effect the fuel consumption.

It recommended to open the windows or the doors of a vehicle for which the interior has been strongly heated through the effect of direct sunlight in order to allow the heated air to escape.

The cooling system should not be on if the windows are open.

For the sake of the environment

Pollutant emissions are also lower when fuel is being saved » page 146, *Economical driving and environmental sustainability*.

Operational problems

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 108 first.

If the cooling system does not operate at outside temperatures higher than +5 °C, there is a problem in the system. The reasons for this may be.

- One of the fuses has blown. Check the fuse and replace if necessary » page 215.
- The cooling system has switched off automatically for a short time because the coolant temperature of the engine is too hot » page 29.

If you are not able to resolve the operational problem yourself, or if the cooler output has reduced, switch off the cooling system and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Air conditioning system (manual air conditioning system)

📖 Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Control elements	110
adjusting	112
Recirculated air mode	112

The cooling system operates only if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ The cooling system is switched on » page 110.
- ✓ The engine is running.
- ✓ The outside temperature is above approx. +2 °C.
- ✓ The blower switch is switched on (positions 1-4).

Under certain circumstances, air at a temperature of about 5 °C can flow out of the vents when the cooling system is switched on.

If the desired interior temperature can also be achieved without activating the cooling system, fresh air mode should be selected.

The cooling system is switched off at a high coolant temperature in order to provide cooling at a high load of the engine.

! CAUTION

Lengthy and uneven distribution of the air flow out of the vents (especially around the feet) and large differences in temperature, for example, when getting out of the vehicle, can cause susceptible individuals to catch a cold.

i Note

- We recommend that you have the air conditioning system cleaned by a specialist garage once every year.
- During operation of the air conditioning, an increase in engine idle speed may occur under certain circumstances in order to ensure sufficient heating comfort.

Control elements



Fig. 124 The air conditioning system: Control elements

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 110 first.

Functions of the individual controls » Fig. 124 :

- A** Set the temperature (turn to the left to reduce the temperature: turn to the right to increase temperature)
- B** Set the blower stage (stage 0: Blowers, level 4: the highest blower speed)
- C** Set the direction of the air outlet » page 108
- A/C** Switch the cooling system on/off
- Switching the rear window heater on/off » page 73
- Aux. heating on/off » page 116
- Switch recirculation on/off » page 112
- Control the seat heater on the front left seat » page 83
- Control the seat heater on the front right seat » page 83



i Note

The warning light in the symbol button **A/C** lights after activation, even if not all of the conditions for the function of the cooling system are met » [page 110](#). By lighting up of the indicator light in the button, the operational readiness of the cooling system is signalled.

adjusting

Read and observe on page 110 first.

Recommended basic settings of the control elements of the air conditioning system for the respective operating modes:

Settings	Control dial settings » Fig. 124 on page 110			Button » Fig. 124 on page 110		Air outlet vents 2 » Fig. 122 on page 108
				A/C		
Defrost/defog windscreen and side windows ^{a)}	Desired temperature	3 or 4		Automatically switched on	Do not switch on	Open and align with the side window
The fastest heating	To the right up to the stop	3		Switched off	Briefly switch on	Opening
Comfortable heating	Desired temperature	2 or 3		Switched off	Do not switch on	Opening
The fastest cooling	To the left up to the stop	briefly 4, then 2 or 3		Activated	Briefly switch on	Opening
Comfortable cooling	Desired temperature	1, 2 or 3		Activated	Do not switch on	Open and align to the roof
Fresh air mode - ventilation	To the left up to the stop	Desired position		Switched off	Do not switch on	Opening

^{a)} We recommend that you do not use this setting in countries with high humidity levels. This can result in heavy cooling of the window glass and the following fogging from outside.

We recommend that you leave the air outlet vents 3 » Fig. 122 on page 108 in the opened position.

Recirculated air mode

Read and observe on page 110 first.

Recirculated air mode prevents polluted air outside the vehicle from getting into the vehicle, for example when driving through a tunnel or when standing in a traffic jam.

Switching on/off

➤ Press the button.

The indicator light in the button lights up.

➤ Press the button again.

The indicator light in the button goes out.

Recirculated air mode is switched off automatically if the air distribution control » Fig. 124 on page 110 is turned to the position.

Recirculated air mode can be switched on again from this setting by repeatedly pressing the symbol button .

WARNING

Do not leave recirculated air mode on over a longer period of time, as "stale" air can cause fatigue of the driver and passengers, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases. Switch off recirculated air mode as soon as the windows start to mist up.

Climatronic (automatic air conditioning system)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Control elements	113
automatic mode	114
Switching the cooling system on/off	114
Setting the temperature	114
Recirculation mode - Version 1	115
Recirculation mode - Version 2	115
Controlling blower	116
Defrosting windscreen	116

The Climatronic in **automatic mode** ensures the best-possible setting of the temperature of the outflowing air, the blower stage and air distribution.

The system also takes sunlight into account, which eliminates the need to alter the settings manually.

The cooling system operates only if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ The cooling system is switched on » [page 110](#).
- ✓ The engine is running.
- ✓ The outside temperature is above approx. +2 °C.

The cooling system is switched off at a high coolant temperature in order to provide cooling at a high load of the engine.

Aeration of the vehicle when ignition is switched off

On models fitted with power sliding/tilting roof with solar cells, the fresh air blower is automatically switched over to "solar mode" if the sun ray's are sufficient after switching off the ignition. The solar cells on the sliding/tilting roof deliver power for the fresh air blower. This supplies the interior of the car with fresh air.

For an optimum ventilation, the air outlet vents **2** and **3** must be opened » [Fig. 122 on page 108](#).

The ventilation functions only when the sliding/tilting roof is fully closed.

Note

- We recommend that you have Climatronic cleaned by a specialist garage once every year.
- During operation of the Climatronic, an increase in engine idle speed can occur under certain circumstances in order to ensure adequate heating comfort.
- On vehicles equipped with a factory-fitted radio or radio navigation system, the Climatronic information is also shown on their displays. This function can be switched off, see » [operating instructions for the radio or navigation system](#).

Control elements

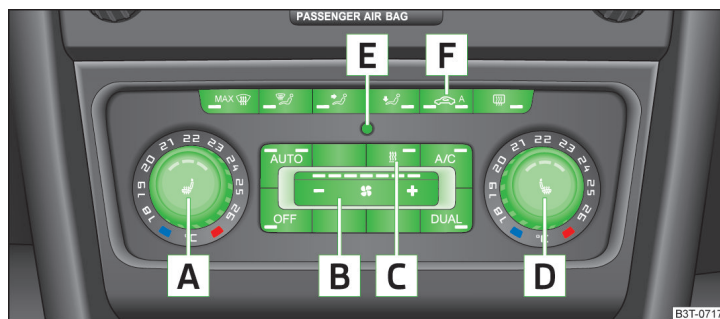




Fig. 125 Climatronic: Control elements

Functions of the individual controls » [Fig. 125](#) :


- A** Adjust the temperature for the left side » [page 114](#)
- B** Adjust the blower speed » [page 116](#)
- C** depending on equipment:
 - Aux. heating on/off » [page 117](#)
 - Switching the windscreen heater on/off » [page 73](#)
- D** Adjust the temperature for the right side » [page 114](#)
- E** Interior temperature sensor
- F** depending on equipment:
 - Recirculation mode **with** air quality sensor on/off » [page 115](#), *Recirculation mode - Version 1*
 - Recirculation mode **without** air quality sensor on/off » [page 115](#), *Recirculation mode - Version 2*

MAX  Switch the intensive windscreen heater on/off

 Air flow to the windows

 Air flow to the upper body

 Air flow in the footwell

 Switching the rear window heater on/off » [page 73](#)


 Control the seat heater on the front left seat » [page 83](#)

AUTO Switching automatic mode on » [page 114](#)

OFF Switching Climatronic system off

A/C Switch the cooling system on/off » [page 114](#)

DUAL Switch the temperature setting in Dual mode on/off » [page 114](#)

 Control the seat heater on the front right seat » [page 83](#)

i Note

Do not stick anything on or cover the interior temperature sensor **[E]**, otherwise it could have an unfavourable effect on the Climatronic.

automatic mode

The automatic mode is used in order to maintain a constant temperature and to demist the windows in the interior of the car.

Recommended setting for all periods of the year

► Set the required temperature between +18 °C and +26 °C: we recommend 22 °C.

► Press the **AUTO** » [Fig. 125 on page 113](#) button.

► Set the air outlet vents **2** and **3** » [Fig. 122 on page 108](#) so that the air flow is directed slightly upwards.

After pressing, an indicator light in the top right or left corner of the button **AUTO** lights up, depending on which mode was last selected.

If the warning light in the top right corner of the button **AUTO** lights up, the Climatronic operates in "HIGH"-mode.

The "HIGH" mode is the standard setting of the Climatronic.

When pressing **AUTO** the button again, the Climatronic switches to "LOW"-mode and the indicator light in the top left corner lights up. The Climatronic uses only in this mode the lower blower speed. However taking into account the noise level, this is more comfortable, yet be aware that the effectiveness of the air conditioning system is reduced particularly if the vehicle is fully occupied.

By pressing the button **AUTO** again, it is changed to "HIGH"-mode.

Automatic mode can be **switched off** by pressing one of the buttons for the air distribution or by increasing/decreasing the blower speed.

Switching the cooling system on/off

► Press the button **A/C**.

The indicator light in the button lights up.

► Press button **A/C** once more.

The indicator light in the button goes out.

After the cooling system is switched off, only the ventilation and heating function remains active whereby the minimum temperature that can be reached is the outside temperature.

Setting the temperature

The interior temperature for the left and right side can be set separately or together.

For both sides

► Turn the control dial **[A]** » [Fig. 125 on page 113](#) to the left or right to increase or decrease the temperature.

The indicator light in the button **DUAL** lights up.

For the right side

► Turn the control dial **[D]** » [Fig. 125 on page 113](#) to the left or right to increase or decrease the temperature.

The indicator light in the button **DUAL** lights up.

If the warning light in the symbol button **DUAL** is lit, the temperature for both sides cannot be set with the control dial **[A]**. This function can be restored by pressing the symbol button **DUAL**. The indicator light in the button goes out.

The interior temperature can be set between +18 °C and +26 °C. The interior temperature is regulated automatically within this range.

If a temperature lower than +18 °C is selected, a blue symbol lights up at the start of the numerical scale.

If a temperature higher than +26 °C is selected, a red symbol lights up at the start of the numerical scale.

At both end positions, Climatronic functions at maximum cooling/heating output and the temperature is not regulated. ►

! CAUTION

Lengthy and uneven distribution of the air flow out of the vents (especially around the feet) and large differences in temperature, for example, when getting out of the vehicle, can cause susceptible individuals to catch a cold.

Recirculation mode - Version 1

Recirculated air mode prevents polluted air outside the vehicle from getting into the vehicle, for example when driving through a tunnel or when standing in a traffic jam.


If a considerable increase in concentration of pollutants is recognised by the air quality sensor, recirculated air mode will temporarily be switched off.

If the concentration of pollutants decreases to the normal level, the air distribution control is automatically switched off so that fresh air can be guided into the vehicle interior.


In recirculated air mode air is sucked out of the interior of the vehicle and then fed back into the interior.

When the automatic air distribution control is switched on, an air quality sensor measures the concentration of pollutants in the drawn in air.

Switching recirculated air mode on

➤ Repeatedly press the button  until the indicator light on the **left** side of the button is illuminated.

Switch on automatic air distribution control

➤ Repeatedly press the button  until the warning light on the **right-hand** side of the button lights up.


Switch off automatic air distribution control temporarily

If the air quality sensor does not switch on automatic recirculated air mode when there is an unpleasant smell, you can switch it on manually.

➤ Press the symbol button .

The indicator light lights up in the button on the left side.


Switching recirculated air mode off

➤ Press the button **AUTO** or press the symbol button  again until the warning lights in the button go out.

! WARNING

Do not leave recirculated air mode on over a longer period of time, as "stale" air can cause fatigue of the driver and passengers, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases. Switch off recirculated air mode as soon as the windows start to mist up.

i Note

- If the windscreen mists up, press the symbol button **MAX** . Press the button **AUTO** once the windscreen has demisted.
- The automatic air distribution control operates only if the outside temperature is higher than approx. 2 °C.

Recirculation mode - Version 2

Recirculated air mode prevents polluted air outside the vehicle from getting into the vehicle, for example when driving through a tunnel or when standing in a traffic jam.

In recirculated air mode air is sucked out of the interior of the vehicle and then fed back into the interior.

The air recirculation mode is automatically activated after the ignition is switched if it was on before the ignition was turned off. The indicator light in the button lights up.

Switch off / on

➤ Press the  button.

The indicator light in the button goes out.


➤ Press the  button again.

The indicator light in the button lights up.

! WARNING

Do not leave recirculated air mode on over a longer period of time, as "stale" air can cause fatigue of the driver and passengers, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases. Switch off recirculated air mode as soon as the windows start to mist up.

i Note

If the windscreen mists up, press the symbol button **MAX** . Press the button **AUTO** once the windscreen has demisted.


Controlling blower

The Climatronic system controls the blower stages automatically in line with the interior temperature.

However, the blower stages can be manually adapted to suit your particular needs.

- Repeatedly pressing the symbol button  on the left or right reduces or increases blower speed.

If the blower is switched off, the Climatronic system is switched off.

The set blower speed is displayed above the symbol button  when the respective number of indicator lights come on.

! WARNING



- "Stale air" may result in fatigue in the driver and occupants, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases.
- Do not switch off the Climatronic system for longer than necessary.
- Switch on the Climatronic system as soon as the windows mist up.

Defrosting windscreen

Switching on

- Press the **MAX**  button » Fig. 125 on page 113.
- Press the  button » Fig. 125 on page 113.

Switching off

- Press the symbol button **MAX**  again or press the symbol button **AUTO**.
- Press the symbol button  again.

More air flows out of the air outlet vents **1** » Fig. 122 on page 108. The temperature control is controlled automatically.


Auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Switching on/off _____	117
Radio remote control _____	118

Conditions for the functioning of auxiliary heating (Aux. heating and ventilation), hereinafter referred to only as auxiliary heating (Aux. heating).

- ✓ The charge state of the vehicle battery is sufficient.
- ✓ The fuel supply is adequate (the warning icon  is not lit in the display of the instrument cluster).

Auxiliary ventilation

The auxiliary ventilation enables fresh air to flow into the vehicle interior by switching off the engine, whereby the interior temperature is effectively decreased (e.g. with the vehicle parked in the sun).

Auxiliary heating (aux. heating)

The auxiliary heating (aux. heating) can be used when stationary, when the engine is switched off to preheat the vehicle and while driving (e.g. during the heating phase of the engine).

The auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating) functions in connection with the air-conditioning system or Climatronic.

The auxiliary heating (aux. heating) also warms up the engine. This is not valid for vehicles with the 3.6 l/191 kW FSI engine.

The auxiliary heating (parking heating) warms up the coolant by combusting fuel from the vehicle tank. The coolant heats air flowing into the passenger compartment (as long as the blower fan speed **B** » Fig. 124 on page 110 or » Fig. 125 on page 113 is not set to zero).



! WARNING

- The auxiliary heating (aux. heating) must never be operated in closed rooms (e.g. garages) – risk of poisoning!
- The auxiliary heating (aux. heating) must not be allowed to run during re-fuelling – risk of fire.
- The exhaust pipe of the auxiliary heating (aux. heating) is located on the underside of the vehicle. Therefore, if you wish to operate the auxiliary heating (aux. heating), do not park the vehicle in such a way that the exhaust gases can come into contact with highly flammable materials (e.g. dry grass) or easily inflammable substances (e.g. spilt fuel) – risk of fire.

! CAUTION

- Running auxiliary heating (aux. heating) consumes fuel from the vehicle tank and automatically controls the filling level. If only a low quantity of fuel is present in the fuel tank, the auxiliary heating (aux. heating) switches off.
- The exhaust pipe of the auxiliary heating (aux. heating), which is located on the underside of the vehicle, must not be clogged and the exhaust flow must not be blocked.
- If the auxiliary heating (aux. heating) is running, the vehicle battery discharges. If the auxiliary heating and ventilation has been operated several times over a longer period, the vehicle must be driven a few kilometres in order to recharge the vehicle battery.

i Note

- The auxiliary heating (aux. heating) switches on the blower **B** » Fig. 124 on page 110 or » Fig. 125 on page 113 only if it has achieved a coolant temperature of approx. 50 °C.
- At low outside temperatures, this can result in a formation of water vapour in the area of the engine compartment. This is quite normal and is not an operating problem.
- The air inlet in front of the windscreen must be free (e.g. of ice, snow or leaves) to ensure that the auxiliary heating (aux. heating) operates properly.
- So that warm air can flow into the vehicle interior after switching on the auxiliary heating, you must maintain the comfort temperature normally selected by you, leave the fan switched on and leave the air outlet vents in an open position. It is recommended to put the air flow in the position  or .

Switching on/off

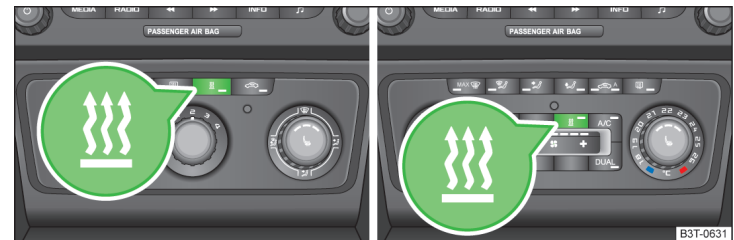


Fig. 126 Button for switching on/off the system directly on the operating part of the air conditioning/Climatronic

 Read and observe  and  on page 117 first.

The auxiliary heating (aux. heating) can be switched on/off as follows.

Manually switching on

- ⌘ using the button on the operating part of the manual air conditioning/Climatronic. The warning light in the button lights up » Fig. 126;
- ON by using the radio remote control » page 118.

Manually switching off

- ⌘ using the button on the operating part of the manual air conditioning/Climatronic. The warning light in the button goes out » Fig. 126;
- OFF by using the radio remote control » page 118.

After switching off the auxiliary heating, the coolant pump runs for a short period.

Automatic switching on/off

The following menu items can be selected from the **Aux. heating** menu item in the information display » page 44 (depending on the vehicle equipment):

- **Day of the week** - set the current day of the week;
- **Running time** - Set the required running time in 5 minute increments. The running time can be 10 to 60 minutes.
- **Mode** - Set the desired heating/ventilation mode;

- **Starting time 1, Starting time 2, Starting time 3** - for each pre-set time, the day and the time (hour and minute) can be set for switching on the auxiliary heating and ventilation. An empty position can be found between Sunday and Monday when selecting the day. If this empty position is selected, the activation is performed without taking into account the day.
- **Activate** - Activate pre-set mode;
- **Deactivate** - Deactivate pre-set mode;
- **Factory setting** - Restore factory setting;
- **Back** - Return to main menu

Only one programmed pre-set time can be active.

The last programmed pre-set time remains active.

After the auxiliary heating (aux. heating) automatically activates at the set time, it is necessary to pre-set a time again.

If the menu item **Back** is selected or no changes are made on the display for longer than 10 seconds, the set values are stored, but the pre-set time is not activated.

The system switches itself off at the end of the running time set under the menu item **Running time**.

i Note

An indicator light on the button  » Fig. 126 is illuminated when the system is running.

Radio remote control

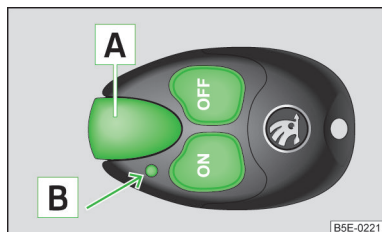






Fig. 127
Auxiliary heating (aux. heating):
Radio remote control

B5E-0221


 **Read and observe**  and  on page 117 first.

Image description » Fig. 127

-  Aerial
-  Warning light
-  Switch on aux. heating
-  Switch off aux. heating


The transmitter and the battery are housed in the housing of the remote control. The receiver is located in the interior of the vehicle.


When the battery is fully charged, the range of the remote control is a few hundred metres. Obstacles between the remote control and the vehicle, bad weather conditions and a weaker battery in the remote control can clearly reduce the range.

To switch the auxiliary heating (aux. heating) on or off, hold the remote control vertical, with the aerial  pointing upwards. The antenna must not be covered with the fingers or the palm of the hand during this process.

The auxiliary heating can only be switched on/off safely using the radio remote control, if the distance between the radio remote control and the vehicle is at least 2 m.

After pressing the button, the warning light in the remote control gives the user different kinds of feedback:

Display warning light  » Fig. 127	Importance
Lights up green for around 2 seconds.	The auxiliary heating was switched on.
Lights up red for around 2 seconds.	The auxiliary heating (aux. heating) is switched off.
Slowly flashes green for around 2 seconds.	The ignition signal was not received.
Quickly flashes green for around 2 seconds.	The auxiliary heating (aux. heating) is blocked, e. g. because the tank is nearly empty or there is a fault in the auxiliary heating (aux. heating).
Flashes red for around 2 seconds.	The switch off signal was not received.
Lights up orange for around 2 seconds, then green or red.	The battery is weak, however the switching on or off signal was received.

Display warning light  » Fig. 127	Importance
Lights up orange for around 2 seconds, then flashes green or red.	The battery is weak, however the switching on or off signal was not received.
Flashes orange for around 5 seconds.	The battery is discharged, however the switching on or off signal was not received.

Replace the battery » page 211.

CAUTION

The radio remote control comprises electronic components and must therefore be protected against water, severe impacts and direct sunlight.

Communication and multimedia

General information

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Mobile phones and two-way radio systems	119
Universal telephone preinstallation (hands free)	120
Operating the phone on the multifunction steering wheel	120
Symbols in the MAXI DOT display	121
Phone Phonebook	121

Mobile phones and two-way radio systems

ŠKODA permits the operation of mobile phones and two-way radio systems with a professionally installed external aerial and a maximum transmission power of up to 10 watts.

Please ask at a specialist workshop about installing and operating mobile phones and two-way radio systems that have a transmission power of more than 10 W.

Operating mobile phones or two-way radio systems may interfere with the functionality of the electronic systems in your vehicle.

This could be for the following reasons.

- no external aerial.
- external aerial incorrectly installed.
- transmission power greater than 10 watts.

WARNING

- If a mobile phone or a two-way radio system is operated in a vehicle without an external aerial or an external aerial which has been installed incorrectly, this can increase the strength of the electromagnetic field inside the vehicle.
- Two-way radio systems, mobile phones or mounts must not be installed on airbag covers or within the immediate deployment range of the airbags.

! WARNING (Continued)

- Never leave a mobile phone on a seat, on the dash panel or in any area from where it becomes a projectile during a sudden braking manoeuvre, an accident or a collision — risk of injury.
- Before transport of the vehicle by air, the Bluetooth® function must be switched off by a specialist company.

Universal telephone preinstallation (hands free)

The universal telephone preinstallation ("hands-free system") includes a convenience mode for the mobile phone via voice control, the multifunction steering wheel, the radio or navigation system.

! WARNING

- Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver, you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.
- Only use the device in such a way that you are in full control of your vehicle in every traffic situation – there is the risk of accidents!
- The national regulations for using a mobile phone in a vehicle must be observed.

Operating the phone on the multifunction steering wheel

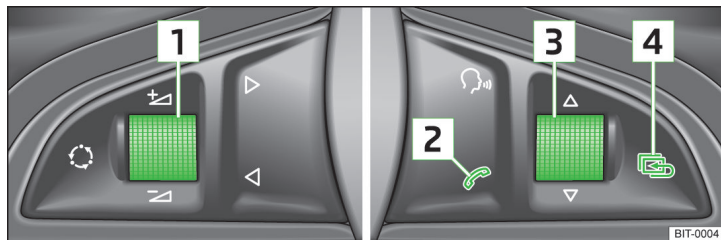


Fig. 128 Multifunction steering wheel: Control buttons for the telephone

i Note


- We recommend that the installation of mobile phones and two-way radio systems in a vehicle be carried out by a specialist firm.
- Not all mobile phones that enable Bluetooth® communication are compatible with the universal telephone preinstallation GSM II or GSM III. Ask a ŠKODA Partner whether your phone is compatible with the universal telephone preparation GSM II or GSM III.
- The range of the Bluetooth® connection to the hands-free system is restricted to the vehicle interior. The range is dependent on local factors, e.g. obstacles between the devices and mutual interferences with other devices. If your mobile phone is in a jacket pocket, for example, this can lead to difficulties when establishing a connection with the hands-free-system or transferring data.

There are buttons in the steering wheel for easy operation of the basic functions of the phone » Fig. 128 so that the driver is distracted from the traffic as little as possible when using the phone.










This applies only if your vehicle has been equipped with the universal telephone preinstallation at the factory.

The buttons operate the functions for the operating mode of the current telephone.

If the side lights are switched on, the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel are illuminated.

Button/ wheel » Fig. 128	Action	Operation
1	Press briefly	MUTE 
1	Turn upwards	Increase the volume
1	Turn downwards	Decrease volume
2	Press briefly	Accept a call/end a call Display of the basic Phone menu → Main Phone menu → List of dialled numbers → Call selected contact
2	Press and hold button	Reject the incoming call
3	Turn up/down	Previous / next menu item
3	Press briefly	Confirm selected menu item
3	Press and hold button	Continuously display first letter of the phone book
3	Quickly turn upwards	To the previous initial letter in the telephone book
3	Quickly turn downwards	To the next initial letter in the telephone book
4	Press briefly	Return to a previous level on menu
4	Press and hold button	Exit telephone menu

Symbols in the MAXI DOT display

Symbol	Importance	Valid for
	Charge status of the telephone battery ^{a)}	GSM II, GSM III
	Signal strength ^{a)}	GSM II, GSM III
	A phone is connected with the hands-free system.	GSM II, GSM III when connected via the HFP profile
	The hands-free system is visible to other devices	GSM II, GSM III when connected via the HFP profile
	A phone is connected with the hands-free system.	GSM III when connected via the rSAP profile
	The hands-free system is visible to other devices	GSM III when connected via the rSAP profile
	A multimedia unit is connected to the hands-free system	GSM II, GSM III
	A UMTS network is available	GSM III
	Internet connection via the hands-free system	GSM III when connected via the rSAP profile

^{a)} This function is only supported by some mobile phones.

Phone Phonebook

A phone phonebook is part of the hands-free system. This phone phonebook can be used depending on the type of mobile phone.

After the telephone's first connection to the hands-free system, the phone book from the phone and the SIM card loads into the hands-free memory. ▶

Each time the telephone has established a new connection with the hands-free system, an update of the relevant phone book is performed. The updating can take a few minutes. During this period, the available phone book is the one stored at the previous update. Newly stored telephone numbers are only shown after the updating has ended.

The update is interrupted if a telephone event (e.g. incoming or outgoing call, voice control dialogue) occurs during the updating procedure. After the telephone event has ended, the updating starts anew.

GSM II

The internal phonebook provides 2 500 free memory locations. Each contact can contain up to 4 numbers.

On vehicles fitted with the Columbus navigation system, a maximum of 1 200 telephone contacts are shown on the display of this appliance.

If the number of contacts loaded exceeds 2 500, the phone book is not complete.

GSM III

The internal phonebook provides 2 000 free memory locations. Each contact can contain up to 5 numbers.

On vehicles fitted with the Columbus navigation system, a maximum of 1 000 telephone contacts are shown on the display of this appliance.

If the mobile phone's telephone book has more than 2,000 contacts, the following message will appear in the MAXI DOT display:

Phone book not fully loaded

Universal telephone preinstallation GSM II

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Connecting the mobile phone to the hands-free system	122
Telephone operation in the MAXI DOT display	123

¹⁾ Depending on the Bluetooth® version on the mobile phone, an automatically generated 6-digit PIN (SSP) is either displayed, or the PIN **1234** has to be entered manually.

²⁾ Some mobile phones have a menu, in which the authorisation for establishing a Bluetooth® connection is completed by inputting a code. If the authorisation input is required, it must always be performed when re-establishing the Bluetooth connection.

The universal telephone preinstallation GSM II comprises the following functions.

- › Phone Phonebook » page 121.
- › Convenience operation of the telephone via the multifunction steering wheel » page 120.
- › Telephone operation in the MAXI DOT display » page 120.
- › Voice control of the telephone » page 129.
- › Music playback from the telephone or other multimedia units » page 131.

All communication between a mobile phone and your vehicle's hands-free system is established with the help of Bluetooth® technology.

Note

The following guidelines must be observed » page 119, *Mobile phones and two-way radio systems*.

Connecting the mobile phone to the hands-free system

To connect a mobile phone with the hands-free system, the two devices must be paired. Detailed information on this is provided in the operating instructions for your mobile phone.

The following steps must be carried out for the connection.

- › Activate Bluetooth® and the visibility of your mobile phone on your telephone.
- › Switch on the ignition.
- › Select the **Phone - New user** menu in the MAXI DOT display and wait until the hands-free system has completed the search.
- › Select the phone you wish to connect from the list of units found.
- › Confirm the PIN¹⁾.
- › If the hands-free system announces (as standard **SKODA_BT**) on the display of the mobile phone, enter the PIN¹⁾ within 30 seconds and wait, until the connection is established²⁾.
- › To finish pairing in the MAXI DOT display, confirm the creation of the new user profile. ▶

If there is no free space available to create a new user profile, delete an existing user profile.

During the connecting procedure, no other mobile phone may be connected with the hands-free system.

Up to four mobile phones can be paired with the hands-free system, whereby only one mobile phone can communicate with the hands-free system.

The visibility of the hands-free system is automatically switched off 3 minutes after the ignition is switched on and is also deactivated when the mobile phone has connected to the hands-free system.

Restoring the visibility of the hands-free system

If you have not managed to connect your mobile phone with the hands-free system within 3 minutes of switching on the ignition, the visibility of the hands-free system can be reestablished for 3 minutes in the following ways.

- › By turning the ignition off and on.
- › By turning voice control off and on.
- › In the MAXI DOT display under menu item **Bluetooth - Visibility**.

Creating a connection with an already paired mobile phone

After switching on the ignition, the connection is automatically established for the already paired mobile phone¹⁾. Check on your mobile phone if the automatic connection has been established.

Disconnecting the connection

- › By withdrawing the ignition key.
- › By disconnecting the hands-free system in the mobile phone.
- › By disconnecting from the user in the MAXI DOT display under the menu item **Bluetooth - User**.

Solving connection problems

If the hands-free system reports **No paired phone found**, check the operating status of the mobile phone.

- › Is the mobile phone switched on?
- › Is the PIN code entered?
- › Is Bluetooth[®] active?

- › Is the visibility of the mobile phone active?
- › Has the mobile phone already been paired with the hands-free system?

Telephone operation in the MAXI DOT display

The following menu items can be selected from the **Phone** menu.

- **Phone book**
- **Dial number**²⁾
- **Call list**
- **Voice mailbox**
- **Bluetooth**²⁾
- **Settings**³⁾
- **Back**

Phone book

The **Phone book** menu item lists the contacts downloaded from the telephone memory and the mobile phone SIM card.

Dial number

Any telephone number can be entered in the **Dial number** menu item. The required digits must be selected one after the other using the adjustment wheel, and then confirmed by pressing the adjustment wheel. You can select digits **0-9**, symbols **+**, *****, **#** and the **Cancel**, **Call** and **Delete** functions.

Call list

The following menu items can be selected in the **Call list** menu item.

- **Missed calls** - List of missed calls
- **Dialled Nos.** - List of dialled numbers
- **Received calls** - list of received calls

Voice mailbox

In the **Voice mailbox** menu item, you can set the number of the voice mailbox²⁾ and then dial the number. ▶

¹⁾ Some mobile phones have a menu, in which the authorisation for establishing a Bluetooth[®] connection is completed by inputting a code. If the authorisation input is required, it must always be performed when re-establishing the Bluetooth connection.

²⁾ On vehicles fitted with the Amundsen+ navigation system, this function can be accessed via the navigation system menu; refer to the » *operating instructions for the Amundsen+ navigation system*.

³⁾ This function is not available in vehicles fitted with the Amundsen+ navigation system.

Bluetooth

The following menu items can be selected from the **Bluetooth** menu item.

- **User** - Overview of the stored telephones
- **New user** - Search for new mobile phones that are in the reception range
- **Visibility** - Switches on the visibility of the hands-free system for other devices
- **Media player** - Playback via Bluetooth®
 - **Active device** - Connected device
 - **Paired Devices** - List of paired devices
 - **Search** - Device search
- **Phone name** - option to change the name of the phone (default SKODA_BT)

Settings

The following menu items can be selected from the **Settings** menu item.

- **Phone book** - Phonebook
 - **Update**¹⁾ - Update the phone book
 - **List** - Arrange the entries in the phone book
 - **Surname** - Arrange according to surname
 - **First name** - Arrange according to first name
- **Ring tone** - Ring tone setting

Back

Return to the telephone's basic menu.

Universal telephone preinstallation GSM III

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Connecting the phone to the hands-free system	124
Telephone operation in the MAXI DOT display	125
Internet connection via Bluetooth®	127

The following functions are included in the universal telephone preinstallation GSM III:

- Phone Phonebook » [page 121](#).
- Convenience operation via the multifunction steering wheel » [page 120](#).
- Telephone operation in the MAXI DOT display » [page 125](#).
- Voice control of the telephone » [page 129](#).

¹⁾ On vehicles fitted with the Amundsen+ navigation system, this function can be accessed via the navigation system menu; refer to the » *operating instructions for the Amundsen+ navigation system*.

- Music playback from the telephone or other multimedia units » [page 131](#).
- Internet connection » [page 127](#).
- Display of SMS messages » [page 126](#).

All communication between a telephone and the hands-free system of your vehicle can only be established with the help of the following profiles of Bluetooth® technology.

rSAP - Remote SIM access profile

After connecting the telephone with the hands-free system via the rSAP profile, the telephone deregisters from the GSM network, and communication with the network is only enabled by the hands-free system via the vehicle's external aerial. In the telephone only the interface for Bluetooth® remains active. In this case, you can only use the mobile phone to disconnect from the hands-free system, deactivate the Bluetooth® connection or dial the emergency number 112 (only valid in some countries).

HFP - Hands Free Profile

After connecting the telephone with the hands-free system via the HFP profile, the telephone continues to use its GSM module and the internal antenna to communicate with the GSM network.

Note

The following guidelines must be observed » [page 119](#), *Mobile phones and two-way radio systems*.

Connecting the phone to the hands-free system

To connect a mobile phone with the hands-free system, it is necessary to interconnect the telephone and hands-free system. Detailed information on this is provided in the operating instructions for your mobile phone. The following steps must be carried out for the connection.

Connecting the telephone with the hands-free system via the rSAP profile

- Activate Bluetooth® and the visibility of your mobile phone on your telephone. For certain mobile phones it is necessary to switch on first the rSAP function.
- Switch on the ignition.
- Select the **Phone - New user** menu in the MAXI DOT display and wait until the hands-free system has completed the search. ▶

- Select the phone you wish to connect from the list of units found.
- Confirm the PIN¹⁾.
- If your SIM card is blocked by a PIN code, enter the PIN code for the SIM card in your phone. The telephone connects to the hands-free system (during the first connection you can only enter the PIN code in the MAXI DOT display when the vehicle is stationary, as this is the only situation when you can choose whether the PIN code should be stored).
- To save a new user, follow the instructions in the Maxi DOT display.
- Reconfirm the **rSAP** command on your mobile phone to download the telephone book and the identification data from the SIM card into the hands-free system.

Connecting the telephone with the hands-free system via the HPP profile

- Activate Bluetooth® and the visibility of your mobile phone on your telephone.
- Switch on the ignition.
- Select the **Phone - New user** menu in the MAXI DOT display and wait until the hands-free system has completed the search.
- Select the phone you wish to connect from the list of units found.
- Confirm the PIN¹⁾.
- Follow the instructions on the MAXI DOT display and the mobile phone to store a new user or to download the telephone book and identification data from the SIM card into the hands-free system.

The telephone primarily connects via the **rSAP** profile.

If the PIN code was stored, the telephone is automatically detected and connected with the hands-free system the next time the ignition is switched on. Check your mobile phone to see whether this automatic connection has been established.

Disconnecting the connection

- By removing the key from the ignition lock (the connection is disconnected during a telephone call).
- By disconnecting the hands-free system in the mobile phone.
- Select the user by disconnecting the user in the Maxi DOT display in the **Bluetooth - User** menu option - **Disconnect**.

¹⁾ Depending on the Bluetooth® version on the mobile phone, an automatically generated 6-digit PIN (SSP) will either be displayed, or a 16-digit code displayed in the MAXI DOT display will need to be entered into your mobile phone and confirmed within 30 seconds by following the instructions on your mobile phone display.

²⁾ Does not apply for Radio Swing.

On vehicles which are fitted with a radio or navigation system at the factory, it is possible to terminate the telephone call after removing the key from the ignition lock by pressing the button on the touch screen of the radio²⁾ or navigation system; refer to the » *Operating instructions for the radio or navigation system*.

i Note

- In the memory of the hands-free system, up to three users can be stored, whereby the hands-free system can only communicate actively with one user. If a connection is established with a fourth mobile phone, one of the users must be deleted.
- When connecting to the hands-free system, follow the instructions on your mobile phone.

Telephone operation in the MAXI DOT display

If no phone is connected to the hands-free system, the message **No paired phone found** appears along with the following menu items when the **Mobile phone** menu is selected.

- **Help** - This menu item appears when no paired phone is stored in the memory of the hands-free system.
- **Connect** - This menu item appears when one or more paired phones are stored in the memory of the hands-free system.
- **New user** - New phone
- **Media player** - Media player
 - **Active device** - Connected device
 - **Paired devices** - List of paired devices
 - **Search** - Device search
 - **Visibility** - Visibility on/off
- **SOS** - Emergency call

If a telephone is paired with the hands-free system, the following menu items can be selected in the **Mobile phone** menu.

Phone book

The **Phone book** menu item lists the contacts downloaded from the telephone memory and the mobile phone SIM card. ▶

The following functions are available for each phone contact.

- Display telephone number
- **Voice tag** - Voice tag for the contact
 - **Replay** - Play a voice tag
 - **Record** - Record a voice contact

Dial number

Any telephone number can be entered in the **Dial number** menu item. The required digits must be selected one after the other using the adjustment wheel, and then confirmed by pressing the adjustment wheel. You can select digits **0-9**, symbols **+**, *****, **#** and the **Delete**, **Call** and **Back** functions.

Call list

The following menu items can be selected in the **Call list** menu item.

- **Missed calls** - List of missed calls
- **Received calls** - list of received calls
- **Calls dialled** - dialled calls
- **Delete lists** - Delete call registers

Voice mailbox

In the **Voice mailbox** menu item, you can set or save the number of the voice mailbox and then dial the number. The required digits must be selected one after the other using the adjustment wheel, and then confirmed by pressing the adjustment wheel. You can select digits **0-9**, symbols **+**, *****, **#** and the **Delete**, **Call**, **Save** and **Back** functions.

SMS¹⁾

A list of received text messages is displayed in the **SMS** menu item. After calling a message, the following functions appear.

- **Show** - Display text message
- **Read** - The system reads out the selected text message through the vehicle's speakers
- **Send time** - Display message send time
- **Callback** - Dial the phone number of the sender of the text message
- **Copy** - Copy the received text message to the SIM card
- **Delete** - Delete the message

¹⁾ Only applies when connecting the telephone to the hands-free system via the rSAP profile.

Bluetooth

The following menu items can be selected from the **Bluetooth** menu item.

- **User** - Overview of the stored telephones
 - **Connect** - Connection with the telephone
 - **Disconnect** - Disconnection of telephone
 - **Rename** - Rename the telephone
 - **Delete** - Delete the telephone
- **New user** - Search for new mobile phones that are in the reception range
- **Visibility** - Switches on the visibility of the hands-free system for other devices
- **Media player** - Media player
 - **Active device** - Connected device
 - **Paired devices** - List of paired devices
 - **Connect** - Connection with the device
 - **Rename** - Rename the device
 - **Delete** - Delete the device
 - **Authorisation** - Authorise the device
 - **Search** - Search for available media players
 - **Visibility** - Switch on the visibility of the hands-free system for media players in the vicinity
- **Modem** - overview of the active and paired devices for the connection to the internet
 - **Active device** - Connected device
 - **Paired devices** - List of paired devices
- **Phone name** - option to change the name of the phone (default SKODA_BT)

WLAN

Wi-Fi menu item » [page 128](#), *Use WLAN network in MAXI DOT display.*

Settings

The following menu items can be selected from the **Settings** menu item.

- **Phone book** - Phonebook
 - **Update** - Read in the phone book
 - **Select memory** - Select memory with phone contacts
 - **SIM & phone** - Download the contacts of the SIM card and the phone
 - **SIM card** - Download the contacts from the SIM card
 - **Mobile phone** - Initial setting to also import contacts from the SIM card; it is necessary to switch to the **SIM & phone** menu item ▶

- **List** - Arrange the entries in the phone book
 - **Surname** - Arrange according to surname
 - **First name** - Arrange according to first name
- **Own number** - Optionally display your own telephone number on the display of the device of the person you are calling (this function is network-dependent)
 - **Network depnd.** - Network-dependent own number display
 - **Yes** - Allow display of your own number
 - **No** - Prohibit display of your own number
- **Signal settings** - Signal settings
 - **Ring tone** - Ring tone setting
 - **Volume** - Signal volume settings
 - **Turn vol. up** - Increase volume
 - **Turn vol. down** - Decrease volume
- **Phone settings** - Phone settings
 - **Select operator** - Select operator
 - **Automatic** - Automatic operator selection
 - **Manual** - Manual operator selection
 - **Network mode** - Network mode
 - **UMTS** - UMTS
 - **GSM** - GSM
 - **Automatic** - automatic
 - **SIM mode** - Applies to telephones with the rSAP profile that simultaneously support the operation of two SIM cards - there is an option to choose which SIM card to connect to the hands-free system
 - **SIM mode 1** - SIM 1 is connected to the hands-free system
 - **SIM mode 2** - SIM 2 is connected to the hands-free system
 - **Phone mode** - Toggle between rSAP and HFP mode
 - **Premium** - rSAP mode
 - **Handsfree** - HFP mode
 - **Off time** - Set the off time in increments of 5 min
- **Access point** - Set the Internet access point
 - **APN** - Change the access point name
 - **User name** - User Name
 - **Password** - Password
- **Switch off ph.** - Switch off the hands-free system (the mobile phone remains paired)

Back

Return to the main menu in the MAXI DOT display.

Internet connection via Bluetooth®

A notebook can, for example, be connected to the Internet via the hands-free system.

The control unit of the hands-free system supports the GPRS, EDGE and UMTS/3G technologies.

An Internet can only be established via a telephone which is connected via the rSAP profile.

The procedure for connecting to the Internet can vary depending on the type and version of the operating system as well as the type of the device to be connected. Successfully connecting to the internet requires appropriate knowledge of the operating system for connecting the device .

Process of connection

- Connect the mobile phone with the hands-free system.
- Set the access point in the **Mobile phone - Settings - Access point** menu (depending on the operator, usually "Internet").
- Switch on the visibility of the hands-free system for other devices in the **Mobile phone - Bluetooth - Visibility** menu.
- Use the device that is to be connected to search for available Bluetooth® devices.
- Select the hands-free system (as standard "SKODA_BT") from the list of found devices.
- Enter the password on the device being connected and follow any instructions given on this device or in the MAXI DOT display.
- Enter the desired Internet address in the Internet browser. The operating system requests the entry of the telephone number for the internet access (depending on the operator, usually "*99#").

WLAN

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Switching Wi-Fi network on/off _____	128
Connecting an external device to the WLAN network _____	128
Use WLAN network in MAXI DOT display _____	128

Wi-Fi is a wireless network for connecting to the Internet. ▶

Using a mobile phone connected with the universal telephone preparation GSM III via the rSAP profile, it is possible to establish a Wi-Fi network in the vehicle and to enable passengers with compatible devices to connect to this network.

Switching Wi-Fi network on/off

Switching on

- Connect the mobile phone with the universal telephone preparation GSM III via the rSAP profile » [page 124](#).
- Select the **Wi-Fi** menu item in the **Mobile phone** menu.

The display shows the message *Switch on WLAN?*

- Select the **Yes** menu item.

If no access point¹⁾ is assigned automatically, then this must be entered manually as per the instructions from the mobile network operator, e.g. "Internet".

If the Wi-Fi network is switched on, the display will show the following message, for example: **WLAN SK_WLAN 1234 switched on**.

The display then shows a password for the Wi-Fi network connection. The password can subsequently be found in the **Mobile phone - Wi-Fi - Password - Show** menu.

If no data connection via WLAN is available, the display will show the message **Data connection not available..** This can be caused by a weak GSM signal, for example. Try to establish the connection again at a location with stronger signal reception.

Switching off

- Select the **Wi-Fi - Off** menu item in the **Mobile phone** menu.

The display shows the message *Switch off WLAN ?*

- Select the **OK** menu item.

The display shows the message *WLAN switched off*.

Connecting an external device to the WLAN network

Connecting using the Wi-Fi network search

- Switch on the Wi-Fi network » [page 128](#), *Switching Wi-Fi network on/off*.

- On the device to be connected, search for available Wi-Fi networks (Wi-Fi) - see operating instructions for the device to be connected.
- Select the appropriate Wi-Fi network connection in the menu of the networks found (e.g. **Wi-Fi SK_WLAN 1234**).

If menu item **WPA2** is set in the **Mobile phone - Wi-Fi - Settings - Encryption** menu, then the password displayed when the Wi-Fi is switched on must be entered in the device to be connected. The password can be found in the **Mobile phone - Wi-Fi - Password - Show** menu.

If menu item **Open** is set in the **Mobile phone - Wi-Fi - Settings - Encryption** menu, the connection is made automatically.

Connecting using WPS (service for easy connection)

- Switch on the Wi-Fi network » [page 128](#), *Switching Wi-Fi network on/off*.
- Open the **Mobile phone - Wi-Fi - WPS config**. menu in the instrument cluster.
- In the device to be connected, select the connection using WPS function - see operating instructions for the device to be connected.

If the **Pushbutton** menu item is selected in the instrument cluster, the Wi-Fi connection is made automatically.

If the **WPS PIN** menu item is selected in the instrument cluster, then a PIN must be entered in the device to be connected and the instrument cluster.

Use WLAN network in MAXI DOT display

When a Wi-Fi network is switched on, the following menu items are displayed when the **Wi-Fi** menu item is selected.

- **Off** - Switch off the WLAN network (depending on the context)
- **Device list** - Display a list of external devices
 - **Active device** - Display a list of active devices
 - **Block** - Block device connections
 - **Known devices** - Display a list of known devices
 - **Rename** - Rename the device
 - **Block** - Block device connections
 - **Device blocked** - Display a list of blocked devices
 - **Unblock** - Remove the connection block

¹⁾ The name of the access point is defined by the mobile operator.

- **Delete lists** - Delete device lists
 - **Known devices** - Delete the list of known devices
 - **Device blocked** - Delete the list of blocked devices
 - **Both lists** - Delete both device lists
- **Password** - Use of password to log on to the WLAN network
 - **Show** - Display a password to log on to the WLAN network
 - **Generate** - Generate a new password to log on to the WLAN network
- **WLAN name** - Use of WLAN network name
 - **Show** - Display the WLAN network name
 - **Rename** - Rename the WLAN network
- **WPS config.** - Wi-Fi network connection using WPS
 - **Pushbutton** - Automatic connection
 - **WPS PIN** - PIN entry for the connection
- **Data counter** - Display information about the volume of data transferred
 - **Act Conn.** - display of the volume of data transferred for the current connection
 - **Total** - Display the total volume of data transferred
 - **Reset** - Reset the information about the volume of data transferred
- **Settings** - WLAN network settings
 - **Access point** - Access point settings
 - **Settings** - Access point management
 - **APN** - Change the access point name
 - **User name** - User Name
 - **Password** - Password
 - **Reset** - Reset access point factory settings
 - **Prioritisation** - Set the connection priority
 - **Calls** - Set the connection priority for calls
 - **Data** - Set the connection priority for data transfer
 - **Encryption** - Set the encryption
 - **WPA2** - Enable WPA 2 encryption
 - **Open** - No encryption
 - **Visibility** - Set the WLAN network visibility
 - **Visible** - WLAN network is visible to other devices
 - **Invisible** - WLAN network is not visible to other devices
 - **Data roaming** - Set the data roaming
 - **No roaming** - Data roaming is not allowed
 - **Allow** - Data roaming is allowed
 - **Always ask** - Question setting for data roaming

- **WLAN channel** - Select WLAN network channels (preferably set to channel 11)
 - **Channel 1 ... Channel 11** - Display the WLAN network channels
- **Reset** - Reset Wi-Fi network factory settings

Voice control

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Dialogue	129
Voice commands - GSM II	130
Voice commands - GSM III	131

Dialogue

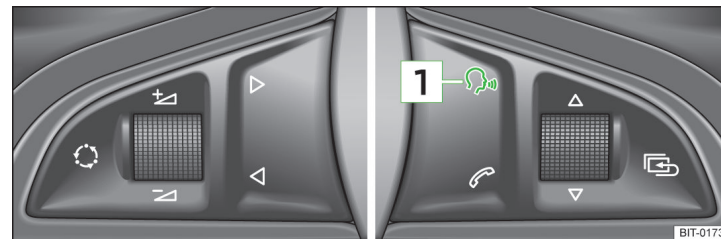


Fig. 129 Multifunction steering wheel

The voice control system (hereinafter referred to as the system) makes it possible to use voice commands for some functions of the hands-free system.

The period of time during which the system is ready to receive voice commands and to carry them out is called a dialogue. The system gives audible feedback and guides you if necessary through the relevant functions.

Optimum understanding of the voice commands depends on several factors.

- Speak with a normal tone of voice without intonation and excessive pauses.
- Avoid a bad pronunciation.
- Close the doors, windows and sliding roof, to reduce or stop disturbing exterior noise.
- You are recommended to speak louder at higher speeds, so that the sound of your voice is not drowned out by the increased ambient noise.

- During the dialogue, limit additional noise in the vehicle, e.g. passengers talking at the same time.
- Do not speak, if the system makes an announcement.

The microphone for voice control is inserted in the moulded headliner and directed to the driver and front passenger. Therefore the driver and the front passenger can operate the equipment.

Entering a phone number

The telephone number can be entered as a continuous series of individually spoken digits (the whole number at once) or in the form of digital blocks (separated by short pauses). After each order of digits (separation through brief voice pause) all of the digits detected up to now are repeated by the system.

The digits **0 - 9**, symbols **+**, *****, **#** are permitted. The system detects no continuous digit combinations such as twenty-three, but only individually spoken digits (two, three).

Activating voice control - GSM II

By briefly pressing the button **1** » Fig. 129 on the multifunction steering wheel.

Deactivating voice control - GSM II

If the system is currently playing a message, you will need to end the message currently being played by briefly pressing the button **1** on the multi-function steering wheel.

If the system expects a voice command, you can end the dialogue yourself:

- with the **CANCEL** voice command;
- by briefly pressing the button **1** on the multifunction steering wheel.

Activating voice control - GSM III

The dialogue can be started at any time by pressing the button **1** » Fig. 129 on the multifunction steering wheel¹⁾.

Deactivating voice control - GSM III

If the system is currently playing a message, the message that is currently being played must be terminated by pressing the button **1** » Fig. 129 on the multi-function steering wheel.

If the system expects a voice command, you can end the dialogue yourself:

- with the **CANCEL** voice command;
- by briefly pressing the button **1** » Fig. 129 on the multifunction steering wheel.

i Note

- The dialogue of an incoming call is immediately interrupted.
- The voice control is only possible in vehicles fitted with a multi-function steering wheel with telephone control.
- On vehicles that are factory-fitted with the Columbus navigation system, it is only possible to operate the voice control for the telephone via this device » *Operating instructions for the Columbus navigation system, chapter Voice control for the navigation system.*

Voice commands - GSM II

Basic voice commands

Voice command	Action
HELP	After this command the system repeats all possible commands.
CALL XYZ	This command calls up the contact from the phone book.
PHONE BOOK	After this command, for example, the phone book can be repeated back to you, a voice entry for the contact can be updated or deleted, etc.
CALL HISTORY	Lists of dialled numbers, missed calls, etc.
DIAL NUMBER	After this command, a telephone number can be entered in order to establish a connection with the requested party.
REDIAL	After this command the system calls the last dialled number.
MUSIC^{a)}	Play music from the mobile phone or another paired device.
FURTHER OPTIONS	After this command the system offers additional context-dependent commands.

¹⁾ Not valid for vehicles with the Columbus navigation system.

Voice command	Action
SETTINGS	Selection for setting Bluetooth®, dialogue etc.
CANCEL	The dialogue is ended.

a) On vehicles fitted with the Amundsen+ navigation system, this function can be accessed via the navigation system menu; refer to the » *operating instructions for the Amundsen+ navigation system*.

If a voice command is not detected, the system answers with "Sorry?", and a new entry can be made. After the 2nd error the system repeats the aid. After the 3rd After the 3rd attempt the answer "Cancelled" is given and the dialogue is ended.

Store voice recording of a contact

If automatic name recognition does not work reliably for some contacts, you can choose to save your own voice tag for the contact in the **Phone book - Voice tag - Record** menu item.

Your own voice tag can also be saved using the voice control in the **FURTHER OPTIONS** menu.

Voice commands - GSM III

Basic voice commands

Voice command	Action
HELP	After this command the system repeats all possible commands.
CALL NAME	After this command, a name can be entered to establish a connection with the requested party.
DIAL NUMBER	After this command, a telephone number can be entered in order to establish a connection with the requested party.
REDIAL	The last selected telephone number is selected.
READ ADDRESSBOOK	The system reads out contacts from the telephone book.
READ MESSAGES	The system reads the messages which were received while the telephone was connected to the control unit.
SHORT DIALOGUE	The help is significantly reduced (good operating knowledge provided).
LONG DIALOGUE	The help is not reduced (suitable for beginners).
CANCEL	The dialogue is ended.

If the system does not recognise the command, it repeats the first part of the help thus enabling a new entry to be completed. After the 2nd error the system repeats the second part of the aid. After the 3rd After the 3rd attempt the answer "Cancelled" is given and the dialogue is ended.

Store voice recording of a contact

If automatic name recognition does not work reliably for some contacts, you can choose to save your own voice tag for the contact in the **Phone book - Voice tag - Record** menu item.

Your own voice tag can also be saved using the voice control in the **FURTHER OPTIONS** menu.

Multimedia

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Music playback via Bluetooth®	131
Operating the radio and navigation system on the multifunction steering wheel	132
AUX- and MDIinputs	133
CD change	133
DVD-preinstallation	134

Music playback via Bluetooth®

The universal telephone preinstallation makes it possible to play back music via Bluetooth® from devices such as MP3 players, mobile phones or notebooks.

To ensure that music can be played via Bluetooth®, you must first pair the device with the hands-free system in the **Phone - Bluetooth - Media player** menu.

The music playback process is performed on the connected device.

The universal telephone preinstallation GSM II ensures that the music played back via the hands-free system can be controlled with the remote control » [page 130](#), *Voice commands - GSM II*.

i Note

The device being connected must support the Bluetooth® A2DP profile; refer to the operating instructions for the relevant device being connected.

Operating the radio and navigation system on the multifunction steering wheel

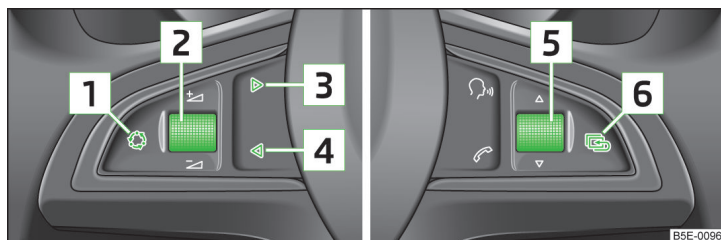


Fig. 130 Multifunction steering wheel: control buttons


The multifunction steering wheel has buttons for operating the basic functions of factory-fitted radio and navigation system » Fig. 130.

The radio and navigation system can of course still be operated on the devices. A description is included in the relevant operating instructions.

If the side lights are switched on, the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel are illuminated.

The buttons apply for the respective operating mode of the current radio, audio, video or navigation system.

The following functions can be completed by pressing or turning the buttons.

Button/ wheel » Fig. 130	Action	Radio	TV	Audio sources	DVD video	Navigation
1	Press	Change audio source				
2	Press	Switch tone off/on (MUTE )				Interrupt current navigation announcement
2	Turn upwards	Increase the volume				
2	Turn downwards	Decrease volume				
3	Press briefly	Skip to next channel	Skip to next channel	Skip to next track	Skip to next chapter	No function
		Stop traffic report				
3	Press and hold button	No function		Fast forward		No function
4	Press briefly	Switch to previous channel	Switch to previous channel	Switch to start of track ^{a)}	Switch to previous chapter	No function
		Stop traffic report				
4	Press and hold button	No function		Fast rewind		No function

Button/ wheel » Fig. 13 0	Action	Radio	TV	Audio sources	DVD video	Navigation
[5]	Turn upwards	Switch to the previous station and at the same time display list of saved/available stations	Skip to next channel	Skip to next track	Skip to next chapter	Show the option to stop navigation or display the list of recent destinations
[5]	Turn downwards	Switch to the next station and at the same time display list of saved/available stations	Switch to previous channel	Switch to start of track ^{a)}	Switch to previous chapter	
[6]	Press briefly	Call up the main menu				

a) To go to the previous track, press the adjustment wheel twice or rotate it by two positions.

AUX- and MDIinputs

The AUX and MDI inputs are used to connect external audio sources (e.g. iPod or mp3 player) and to play back music from these devices via the factory-fitted radio or navigation system.

The AUX input for external audio sources is located below the armrest of the front seats and is marked with the symbol. **AUX**¹⁾.

The MDI input is located in the storage compartment below the front armrest.

For a description of use, refer to the relevant operating instructions for the radio or navigation system.

CD change

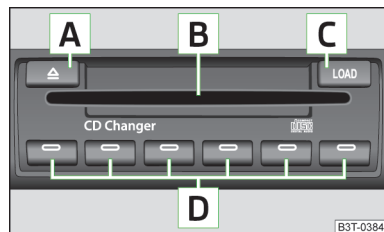


Fig. 131
The CD changer

The CD changer for the radio and navigation system is located in the right side compartment of the boot.

Inserting the CD

➤ Touch the button [C] » Fig. 131 and guide the CD (compact disc) into the CD-case [B]. The CD is automatically loaded onto the lowest free position in the CD changer. The indicator light in the corresponding button [D] stops flashing.

Filling the CD changer with CDs

➤ Press and hold the button [C] » Fig. 131 for longer than 2 seconds and guide the CDs one after the other (maximum 6 CDs) into the CD case [B]. The indicator lights in the buttons [D] stop flashing.

Inserting a CD at a specific position

➤ Press the button [C] » Fig. 131. The indicator lights in the buttons [D] illuminate the memory spaces that are already assigned and flash in the case of free memory spaces.

➤ Touch the desired button [D] and guide the CD into the CD-case [B].

Ejecting a CD

➤ Press the button [A] » Fig. 131 to eject a CD. For assigned memory spaces, the indicator lights now illuminate in the buttons [D].

➤ Press the corresponding button [D]. The CD is ejected.

¹⁾ For vehicles with the navigation system Amundsen + the AUX input located on the front panel of the navigation device » *manual of the navigation system Amundsen +*.

Ejecting all CDs

► Press and hold the button **A** » Fig. 131 for more than 2 seconds. All CDs in the CD-changer are ejected consecutively.

i Note

- Insert a CD, with the labelled side facing up, into the CD slot **B** » Fig. 131 until it is automatically drawn in. The play function will start automatically.
- After loading a CD into the CD changer, wait until the indicator light of the corresponding button **D** is illuminated. Then the CD case **B** is free to load the next CD.
- If a position is selected, on which a CD is already located, this CD is ejected. Remove the ejected CD and load the desired CD.

DVD-preinstallation

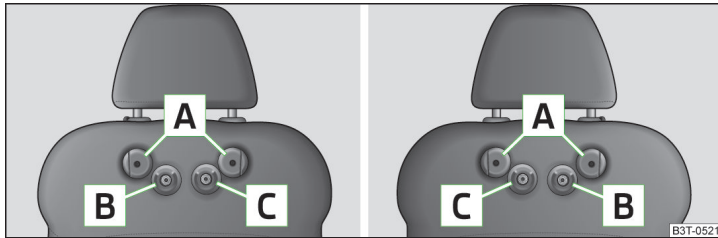


Fig. 132 Seat backrest - left front seat/right front seat

Image description

- A** Openings for attachment of DVD player holder
- B** Audio/video input
- C** Connection input, DVD player

Only one DVD pre-installation is factory-installed in the seat backrest of the front seat.

The DVD player holder and DVD player can be purchased from ŠKODA original accessories. For a description of the use, refer to the operating instructions for these devices and equipment.

! WARNING

- If there are passengers on both of the rear seats, the DVD player holder must not be used on its own (without the DVD player) - risk of injury!
- The inclination of the holder can be adjusted to three preset positions. Be careful not to injure fingers between the holder and the backrest when changes to the position of the DVD player holder are made.
- The DVD player holder must not be used when the rear seat backrest or the rear seat is folded forward or has been removed completely.

i Note

Follow the instructions given in the operating instructions of the DVD player holder/DVD player.

Driving

Starting-off and Driving

Starting and stopping the engine using the key

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Electronic immobilizer _____	136
Ignition Switch _____	136
Starting the engine _____	136
Stopping the engine _____	137

Starting and stopping the engine on vehicles with the KESSY system » [page 137](#).

The engine can only be started using a correctly coded original key.

The engine running noises may louder at first be louder for a short time after starting the cold engine. This is quite normal and is not an operating problem.

WARNING

- When the vehicle is travelling with the engine off, the ignition key must always be in position [2](#) » [Fig. 133 on page 136](#) (ignition switched on). This position is confirmed by the appearance of certain indicator lamps in the instrument cluster.
 - If the key is not in position [2](#), it could unexpectedly lock the steering - danger of accident!
- Only pull the ignition key from the ignition lock when the vehicle has come to a complete stop (by applying the handbrake). Otherwise, the steering could be blocked - risk of accident!
- Never leave the key in the vehicle when you exit the vehicle. Unauthorized persons, such as children, for example, could lock the car, turn on the ignition or start the engine - there is a danger of injury and accidents!
- Never leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running - there is risk of accident, damage or theft!
- Never switch off the engine before the vehicle is stationary - risk of accident!

WARNING

- Never leave the engine running in unventilated or closed rooms. The exhaust gases from the engine contain substances such as odourless and colourless carbon monoxide (a poisonous gas) - risk to life!
 - Carbon monoxide can cause unconsciousness and death.
- Do not leave any items (e.g. cloths or tools) in the engine compartment. This presents a fire hazard and the risk of engine damage.
- Never cover the engine with additional insulation material (e.g. with a cover) - risk of fire!

CAUTION

- The starter must only be operated when the engine is not running and the vehicle is at a standstill. The starter or engine can be damaged if the starter is activated when the engine is running [3](#) » [Fig. 133 on page 136](#).
- Do not tow start the engine - there is a risk of damaging the engine and the catalytic converter. The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » [page 207, Jump-starting](#).

CAUTION

- Avoid high engine revolutions, full throttle and high engine loads before the engine has reached its operating temperature - risk of damaging the engine!
- Do not switch the engine off immediately at the end of your journey after the engine has been operated over a prolonged period at high loads but leave it to run at an idling speed for about 1 minute. This prevents any possible accumulation of heat when the engine is switched off.

For the sake of the environment

Do not warm up the engine while the vehicle is stationary. If possible, start your journey as soon as the engine has started. Through this the engine reaches its operating temperature more rapidly and the pollutant emissions are lower.

Note

After switching off the ignition, the radiator fan may intermittently continue to operate for approx. 10 minutes.

Electronic immobilizer

Read and observe **I** and **!** on page 135 first.

An electronic chip is integrated in the head of the key. The immobiliser is deactivated with the aid of this chip when the key is inserted in the ignition lock.

The electronic immobiliser is automatically activated when the ignition key is withdrawn from the lock.

The engine will not start if a non-authorized ignition key is used.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

M Immobilizer active.

S IMMOBILISER

Ignition Switch

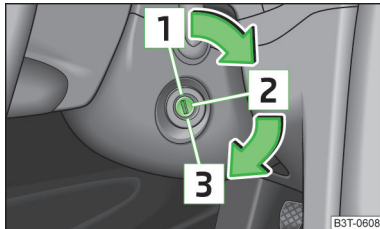


Fig. 133
Positions of the vehicle key in
the ignition lock

Read and observe **I** and **!** on page 135 first.

Petrol engines » Fig. 133

- 1 Ignition switched off, engine off, the steering can be locked
- 2 Ignition switched on
- 3 Starting engine

Diesel engines » Fig. 133

- 1 Fuel supply interrupted, ignition switched off, engine switched off, the steering can be locked.
- 2 Heating glow plugs on, ignition switched on
- 3 Starting engine

To **lock the steering**, with the ignition key withdrawn, turn the steering wheel until the steering locking pin engages audibly.



If the **steering is locked** and the key cannot be turned or can only be turned with difficulty to position **2** » Fig. 133, move the steering wheel back and forth and the steering lock will unlock.

i Note

We recommend **locking the steering wheel** whenever leaving the vehicle. This acts as a deterrent against the attempted theft of your car.

Starting the engine

Read and observe **I** and **!** on page 135 first.

Vehicles with a **diesel engine** are equipped with a glow plug system. The glow plug warning light  lights up after the ignition has been switched on. Start the engine once the  warning light has gone out.

You should not switch on any major electrical components during the heating period otherwise the vehicle battery will be drained unnecessarily.

Procedure for starting the engine

- Firmly apply the handbrake.
- Move the gearshift lever into neutral or move the selector lever into position **P** or **N**.
- Switch on the ignition **2** » Fig. 133 on page 136.
- Depress and hold the clutch pedal (vehicles with a manual gearbox) or brake pedal (vehicles with an automatic gearbox) until the engine starts.
- Turn the key into position **3** to the stop and release immediately after the engine has been started – do not apply the accelerator.

After letting go, the vehicle key will return to position **2**.

If the engine does not start within 10 seconds, turn the key to position **1**. Repeat the start-up process after approx. half a minute.

Vehicles with manual transmission

The engine will not start if the clutch pedal is not depressed.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

M Depress clutch to start!

S CLUTCH

Vehicles with automatic transmission¹⁾

The engine will not start if the brake pedal is not depressed.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

M Depress brake to start!

S BRAKE

! CAUTION

- If the engine does not start up after a second attempt, one of the following fuses may be defective.
 - Petrol engine - fuse for the electric fuel pump.
 - Diesel engine - fuse for the control unit for glow plugs or glow plug relay and fuel pump.
- Check the fuse and replace if necessary » [page 215](#), or seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Stopping the engine

Read and observe **!** and **!** on [page 135](#) first.

Switch off the engine by turning the ignition key to position **1** » [Fig. 133 on page 136](#).

For vehicles with automatic transmission, the ignition key can only be removed if the selector lever is in position **P**.

Starting and stopping the engine - KESSY

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Steering lock / unlock	138
Ignition on/off	138
Starting the engine	139
Switching off the engine	139
Emergency start-up of the engine	139
Emergency ignition shutoff system	140

¹⁾ Applies to vehicles with START-STOP system.

The KESSY system (Keyless Entry Exit System, hereinafter referred to only as system) allows the switching on or switching off of the ignition and starting or stopping of the engine without the active use of the key.

A key must be in the vehicle to unlock the steering, switch on the ignition and start the vehicle. When travelling the key must be in the vehicle.

The engine running noises may louder at first be louder for a short time after starting the cold engine. This is quite normal and is not an operating problem.

! WARNING

- Never leave the key in the vehicle when you exit the vehicle. Unauthorized persons, such as children, for example, could lock the car, turn on the ignition or start the engine - there is a danger of injury and accidents!
- Never leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running - there is a risk of theft etc!
- Never switch off the engine before the vehicle is stationary - risk of accident!

! WARNING

- Never leave the engine running in unventilated or closed rooms. The exhaust gases from the engine contain substances such as odourless and colourless carbon monoxide (a poisonous gas) - risk to life!
 - Carbon monoxide can cause unconsciousness and death.

! CAUTION

- The system can recognize the valid key, even if it has been forgotten, for example, in the front of the vehicle roof **D** » [Fig. 32 on page 50](#) - There is danger of loss or damage to the key! It is therefore not always necessary to know where the key is.
- The starter must only be operated when the engine is not running and the vehicle is at a standstill. The starter or engine may be damaged if the starter is activated when the engine is running.
- Do not tow start the engine - there is a risk of damaging the engine and the catalytic converter. The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » [page 207, Jump-starting](#).

! CAUTION

- Avoid high engine revolutions, full throttle and high engine loads before the engine has reached its operating temperature – risk of damaging the engine!
- Do not switch the engine off immediately at the end of your journey after the engine has been operated over a prolonged period at high loads but leave it to run at an idling speed for about 1 minute. This prevents any possible accumulation of heat when the engine is switched off.

🌿 For the sake of the environment

Do not warm up the engine while the vehicle is stationary. If possible, start your journey as soon as the engine has started. Through this the engine reaches its operating temperature more rapidly and the pollutant emissions are lower.

i Note

- The system is protected against inadvertently switching off the engine while driving, this means that the engine can only be switched off in an emergency » [page 140](#).
- After switching off the ignition, the radiator fan may intermittently continue to operate for approx. 10 minutes.
- Under certain circumstances (e.g. after switching off the ignition and opening the driver's door), the steering is enabled only when the ignition is switched on or the engine is started.

Steering lock / unlock



Fig. 134
Starter button

📖 Read and observe ! and ! on page 137 first.

The steering lock (steering lock) deters attempted theft of your vehicle.

Locking

- Stop the vehicle.

- Switch off the engine or the ignition by pressing the starter button » [Fig. 134](#).
- Open the driver door.

The steering is locked automatically.

If the driver's door is opened and the ignition is switched off afterwards, the steering is only locked after the vehicle is locked.

Unlocking

- Open the driver's door and get into the vehicle.
- Close the driver's door.

The steering is unlocked within 2 seconds.

If the system does not unlock the steering at the first time (for example when the front wheels are in contact with an obstacle), then two more unlocking attempts are performed automatically.

If the steering is still not unlocked, then the following message is displayed on the display of the instrument cluster.

ⓘ **Move the steering wheel!**

ⓘ **MOVE STEERING WHEEL**

Slightly move the steering wheel and the system will make up to 3 more attempts to unlock after 2 seconds. At the same time, the indicator light 🚨 flashes.

If the steering is still not unlocked, to try to eliminate the possible cause and then repeat the unlocking attempt.

Ignition on/off

📖 Read and observe ! and ! on page 137 first.

- Press the starter button » [Fig. 134](#) on page 138 briefly.

The ignition is switched on or off.

On vehicles fitted with a **manual gearbox**, the clutch pedal must not be depressed while switching the ignition on or off, otherwise the system would try to start.

On vehicles fitted with a **automatic gearbox**, the brake pedal must not be depressed while switching the ignition on or off, otherwise the system would try to start.

If the driver's door is opened while the ignition is on, an audible signal sounds and the following message appears in the instrument cluster display.

- M** Ignition on!
- S** IGNITION ON



When leaving the vehicle always switch off the ignition.

i Note

The ignition is switched on when indicated by the lighting up of certain indicator lamps in the instrument cluster.

Starting the engine

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 137 first.

Vehicles with a **diesel engine** are equipped with a glow plug system. The glow plug warning light  lights up after the ignition has been switched on. Start the engine once the  warning light has gone out.

You should not switch on any major electrical components during the heating period otherwise the vehicle battery will be drained unnecessarily.

Procedure for starting the engine

- Firmly apply the handbrake.
- Move the gearshift lever into neutral or move the selector lever into position **P** or **N**.
- Depress and hold the clutch pedal (vehicles with a manual gearbox) or brake pedal (vehicles with an automatic gearbox) until the engine starts.
- Press and hold **» Fig. 134 on page 138** ¹⁾ the starter button until the engine starts.

! CAUTION

- If the engine does not start up after a second attempt, one of the following fuses may be defective.
 - Petrol engine - fuse for the electric fuel pump.
 - Diesel engine - fuse for the control unit for glow plugs or glow plug relay and fuel pump.
- Check the fuse and replace if necessary **» page 215**, or seek assistance from a specialist garage.

¹⁾ On vehicles with the START-STOP system, it is sufficient to press the starter button briefly. The motor will then automatically start.

Switching off the engine

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 137 first.

- Stop the vehicle.
- Press the starter button **» Fig. 134 on page 138** briefly.

The engine and the ignition are switched off simultaneously.

The engine can be switched off up to a speed of 2 km/h.

Emergency start-up of the engine

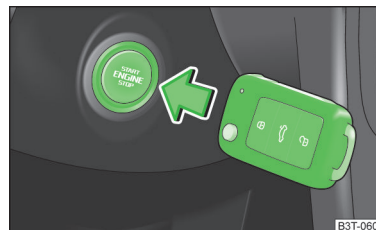


Fig. 135
Emergency start-up of engine

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 137 first.

If the authorisation check for the key fails, the following message appears in the instrument cluster display.

- M** Key not found.
- S** NO KEY

The emergency start-up must be completed.

- Press the starter button directly with the key **» Fig. 135**.
- or
- Press the starter button and then hold the key to the starter button.

i Note

During an emergency start-up of the engine, the key bit must face the starter button **» Fig. 135**.

Emergency ignition shutoff system

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 137 first.

The ignition can be turned off in an emergency even when travelling at a speed of more than 2 km / hr.

➤ Press the starter button » Fig. 134 on page 138 for longer than 1 second or twice within 1 second.

After emergency stop of the ignition, the steering is unlocked.

Brakes

📖 Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Information on braking _____ 140
Handbrake _____ 141

! WARNING

- Greater physical effort is required for braking when the engine is switched off - risk of accident!
- The clutch pedal must be actuated when braking on a vehicle with manual transmission, when the vehicle is in gear and at low revs. Otherwise, the function of the brake booster may be impaired - risk of accident!
- When leaving the vehicle, never leave persons who might, for example, release the handbrake or take the vehicle out of gear unattended in the vehicle. The vehicle could then start to move - risk of accident!

! WARNING

In the case of damage to the standard fitted front spoiler or if retrofitting another front spoiler, hub caps etc. » page 169, *Services, modifications, and technical alterations*, make sure that the air supply to the front brakes is not affected. The front brakes may overheat, which can have a negative impact on the functioning of the braking system - risk of accident!

! CAUTION

- Observe the recommendations on the new brake pads » page 145.
- Never let the brakes slip with light pressure on the pedal if braking is not necessary. This causes the brakes to overheat and can also result in a longer braking distance and excessive wear.

Information on braking

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 140 first.

If the brakes are applied in full and the control unit for the braking system considers the situation to be dangerous for the following traffic, the brake light flashes automatically.

After the speed was reduced below around 10 km/h or the vehicle was stopped, the brake light stops flashing and the hazard warning light system switches on. The hazard warning light system is switched off automatically after accelerating or driving off again.

Before travelling a long distance with a steep gradient, reduce speed and shift into the next lowest gear. As a result, the braking effect of the engine will be used, reducing the load on the brakes. Any additional braking should be completed intermittently, not continuously.

Wear-and-tear

The wear of the brake pads is dependent on the operating conditions and driving style.

The brake pads wear more quickly if a lot of journeys are completed in towns and over short distances or if a very sporty style of driving is adopted.

Under these **severe conditions**, the thickness of the brake pads must also be checked by a specialist garage between service intervals.

Wet roads or road salt

The performance of the brakes can be delayed as the brake discs and brake pads may be moist or have a coating of ice or layer of salt on them in winter. The brakes are cleaned and dried by applying the brakes several times.

Corrosion


Corrosion on the brake discs and dirt on the brake pads occur if the vehicle has been parked for a long period and if you do not make much use of the braking system. The brakes are cleaned and dried by applying the brakes several times.

Faults in the brake surface

If it is found that the braking distance has suddenly become longer and that the brake pedal can be depressed further, the brake system may be faulty.

Visit a specialist garage immediately and adjust your style of driving appropriately, as you will not know the exact extent of the damage. ▶

Low brake fluid level

An insufficient level of brake fluid may result in problems in the brake system. The level of the brake fluid is monitored electronically » [page 33](#),  *Brake system*.

Brake booster

The brake booster increases the pressure generated with the brake pedal. The brake booster only operates when the engine is running.

Handbrake

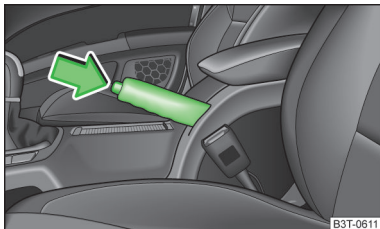


Fig. 136
Handbrake


 Read and observe  and  on page 140 first.

Apply

» Pull the handbrake lever firmly upwards.

Releasing

- » Pull the handbrake lever up slightly **and at the same time** push in the locking button » [Fig. 136](#).
- » Move the lever right down while pressing the lock button.

The handbrake indicator light  lights up when the handbrake is applied, provided the ignition is on.

A warning signal sounds if the vehicle is inadvertently driven off with the handbrake applied.

The following instruction is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Release parking brake!

The handbrake warning is activated if the vehicle is driven at a speed of more than around 5 km/h for more than 3 seconds.

WARNING

Please note that the handbrake must be fully released. A handbrake which is only partially released can result in the rear brakes overheating. This can have a negative effect on the operation of the brake system – risk of accident!

CAUTION

After the vehicle has come to a standstill, always tighten the handbrake first and then put in the first gear gear (vehicles with manual gearbox) or move the selector lever to the P position (vehicles with automatic gearbox).

Manual gear changing and pedals

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Manual gear changing _____ 141

Pedals _____ 142

Manual gear changing

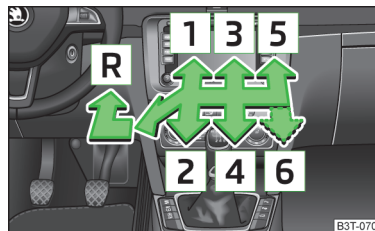


Fig. 137
Gearshift pattern of 5 gear or
6 gear manual gearbox

Always depress the clutch pedal all the way down. This prevents uneven wear on the clutch.

The gearshift indicator must be observed when changing gear » [page 40](#).

Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary. Depress the clutch pedal and hold it fully depressed. Wait a moment before reverse gear is engaged to avoid any shift noises.

The reversing lights will come on once reverse gear is engaged, provided the ignition is on.

! WARNING

Never engage reverse gear when driving – risk of accident!

! CAUTION

If not in the process of changing gear, do not leave your hand on the gearshift lever while driving. The pressure from the hand can cause the gearshift mechanism to wear excessively.

Pedals

The operation of the pedals must not be hindered under any circumstances! In the driver's footwell, only a footmat, which is attached to the two corresponding attachment points, may be used.

Only use factory-supplied footmats or footmats from the range of ŠKODA Original Accessories, which are fitted to two attachment points.

! WARNING

No objects may be placed in the driver's footwell – risk due to obstruction or limitation of pedal operation.

Automatic gearbox

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Modes and use of selector lever	142
Manual shifting of gears (Tiptronic)	143
Starting-off and driving	144
Malfunction	144

! WARNING

- Do not depress the accelerator if changing the forward driving mode – risk of accident!
- Never move the selector lever to mode **R** or **P** when driving – risk of accident!
- When the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running, the vehicle must be held in mode **D**, **S** or **R** with the brake pedal. Even when the engine is idling, the power transmission is never completely interrupted – the vehicle creeps.

! CAUTION

- If the selector lever is moved to mode **N** while driving, the accelerator pedal must be released and you will need to wait until the engine has reached its idling speed before moving the selector lever to a forward driving mode again.
- At temperatures below $-10\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}$, the engine can only be started in the selector lever position **P**.
- When stopping on a slope, never try to hold the vehicle using the accelerator pedal – this may lead to gear damage.

i Note

After the ignition is switched off, the ignition key can only be withdrawn if the selector lever is in the position **P**.

Modes and use of selector lever

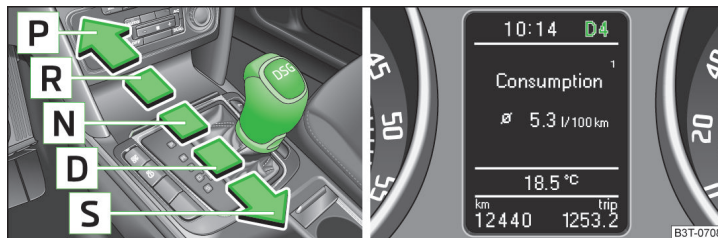


Fig. 138 Selector lever / display



Fig. 139 Shiftlock button

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 142 first.

When the ignition is switched on, the gearbox mode and the currently selected gear are indicated in the display » Fig. 138.

The following modes can be selected with the selector lever » Fig. 138.

P - Parking mode

The driven wheels are locked mechanically in this mode.

The parking mode must only be selected when the vehicle is stationary.

R - Reverse gear

Reverse gear can only be engaged when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is at idling speed.

Before moving into mode **R** from mode **P** or **N**, depress the brake pedal while simultaneously pressing the lock button in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 139.

N - Neutral

The power transmission to the drive wheels is interrupted in this mode.

D - Mode for forwards travel (normal programme)


In mode **D**, the forward gears are automatically changed according to the engine load, accelerator pedal actuation and driving speed.

S - Mode for forwards travel (sports programme)

In mode **S**, the forward gears are shifted automatically up and down at higher engine speeds than in mode **D**.

Before changing to mode **S** from mode **D**, press the lock button in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 139.

Releasing selector lever from mode **P** or **N** (selector lever lock)

The selector lever is locked in modes **P** and **N** to prevent the forwards travel mode from being selected accidentally and setting the vehicle in motion. The warning light  illuminates in the instrument cluster » page 39.

The selector lever is released by depressing the brake pedal while simultaneously pressing the lock button in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 139.

The selector lever is not locked when quickly moving via position **N** (e.g. from **R** to **D**). This, for example, helps to rock out a vehicle that is stuck, e.g. in a bank of snow. The selector lever lock will engage if the lever is in position **N** for more than approx. 2 seconds without the brake pedal being depressed.

The selector lever is locked only when the vehicle is stationary and at speeds up to 5 km/h.

i Note

If you want to move the selector lever from mode **P** to mode **D** or vice versa, move the selector lever quickly. This prevents modes **R** or **N** from being accidentally selected.

Manual shifting of gears (Tiptronic)

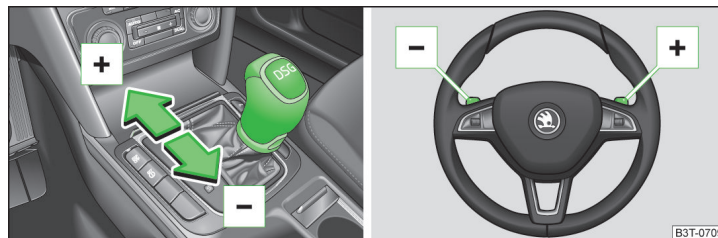


Fig. 140 Selector lever / multi-function steering wheel

 Read and observe  and  on page 142 first.

Tiptronic mode makes it possible to manually shift gears with the selector lever or multifunction steering wheel. This mode can be selected both while stopping and while driving.

The currently selected gear is indicated in the display » Fig. 138 on page 142.

The gearshift indicator must be observed when changing gear » page 40.

Switching to manual shifting


➤ Push the gear selector from position **D** towards the right, or left in a right-hand drive vehicle.

Shifting up gears

➤ Press the selector lever forwards  » Fig. 140.

➤ Pull the right-hand paddle  » Fig. 140 briefly towards the steering wheel.



Shifting down gears

➤ Press the selector lever backwards  » Fig. 140.

➤ Pull the left-hand paddle  » Fig. 140 briefly towards the steering wheel.

Temporarily switch to manual gear changing in mode **D** or **S**

➤ Pull one of the  /  paddles » Fig. 140 briefly towards the steering wheel. ▶

If one of the rocker switches  is not pulled for more than 1 minute, manual gear changing is deactivated. The temporary switch to manual gear changing can also be deactivated by pulling the right-hand rocker switch  towards the steering wheel for more than 1 second.

When accelerating, the gearbox automatically shifts up into the higher gear just before the maximum permissible engine speed is reached.

If a lower gear is selected, the gearbox does not shift down until there is no risk of the engine overrevving.

i Note

It may be beneficial, for example, when travelling downhill, to use manual shifting of gears. Shifting to a lower gear reduces the load on the brakes and hence the wear of the brakes » [page 140](#).

Starting-off and driving

 Read and observe  and  on page 142 first.

Starting off

- › Start the engine.
- › Firmly depress and hold the brake pedal.
- › Press the lock button in the direction of to arrow » [Fig. 139 on page 142](#) and hold.
- › Move the selector lever into the desired position » [page 142](#) and then release the lock button.
- › Release the brake pedal and accelerate.

Stop

- › Fully depress and hold the brake pedal and bring the vehicle to a stop.
- › Keep holding the brake pedal until driving is resumed.

The selector lever position **N** does not have to be selected when stopping for a short time, such as at a cross roads.

Parking

- › Fully depress and hold the brake pedal and bring the vehicle to a stop.
- › Firmly apply the handbrake.
- › Press the lock button in the direction of to arrow » [Fig. 139 on page 142](#) and hold.

- › Move the selector lever into the position **P** and then release the locking button.

Launch control¹⁾

The Launch control function allows the vehicle to reach maximum acceleration when starting off in mode **S** or Tiptronic.

- › Activate the ASR » [page 151, Brake assist systems](#).
- › START STOP deactivate » [page 161](#).
- › Fully depress and hold the brake pedal with your left foot.
- › Fully depress the accelerator pedal with your right foot.
- › Release the brake pedal.

The vehicle starts off with maximum acceleration.

Reactivate the ASR and START-STOP as soon as the desired speed is reached.

Kickdown

The kickdown function allows you to achieve the maximum acceleration of your vehicle while driving.

When the accelerator pedal is fully depressed, the kickdown function is activated in any forward driving mode.

The gearbox shifts down one or more gears depending on the vehicle speed and engine speed, and the vehicle accelerates.

The gearbox does not shift up into the highest gear until the engine has reached its maximum revolutions for this gear range.

WARNING

Rapid acceleration, particularly on slippery roads, can lead to loss of control of the vehicle – risk of accident!

Malfunction

 Read and observe  and  on page 142 first.

Emergency programme


The transmission switches to the emergency programme, if there is a fault in system of the automatic gearbox. ▶

¹⁾ This function is only valid for some engines.

Indications of an activated emergency programme include the following:

- Only certain gears are selected.
- The reverse gear **R** cannot be used.
- Shifting gears in Tiptronic mode is not possible.

Gearbox overheating

The gearbox may, for example, become too hot due to frequent repeated starting or stop-and-go traffic. Overheating is indicated by the warning light » [page 31](#),  *Clutches of the automatic DSG gearbox are too hot.*

Defective selector lever lock

If the selector lever lock is defective or its power supply is interrupted (e.g. discharged vehicle battery, faulty fuse), the selector lever can no longer be moved out of position **P** in the normal manner, and the vehicle can no longer be driven. The selector lever must be unlocked specially » [page 213](#).

Note

If the gearbox has switched to the emergency programme, visit a specialist garage.

Running in

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

New engine _____	145
New tyres _____	145
New brake pads _____	145

New engine

The engine has to be run in during the first 1 500 kilometres.

Up to 1 000 kilometres

- Do not drive faster than 3/4 of the maximum speed of the gear in use, i.e. 3/4 of the maximum permissible engine speed.
- No full throttle.
- Avoid high engine speeds.
- Do not tow a trailer.


From 1 000 up to 1 500 kilometres

Gradually increase the power output of the engine up to the full speed of the gear engaged, i.e. up to the maximum permissible engine speed.

The red scale of the rev counter indicates the range in which the system begins to limit the engine speed.

During the first operating hours the engine has higher internal friction than later until all of the moving parts have harmonized. The driving style which you adopt during the first approx. 1 500 kilometres plays a decisive part in the success of running in your car.

Never drive at unnecessarily high engine speeds even after the running-in period.

On vehicles fitted with a manual gearbox, at the very latest shift up into the next gear when the red area is reached. Observe the recommended gear » [page 40](#), *Gear recommendation*. **Very** high engine speeds when accelerating (accelerator) are automatically restricted » .

In vehicles with manual transmission, do not drive at unnecessarily **low** engine speeds. Shift down a gear when the engine is no longer running smoothly. Observe the recommended gear » [page 40](#), *Gear recommendation*.

CAUTION

- The engine is not protected from excessive engine revs caused by shifting down at the wrong time. This can result in a sudden increase in revs beyond the permissible maximum rpm, thereby causing engine damage.
- Never rev up a cold engine when the vehicle is stationary or when driving in individual gears.

For the sake of the environment

Do not drive at unnecessarily high engine speeds. Shifting up sooner helps save fuel, reduces engine noise and protects the environment.

New tyres

New tyres must firstly be "run in", as they do not offer optimal grip at first. Therefore, drive especially carefully for the first 500 km or so.

New brake pads

New brake pads do not initially provide optimal braking performance. They first need to be "run in". Therefore, drive especially carefully for the first 200 km or so.

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Looking ahead	146
Economical gear changing	146
Avoiding full throttle	147
Reducing idling	147
Avoiding short distances	147
Checking tyre inflation pressure	147
Avoiding unnecessary ballast	147
Regular maintenance	148
Saving electrical energy	148
Environmental compatibility	148

The technical requirements for low fuel usage and economic efficiency of the vehicle have already been built into the vehicle at the works. ŠKODA places a particular emphasis on minimising negative effects on the environment.

It is necessary to take note of the guidelines given in this chapter in order to make best use of these characteristics and to maintain their effectiveness.

Fuel consumption, environmental pollution and the wear to the engine, brakes and tyres depend essentially on the following three factors:

- > your personal driving style
- > operating conditions
- > technical requirements

The fuel economy can be improved by 10 -15 % by always looking ahead and driving in an economical way.

Fuel consumption is also influenced by external factors which are beyond the driver's control. Consumption increases during the winter or under difficult conditions, on poor roads, etc.

Fuel consumption can vary considerably from the manufacturer's data, as a result of outside temperatures, the weather and driving style.

The optimal engine speed should be obtained when accelerating, in order to avoid a high fuel consumption and resonance of the vehicle.

! CAUTION

All the speed and engine revolution figures apply only when the engine is at its normal operating temperature.

Looking ahead

Read and observe ! on page 146 first.

A vehicle's highest fuel consumption occurs when accelerating, therefore unnecessary accelerating and braking should be avoided. If looking ahead when driving, less braking and consequently less accelerating are required.

If possible, let your vehicle coast to a stop, or use the engine brake, if you can see that the next set of traffic lights is on red, for example.

Economical gear changing

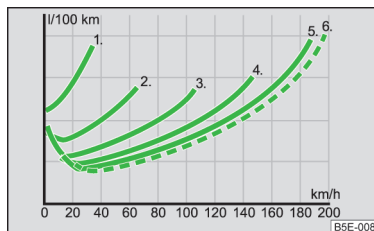


Fig. 141
Principle sketch: Fuel consumption in litres/100 km depending on the selected gear

Read and observe ! on page 146 first.

Shifting up early saves on fuel.

Manual gearbox

- > Drive no more than about one length of your vehicle in first gear.
- > Shift up into the next gear at approx. 2000 rpm.

An effective way of achieving good fuel economy is to shift up **early**. Observe the recommended gear » page 40, *Gear recommendation*.

A suitably selected gear can have an effect on fuel consumption » Fig. 141.

Automatic gearbox

- > Slowly apply the accelerator pedal. However, do not depress it as far as the kickdown position » page 144.
- > An economic driving programme is automatically selected if the accelerator pedal is only depressed slowly.

Avoiding full throttle

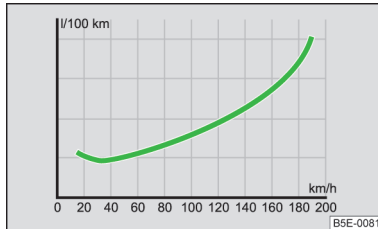


Fig. 142
Principle sketch: Fuel consumption in litres/100 km. and speed in km/h.

Read and observe  on page 146 first.

Driving more slowly saves fuel.

Sensitive use of the accelerator will not only significantly reduce fuel consumption but also positively influence environmental pollution and wear of your vehicle.

The maximum speed of your vehicle should, as far possible, never be used. Fuel consumption, pollutant emissions and vehicle noises increase disproportionately at high speeds.

The graph » Fig. 142 shows the ratio of fuel consumption to the speed of your vehicle. Fuel consumption will be halved if you drive at only three-quarters of the possible top speed of your vehicle.

Reducing idling

Read and observe  on page 146 first.

Idling also costs fuel.

In vehicles not equipped with the START-STOP system, turn off the engine when in a traffic jam, at a level crossing or traffic lights with longer wait times.

Even after just 30 - 40 seconds you will have saved more fuel than that is needed when you start the engine up again.

If an engine is only idling it takes much longer for it to reach its normal operating temperature. Wear-and-tear and pollutant emissions, though, are particularly high in the warming-up phase. Therefore, start driving as soon as the engine has started. In this case high engine speeds should be avoided.

Avoiding short distances

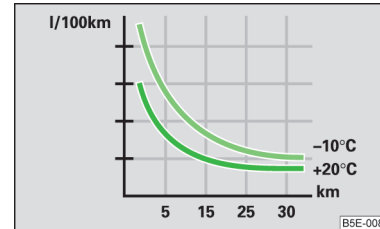


Fig. 143
Principle sketch: Fuel consumption in l/100 km at different temperatures

Read and observe  on page 146 first.

Short distances result in an above-average high fuel consumption. We therefore recommend avoiding distances of less than 4 km if the engine is cold.

A cold engine consumes the most fuel immediately after the start. Fuel consumption drops to 10 litres/100 km after just 1 kilometre. The consumption stabilises once the engine and catalytic converter have reached their operating temperature.

An important factor in this connection is also the **ambient temperature**. The graph » Fig. 143 shows the different levels of fuel consumption after driving a certain distance at a temperature of +20 °C and a temperature of -10 °C.

Checking tyre inflation pressure

Read and observe  on page 146 first.

Tyres which are correctly inflated save fuel.

Always ensure the tyre inflation pressure is correct. If the inflation pressure is too low, the tyres will have to overcome a higher rolling resistance. This will not only increase fuel consumption but also tyre wear and the driving behaviour will worsen.

Always check the tyre inflation pressure when the tyres are **cold**.

Avoiding unnecessary ballast

Read and observe  on page 146 first.

Transporting ballast costs fuel.

Each kilogramme of **weight** increases the fuel consumption. Therefore, we recommend to carry no unnecessary weight.

It is particularly in town traffic, when one is accelerating quite often, that the vehicle weight will have a significant effect upon the fuel consumption. A rule of thumb here is that an increase in weight of 100 kilograms will cause an increase in fuel consumption of about 1 litre/100 kilometres.

At a speed of 100 - 120 km/h, a vehicle fitted with a roof rack cross member without a load will use about 10 % more fuel than normal due to the increased aerodynamic drag.

Regular maintenance

 **Read and observe**  on page 146 first.

A poorly tuned engine uses an unnecessarily high amount of fuel.

By having your vehicle regularly maintained by a specialist garage, you create the conditions needed for economical driving. The maintenance state of your vehicle has a positive effect on traffic safety and value retention

A poorly tuned engine can result in a fuel consumption which is 10 % higher than normal.

Check the **oil level** at regular intervals, e.g. when filling up. **Oil consumption** is dependent to a considerable extent on the load and speed of the engine. Oil consumption could be as high as 0.5 litres/1 000 km depending on your style of driving.

It is quite normal that a new engine has a higher oil consumption at first, and reaches its lowest level only after a certain running in time. The oil consumption of a new vehicle can therefore only be correctly assessed after driving about 5 000 km.

For the sake of the environment

- Additional improvements to the fuel economy can be made by using synthetic high-lubricity oils.
- Regularly check the ground under the vehicle. Have your vehicle inspected by a specialist garage if you find any stains caused by oil or other fluids on the ground.

Note

We recommend that your vehicle be serviced on a regular basis by a ŠKODA service partner.

Saving electrical energy

 **Read and observe**  on page 146 first.

When the engine is running, the alternator generates and supplies electrical power. If more electrical components of the electrical system are switched on, more fuel is needed to operate the alternator. We therefore recommend switching off electrical components if these are no longer required.

Environmental compatibility

 **Read and observe**  on page 146 first.

Environmental protection has played a major role in the design, material selection and production of your new ŠKODA. Particular emphasis has been placed on the following points.

Design measures

- › Joints designed to be easily detached.
- › Simplified disassembly due to the modular structure system.
- › Improved purity of different classes of materials.
- › Identification of all plastic parts in accordance with VDA Recommendation 260.
- › Reduced fuel consumption and exhaust emission CO₂.
- › Minimum fuel leakage during accidents.
- › Reduced noise.

Choice of materials

- › Extensive use of recyclable material.
- › Air conditioning filled with CFC-free refrigerant.
- › No cadmium.
- › No asbestos.
- › Reduction in the "vaporisation" of plastics.

Manufacture

- › Solvent-free cavity protection.
- › Solvent-free protection of the vehicle for transportation from the production plant to the customer.
- › The use of solvent-free adhesives.
- › No CFCs used in the production process.
- › Without use of mercury.
- › Use of water-soluble paints.

Trade-in and recycling of old cars

ŠKODA meets the requirements of the brand and its products with regard to protecting the environment and the preserving resources. All new ŠKODA vehicles can be utilized up to 95 % and always ¹⁾ be returned.

In a lot of countries sufficient trade-in networks have been created, where you can trade-in your vehicle. After you trade-in your vehicle, you will receive a confirmation stating the recycling in accordance with environmental regulations.

i Note

You can find more detailed information about the trade-in and recycling of old cars from a specialist garage.

Avoiding damage to your vehicle

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

General information _____	149
Driving through water on streets _____	149

General information

Pay attention to low-slung parts of the vehicle, such as the spoiler and exhaust, particularly in the following situations.

- When driving on poorly maintained roads and paths.
- When driving over kerbs.
- When driving on steep ramps etc.

Particular attention must be paid with vehicles with sport suspension and when the vehicle is fully laden.

¹⁾ Subject to fulfilment of the national legal requirements.

Driving through water on streets

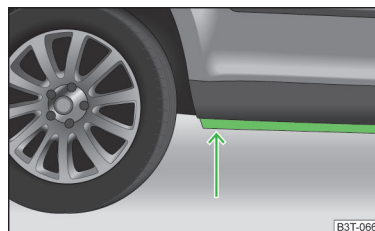


Fig. 144
Driving through water

The following instructions must be observed if vehicle damage is to be avoided when driving through water (e.g. flooded roads).

- Determine the depth of the water before driving through.

The water level must not reach above the web of the lower beam » Fig. 144.

- Do not drive any faster than at a walking speed.

At a higher speed, a water wave can form in front of the vehicle, which can cause water to penetrate into the engine's air induction system or other parts of the vehicle.

- Never stop in the water, do not reverse and do not switch the engine off.

! WARNING

- Driving through water, mud, sludge etc. can impair the braking power and increase the braking distance - risk of accident!
- Avoid abrupt and sudden braking immediately after water crossings.
- After driving through bodies of water, the brakes must be cleaned and dried as soon as possible by intermittent braking. Only apply the brakes for the purpose of drying and cleaning the brake discs if the traffic conditions permit this. Do not place any other road users in jeopardy.

! CAUTION

- When driving through water, some parts of the vehicle such as the engine, gearbox, chassis or electrics can be severely damaged.
- Oncoming vehicles can generate water waves which can exceed the permissible water level for your vehicle. ▶

- Potholes, mud or rocks can be hidden under the water making it difficult or impossible to drive through the body of water.
- Do not drive through salt water. The salt can lead to corrosion. Any vehicle parts that have come into contact with salt water must be rinsed immediately with fresh water.

i Note

After driving through water, we recommend having the vehicle checked by a specialist garage.

Driving abroad

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Unleaded petrol _____	150
Headlights _____	150

In certain countries, it may be possible that the ŠKODA Partner network is limited or has not been established. This is the reason why procuring certain spare parts may be somewhat complicated and specialist garages may only be able to make limited repairs.

Unleaded petrol

A vehicle fitted with a petrol engine must always be refuelled with unleaded petrol » [page 180](#), *Unleaded petrol*. Information regarding the locations of filling stations that offer unleaded petrol is, for example, provided by the automobile associations.

Headlights

The low beam of your headlights is set asymmetrically. It illuminates the side of the road on which the vehicle is being driven to a greater extent.

When driving in countries in which the traffic drives on the other side of the road than in your home country, the asymmetrical low beam may dazzle on-coming drivers. In order to avoid this, the headlights must be adjusted at a specialist garage.

Headlights with Xenon lights can be adjusted in the menu of the MAXI DOT display » [page 69](#).

i Note

You can find out more information on adjusting the headlights at a specialist garage.

Assist systems

Brake assist systems

Introduction


This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)	151
Antilock brake system (ABS)	152
Traction Control System (TCS)	152
Electronic Differential Lock (EDL)	152
Driver Steering Recommendation (DSR)	152
Hydraulic Brake Assist (HBA)	152
Hill Hold Control (HHC)	153

! WARNING

- A lack of fuel can cause irregular engine running or cause the engine to shut down. The brake assist systems would then fail to function - risk of accident!
- Adjust the speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions. The increased safety provided by the brake assist systems must not tempt you to take safety risks - risk of accident!
- In the event of an ABS fault, visit a specialist garage immediately. Adjust your style of driving according to the damage to the ABS, as you will not know the exact extent of the damage or the extent to which this is limiting the braking efficiency.

! CAUTION

- All four wheels must be fitted with the same tyres approved by the manufacturer to ensure the brake assist systems operate correctly.
- Changes to the vehicle (e.g. to the engine, brakes, chassis) can influence the functionality of the brake assist systems » [page 169](#), *Services, modifications, and technical alterations*.
- If a fault occurs in the ABS system, the ESC, ASR and EDL will also not work. An ABS fault is indicated by the warning light  » [page 36](#).

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)




Fig. 145
ESC system: TCS button

Read and observe  and  on page 151 first.

The ESC system helps improve control of the vehicle in situations where it is being operated at its dynamic limits, such as a sudden change to the direction of travel. Depending on the conditions of the road surface, the risk of skidding is reduced, thereby improving the vehicle's driving stability .


The ESC system is automatically activated each time the ignition is switched on.


The direction which the driver wishes to take is determined based on the steering angle and the speed of the vehicle and is constantly compared with the actual behaviour of the vehicle. In the event of deviations, such as the car beginning to skid, the ESC system will automatically brake the appropriate wheel.

During an intervention of the system, the indicator light  flashes in the instrument cluster.

The following systems are integrated into the **Electronic Stability Control (ESC)**.

- Antilock Brake System (ABS) » [page 152](#).
- Traction control (ASR) » [page 152](#).
- Electronic Differential Lock (EDL) » [page 152](#).
- Driver Steering Recommendation (DSR) » [page 152](#).
- Hydraulic Brake Assist (HBA) » [page 152](#).
- Hill Hold Control (HHC) » [page 153](#).
- Trailer stabilisation (TSA) » [page 168](#).

The ESC system cannot be deactivated. The  » [Fig. 145](#) button can only be used to deactivate the TCS.

The warning light  lights up in the instrument cluster when the ASR is deactivated.

Antilock brake system (ABS)

 **Read and observe**  and  on page 151 first.

ABS prevents the wheels locking when braking. Thus helping the driver to maintain control of the vehicle.

The intervention of the ABS is noticeable from the **pulsating movements of the brake pedal** which is accompanied by noises.

When the ABS system is active, do not brake periodically or reduce the pressure on the brake pedal.

Traction Control System (TCS)




Fig. 146
TCS button

 **Read and observe**  and  on page 151 first.

If the wheels are slipping, the TCS adapts the engine speed to the conditions of the road surface. The TCS makes it much easier to start off, accelerate and climb steep hills even if the conditions of the road surface are unfavourable.


The TCS function is activated automatically each time the ignition is switched on.

If your vehicle is fitted with the ESC system, the ASR is integrated into the ESC system » page 151.

During an intervention of the system, the TCS indicator light  flashes in the instrument cluster.

The TCS should normally always be enabled. The system should be deactivated only in the following situations, for example.

- When driving with snow chains.
- When driving in deep snow or on a very loose surface.
- When "rocking a car free" when it has become stuck.

The ASR can be deactivated via the  » Fig. 146 symbol button.

The warning light  lights up in the instrument cluster when the ASR is deactivated.

Ensure the TCS is activated again afterwards.

Electronic Differential Lock (EDL)

 **Read and observe**  and  on page 151 first.

If one of the wheels starts to spin, the EDL system brakes the spinning wheel and transfers the driving force to the other wheels. This ensures the stability of the vehicle and a quick journey.

The EDL switches off automatically in order to avoid excessive heat generation in the disc brake of the wheel being braked. The vehicle can continue to be driven and has the same characteristics as a vehicle not fitted with EDL. The EDL switches on again automatically as soon as the brake has cooled down.

Driver Steering Recommendation (DSR)

 **Read and observe**  and  on page 151 first.

In critical situations, the DSR provides the driver with a steering recommendation in order to stabilise the vehicle. The DSR is activated, for example, on the right and left vehicle side when braking sharply on different road surfaces.

Hydraulic Brake Assist (HBA)

 **Read and observe**  and  on page 151 first.

The HBA increases the braking effect and helps to reduce the braking distance.

The HBA is activated by very quick operation of the brake pedal. In order to achieve the shortest possible braking distance, the brake pedal must be applied firmly until the vehicle has come to a standstill. ▶

The HBA function is automatically deactivated when the brake pedal is released.

The ABS is activated faster and more effectively with the intervention of the HBA.

Hill Hold Control (HHC)

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 151 first.

When driving on slopes, HHC allows you to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal without having to use the handbrake.

The system holds the brake pressure produced by the activation of the brake pedal for approx. 2 seconds after the brake pedal is released.

The brake pressure drops gradually the more you operate the accelerator pedal. If the vehicle does not start off within 2 seconds, it starts to roll back.

The HHC is active on slopes of >5 % if the driver door is closed. HHC is only ever active on slopes when in forward or reverse start off. When driving downhill, it is inactive.

Parking aid

📖 Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Function	_____	154
Activation/deactivation	_____	154


! WARNING

- The parking aid is not a substitute for the driver paying proper attention and it is always the driver's responsibility to take care when reversing the vehicle or carrying out similar manoeuvres. Pay particular attention to small children and animals as they may not be recognised by the system sensors.
- Before reversing, you should make sure that there are no small obstacles, such as rocks, thin posts, trailer drawbars etc. in front or behind your vehicle. Such obstacles may not be recognised by the system sensors.

! WARNING (Continued)

- Under certain circumstances, surfaces of certain objects and types of clothing cannot reflect the system signals. Thus, these objects or people who wear such clothing are not recognised by the System sensors.
- External sound sources can have a detrimental effect on the system. Under adverse conditions, this may cause objects or people to not be recognised by the system.

! CAUTION

- If a warning signal sounds for about 3 seconds after activating the system and there is no obstacle close to your car, this indicates a system fault. The fault is also indicated by the symbol  flashing in the button [» Fig. 147 on page 154](#). Seek help from a specialist garage.
- The sensors must be kept clean (free of ice, etc.) to enable the system to operate properly.
- Under adverse weather conditions (heavy rain, water vapour, very low or high temperatures etc.) system function may be limited.
- Additionally installed modules such as bicycle carriers can impair the function of the parking aid.

i Note

- The signal tones for front obstacle recognition are factory-set to be higher than for rear obstacle recognition.
- If not all fields around the vehicle are shown after the system is activated, the vehicle will need to be moved a few metres forwards or in reverse.
- The sound of the park-assist can be adjusted via the MAXI DOT display in the **Wizards** menu option [» page 45](#).
- If the system is activated and the selector lever of the automatic gearbox is in position **P** (the vehicle cannot move), the warning tone is interrupted and no obstacles are displayed.

Function

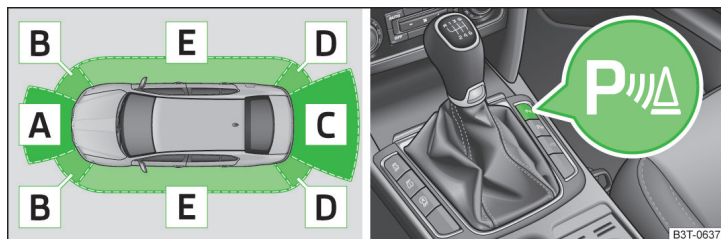


Fig. 147 Range of sensors / system button

Read and observe **R** and **I** on page 153 first.

The parking aid (hereafter referred to solely as system) only works when the ignition is switched on.

The system supports the driver via audible signals, via the display on the radio or via the factory-installed navigation system when parking and manoeuvring » *Radio user guide, Navigation system user guide.*

The system uses ultrasound waves to calculate the distance between the bumper and an obstacle. The ultrasound sensors are located on the front/rear bumper.

Image description - approximate range of the sensors

Area » Fig. 147	Range of sensors
A	120 cm
B	60 cm
C	160 cm
D	60 cm
E ^{a)}	60 cm

^{a)} Applies only for vehicles with 12 sensors.

The interval between the acoustic signals becomes shorter as the clearance is reduced. A continuous tone sounds from a distance of approx. 30 cm - danger area. **From this moment on do not continue driving!**

The length of the vehicle can be increased with an installed detachable towing device. The danger area thus begins at a distance of around 35 cm on vehicles equipped with a factory-fitted towing device.

Towing a trailer

On vehicles equipped with a factory-fitted towing device, only system areas **A** and **B** » Fig. 147 are active when towing a trailer.

Activation/deactivation

Read and observe **R** and **I** on page 153 first.

The system is automatically activated by selecting **reverse gear** or pressing the symbol button **P** » Fig. 147 on page 154. The symbol **P** lights up in the button; activation is confirmed by a brief acoustic signal.

The system is deactivated by moving out of reverse gear or by pressing the **P** symbol button, or is deactivated automatically at a speed of over 10 km/h (the **P** symbol in the button goes out).

On vehicles which **only have rear sensors**, the system can only be deactivated by moving out of reverse gear.

Park assist

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Functioning	155
Finding a parking space	155
Parking	156
Departing from a parallel parking space	157
Automatic emergency braking	157
Information messages	157

Park Assist (in the following referred to as the system) helps drivers park in suitable parallel and perpendicular parking places and also to manoeuvre out of parallel parking spaces.

The system takes over the steering movements when parking or driving out of the parking space, the driver operates the pedals as well as the gear lever.

The state in which the steering wheel is operated by the system, is referred to as **parking operation**.

The parking aid is part of the park assist system, therefore the information and safety guidelines » page 153, *Parking aid* must also be read and observed.

! WARNING

- The system only serves to support and does not relieve the driver of the responsibility for the vehicle operation.
- During the parking process, the system automatically performs rapid steering movements. While it is doing so, do not place your hands between the steering wheel - risk of injury!
- During a parking manoeuvre on loose or slippery surfaces (gravel, snow, ice, etc.) you may stray from the calculated road because of the surface conditions. We therefore recommend not using the system in such situations.
- External noise sources may affect the signals of the system sensors. Under adverse conditions, this may cause objects or people to not be recognised by the system.

! CAUTION

- If other vehicles are parked behind or on the kerb, the system can guide your vehicle beyond the kerb or onto it. Ensure that the wheels or the wheel rims of your vehicle are not damaged and if necessary intervene in time.
- Under certain circumstances, the surfaces or structures of certain objects such as wire mesh fences or powder snow cannot be detected by the system.
- Under adverse weather conditions (heavy rain, water vapour, very low or high temperatures etc.) system function may be limited.

! CAUTION

The correct evaluation of the parking space and the parking procedure depends on the circumference of the wheels on the vehicle.

- The system only works correctly if the vehicle is fitted with the wheel size approved by the manufacturer.
- Do without the use of the system if snow chains or a spare wheel is mounted.
- If wheels other than those approved by the manufacturer are mounted, the resulting position of the vehicle in the parking space can differ slightly. This can be avoided by readjusting the system at a specialist garage.

i Note

We recommend performing the parking at a safe speed to about 5 km / h.

Functioning

📖 Read and observe ! and ! on page 155 first.

Basic system operations

- The measurement and evaluation of the size of parking spaces when driving.
- The determination of the correct position of the vehicle for parking.
- The calculation of the line on which the vehicle drives backwards into the parking space or forwards from the parking space.
- Automatic rotation of the front wheels during the parking.

The display of the instrument cluster (hereinafter only in the display) information and system messages are displayed.

When the system is activated, the warning light lights up P » Fig. 148 on page 155 - A.

The traction control system (TCS) must always be switched on when parking.

Finding a parking space

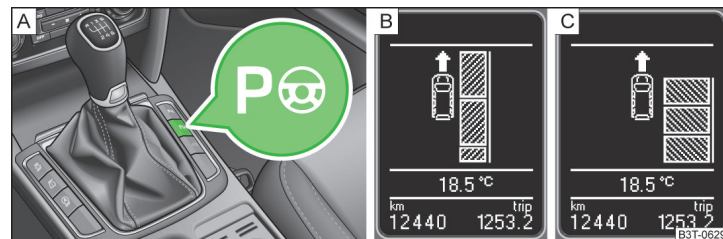


Fig. 148 System button / display

📖 Read and observe ! and ! on page 155 first.

Finding a parallel parking space

- Drive past the parking space at up to 40 km/h and a distance of 0.5 - 1.5 m.
- Press the symbol button » Fig. 148 P » once.

The display shows the following » Fig. 148 - B.

Finding a perpendicular parking space

- Drive past the parking space at up to 20 km/h and a distance of 0.5 - 1.5 m.
- Press **twice** the symbol button P » Fig. 148.

The display shows the following » Fig. 148 - [C].

The search area for the parking space on the driver's side is automatically indicated on the display.

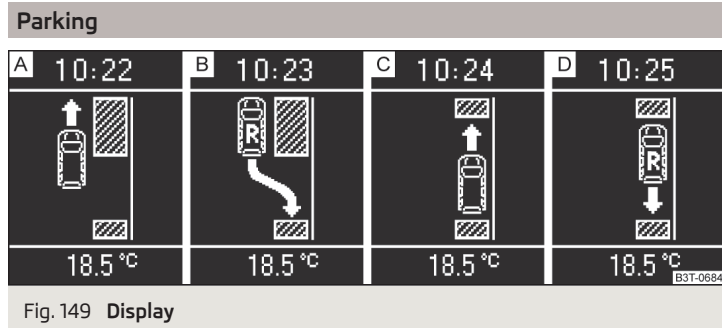
Activate the turn signal on the driver's side if you wish to park on this side of the road. In the display the search area for the parking space is indicated on the driver's side.

If suitable parking space is found, its parameters are stored until another suitable parking space has been found or until a distance of 10 m had been driven after finding the parking space.

To change the parking mode when searching for a parking space, press the P_{e} symbol button again.

i Note

If the symbol \ominus (km / h) is shown in the display, the vehicle speed should be reduced below 40 km / hr (parallel parking) or below 20 km / hr (Transverse parking).



Read and observe **R** and **P** on page 155 first.

Display

- A** Parking place recognised with the information to drive on.
- B** Parking place recognised with the information to engage the reverse gear.
- C** Indication for selecting the forward gear.
- D** Indication for selecting the reverse gear.

If the system has recognised a suitable parking space, this parking space is shown in the display » Fig. 149 - [A].

- ▶ Continue driving forwards until the display appears » Fig. 149 - [B].
- ▶ Stop and make sure that the vehicle does not move forward until the start of the parking procedure.
- ▶ Select reverse gear or move the selector lever into position **R**.
- ▶ As soon as the following message is shown in the display: **Steering int. active. Monitor area around veh.!**, let go of the steering wheel. The steering will be taken over by the system.
- ▶ Observe the direct vicinity of the vehicle and reverse carefully.

If necessary, the parking procedure can be continued with further steps.

- ▶ If the display of the arrow forward flashes » Fig. 149 - [C], then 1 Select gear or move the selector lever into position **D**.

The display shows the P icon (brake pedal).

- ▶ Depress the brake pedal and wait until the steering wheel automatically rotates into the required position, the symbol P goes out.
- ▶ Carefully drive forwards.
- ▶ If the backwards arrow is flashing in the display » Fig. 149 - [D], select reverse gear again or move the selector lever into position **R**.

The display shows the P icon (brake pedal).

- ▶ Depress the brake pedal and wait until the steering wheel automatically rotates into the required position, the symbol P goes out.
- ▶ Carefully move backwards.

These steps can be repeated several times one after the other.

As soon as the parking procedure is completed, an audible signal sounds and the following message appears in the display.

M Park Assist stopped. take over steering!

Automatic brake assist in speeding

If a velocity of 7 km / h is exceeded during the parking manoeuvre for the first time, the speed will be automatically reduced by the system to less than 7 km / h. This prevents the parking manoeuvre from aborting.

Automatic termination

The system cancels the parking procedure if one of the following cases occurs:

- ▶ A speed of 7 km / h is exceeded for the second time.
- ▶ The time limit of 6 minutes is exceeded.
- ▶ The system key is pressed.

- The ASR system is turned off.
- There is a driver intervention in the automatic steering operation (wheel stop).
- When there is a system fault (system temporarily not available).
- There is an automatic emergency braking.

If any of the above events occurs, the following message is displayed » [page 157](#).

Departing from a parallel parking space

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 155 first.

Manoeuvring out

- Press the symbol button » [Fig. 148 on page 155](#) **P** once.
- Activate the turn signal for side of the vehicle where the parking space is out of which you wish to manoeuvre.
- Select reverse gear or move the selector lever into position **R**.
- As soon as the following message is shown in the display: **Steering int. active. Monitor area around veh.!**, let go of the steering wheel. The steering will be taken over by the system.
- Observe the direct vicinity of the vehicle and reverse carefully.
- Follow the system instructions shown in the display.

As soon as the parking procedure is completed, an audible signal sounds and the following message appears in the information display:

M Please take over steering and drive on.

Automatic termination

The system terminates the manoeuvring procedure if one of the following cases arises.

- The system key is pressed.
- The ASR system is turned off.
- There is a driver intervention in the automatic steering operation (wheel stop).
- When there is a system fault (system temporarily not available).
- There is an automatic emergency braking.

If any of the above events occurs, the following message is displayed » [page 157](#).

Automatic emergency braking

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 155 first.

If the system detects a risk of collision during parking, automatic emergency braking takes place to prevent a collision.

The parking is terminated by the emergency braking.

! CAUTION

If the parking is aborted due to the speed exceeding 7 km / h for the second speed, then the automatic emergency braking is not triggered by the system!

Information messages

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 155 first.

M Park Assist: Speed too high.

If a speed of 50 km / h is exceeded while searching for a parking space, the system with the key symbol is **P** must be reactivated.

M Speed too high. take over steering!

The parking is terminated if the speed exceeds 7 km / hr.

M Steering intervention by the driver: take over steering!

The parking procedure is terminated due to a driver steering intervention.

M Park Assist stopped. ASR deactivated.

The parking procedure cannot be carried out because the TCS system is deactivated. Activate the TCS.

M ASR deactivated. take over steering!

The parking procedure was ended because TCS was deactivated during the parking procedure.

M Trailer: Park Assist stopped.

The parking procedure cannot be carried out because a trailer is hitched.

M Time limit exceeded. take over steering!

The parking procedure was ended because the time limit of 6 minutes was passed.

M Park Assist currently not available.

The system cannot be activated because a fault exists on the vehicle. Seek help from a specialist garage.

M Park Assist stopped. System currently unavailable.

The parking procedure was ended because a fault exists on the vehicle. Seek help from a specialist garage.

M Park Assist faulty. Workshop!

The parking procedure is not possible because a fault exists in the system. Seek help from a specialist garage.

M ASR intervention. take over steering!

The parking procedure is terminated by a TCS intervention.

M PARK ASSIST Turn on turn signal and select reverse gear

The prerequisites for manoeuvring out of a parking space using the system have been met. Switch on the turn signals and shift into reverse.

M Automatic space departure not possible. Space too small.

The manoeuvring procedure using the system is not possible. The parking gap is too small.

M Park Assist: Brake interv. Speed too high.

The speed was too high during the parking and was automatically reduced.

Cruise Control System


Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Activating/deactivating	158
Storing and maintaining speed	159
Changing the stored speed	159
Switching off temporarily	159

The Cruise Control System (CCS) maintains a set speed, more than 25 km/h, without you having to actuate the accelerator pedal.

This is only possible within the range which is permitted by the power output and braking power of the engine.

The warning light  illuminates in the instrument cluster when the cruise control system is switched on.

! WARNING

- For safety reasons, the cruise control system must not be used in dense traffic or on unfavourable road surfaces (such as icy roads, slippery roads, loose gravel) – risk of accident!
- The saved speed may only be resumed if it is not too high for the current traffic conditions.
- Always deactivate the cruise control system after use to prevent the system being switched on unintentionally.

! CAUTION

- The cruise control system is not able to maintain a constant speed when driving in areas with steeper gradients. The weight of the vehicle increases the speed at which it travels. In such cases, select a lower gear or brake the vehicle using the footbrake.
- The cruise control system cannot be activated when first gear or reverse gear is selected (vehicles with manual transmission).
- The cruise control system cannot be activated when the selector lever is in positions **P**, **N** or **R** (vehicles with automatic transmission).
- The cruise control system may automatically switch off when some brake assist systems (e.g. ESC) intervene, when the maximum permissible engine speed is exceeded, etc.

Activating/deactivating

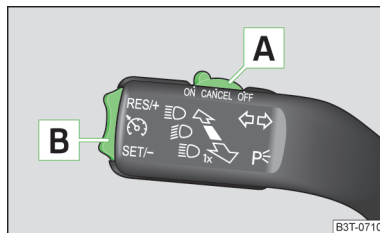


Fig. 150
Operating lever: Cruise control system controls

 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 158 first.

Activating

➤ Move switch **A** » Fig. 150 into the **ON** position.

Deactivating

➤ Move switch **A** » Fig. 150 into the **OFF** position.

Storing and maintaining speed

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 158 first.

- Activate the cruise control system » page 158.
- Drive at the desired speed.
- Push the rocker button **B** into the **SET/-** » Fig. 150 on page 158 position.

After you have released the rocker button **B** from the **SET/-** position, the speed you have just stored is kept constant without having to depress the accelerator.

Changing the stored speed

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 158 first.

Increasing the speed with the rocker button **B**

- Push the rocker button **B** into the **RES/+** » Fig. 150 on page 158 position.

If the rocker button is held in the **RES/+** position, the speed will increase continuously. Release the rocker button once the desired speed is reached. The set speed is then stored in the memory.

Decreasing the speed using the rocker button **B**

The stored speed can be **reduced** by pushing the rocker switch **B** into the **SET/-** » Fig. 150 on page 158 position.

If the rocker button is pressed and held in the **SET/-** position, the speed will decrease continuously. Release the rocker button once the desired speed is reached. The set speed is then stored in the memory.

If the rocker button is released at a speed of less than approx. 25 km/h, the speed is not stored and the memory is erased. Once the speed of the vehicle has increased to more than approx. 25 km/h, the speed must then be stored again by pushing the rocker button **B** into the **SET/-** position.

Increasing the speed with the accelerator

- Depress the accelerator pedal.

Releasing the accelerator pedal will cause the speed to drop again to the set speed.

Decreasing the speed with the brake pedal

The speed can also be reduced by depressing the brake pedal, which temporarily deactivates the system » page 159.

Switching off temporarily

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 158 first.

The cruise control system can be **temporarily deactivated** by pushing the switch **A** » Fig. 150 on page 158 into the spring-mounted **CANCEL** position or by depressing the brake or clutch pedal.

The set speed remains stored in the memory.

Briefly push the rocker button **B** into the **RES/+** position in order to **resume** the stored speed after the clutch or brake pedal is released.

START-STOP

📖 Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operating conditions of the system	160
Operation in vehicles with manual gearbox	160
Operation in vehicles with automatic gearbox	160
System related automatic start-up	161
Manually deactivating/activating the system	161
Information messages	161

The START-STOP system (hereinafter referred to as the system) saves fuel and reduces polluting emissions and CO₂ emissions by turning the engine off, e.g. when stopping at traffic lights, and starting the engine again when moving off.

! WARNING

- Never let the vehicle roll with the engine switched off.
- The brake servo unit and power steering only operate if the engine is running.

Operating conditions of the system



Fig. 151
Maxi DOT display: Engine is automatically switched off / automatic engine cut off is not possible

Read and observe **i** on page 159 first.

For system-dependent automatic engine shutdown to work, the following conditions must be met.

- ✓ The driver's door is closed.
- ✓ The driver has fastened the seat belt.
- ✓ The bonnet is closed.
- ✓ The driving speed was higher than 4 km.h after the last stop.
- ✓ No trailer is coupled.

Some additional conditions for the system to function correctly cannot be influenced or recognised by the driver. Therefore, the system can react differently in situations which are identical from the driver's perspective.

If after stopping the car, the message **UNABLE TO START STOP** appears in the segment display or the » Fig. 151 check mark appears in the MAXI DOT display, then the conditions for automatic engine shutdown are not met.

Running the engine is essential for the following reasons, for example.

- The engine temperature for the proper function of the system has not yet been reached.
- The charge state of the vehicle battery is too low.
- The current consumption is too high.
- High air-conditioning capacity (high fan speed, big difference between the desired and actual interior temperature).

i Note

- If the vehicle remains outdoors for a long time in minus temperatures or in direct sunlight, it can take several hours until the internal temperature of the vehicle battery reaches a suitable temperature for proper operation of the START STOP system.
- If the driver's seat belt is removed for more than approx. 30 seconds or the driver's door is opened during stop mode, the engine will have to be started manually.
- After the manual engine start and with a manual gearbox the automatic engine shutdown can take place only when a minimum distance required for the system function has been covered.

Operation in vehicles with manual gearbox

Read and observe **i** on page 159 first.

In compliance with the operating conditions, automatic engine shutdown / automatic engine start takes place as described.

Automatic engine shutdown

- Stop the vehicle.
- Put the gear stick into Neutral.
- Release the clutch pedal.

Automatic engine shutdown takes place, segment display shows **START STOP ACTIVE** or a check mark appears in the MAXI DOT display » Fig. 151 on page 160.

Automatic engine start

- Depress the clutch pedal.

The automatic start procedure takes place again.

Operation in vehicles with automatic gearbox

Read and observe **i** on page 159 first.

In compliance with the operating conditions, automatic engine shutdown / automatic engine start takes place as described.

Automatic engine shutdown

- Bring the vehicle to a stop and depress the brake pedal. ▶

Automatic engine shutdown takes place, segment display shows **START STOP ACTIVE** or a check mark appears in the MAXI DOT display (A) » Fig. 151 on page 160.

Automatic engine start

› Release the brake pedal.

The automatic start procedure takes place again.

Further information on automatic transmission

The automatic engine shut down takes place when the selector lever is in positions **P**, **D**, **S** and **N** and in Tiptronic mode.

When the selector lever is in position **P**, the engine remains shut down even after you release the brake pedal. The engine starts automatically by pressing the gas pedal or by moving the selector lever into a different mode and releasing the brake pedal.

If the engine is off due to the automatic and the selector lever is put to the **R** position then the automatic starts the engine.

If the gear selector is moved from position **R** to the position **D**, **S** or **N**, the vehicle must reach a speed of more than 10 km / h before the automatic engine shutdown starts.

There is no automatic engine shutdown when the system detects a vehicle moving due to a large steering angle.

No automatic engine shutdown takes place when the vehicle is moving at low speed (e.g. during a traffic jam or when tuning) and remains stationary after pressing the brake pedal lightly. Automatic engine shutdown takes place if you press the brake pedal down with more force.

System related automatic start-up

📖 **Read and observe** ! on page 159 first.

When the engine is off, the system can automatically start the engine before the desired journey continues. Some possible reasons for this are:

- › The vehicle begins to roll, e.g. on a slope.
- › The brake pedal has been actuated several times.
- › The current consumption is too high.


Manually deactivating/activating the system



Fig. 152
Button for the **START-STOP** system

📖 **Read and observe** ! on page 159 first.

Deactivating/activating

› Press the  button » Fig. 152.

When start-stop mode is deactivated, the indicator light in the button lights up.

i Note

If the system is deactivated when the engine is turned off automatically, then the automatic start process takes place.

Information messages

📖 **Read and observe** ! on page 159 first.

The messages and information are indicated in the instrument cluster display.

M **Start the engine manually!**

S **START MANUALLY**

One of the conditions for automatic engine start is not satisfied or the driver's seat belt is not fastened. The engine must be started manually.

On vehicles with the system KESSY the ignition is turned off by the first press of the start button, only after pressing for the second time is the start process initiated.

M **Error: Start-stop system**

S **ERROR START-STOP**

A system error is present. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Fatigue detection (break recommendation)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Function	162
Information messages	162

! WARNING

- For the driving ability is always the driver's responsibility. Never drive if you feel tired.
- The system may not detect all cases where a break is needed.
- Therefore, take regular, sufficient breaks during long trips.
- There will be no system warning during the so-called micro-sleep.

i Note

- In some situations, the system may evaluate the driving incorrectly and thus mistakenly recommend a break (e.g. sporty driving, adverse weather conditions or poor road conditions).
- The fatigue detection system is designed primarily for motorway driving.

Function

 Read and observe  on page 162 first.

The fatigue detection system advises the driver on the basis of information about the steering behaviour, to take a break from driving. The system recommends a break at speeds of 65-200 km/h.

After the ignition has been switched on, the system evaluates the steering behaviour for 15 minutes. This baseline analysis is constantly compared with the current steering behaviour.

If the system detects deviations from normal steering behaviour due to possible fatigue of the driver, it recommends to take a break from driving.

The system deletes the stored baseline analysis if one of the following conditions is met.

- > The vehicle is stopped and the ignition switched off.
- > The vehicle is stopped, the seat belt removed and the driver's door opened.
- > The vehicle is stopped for more than 15 minutes.


If none of these conditions are met or if the driving style is not changed, the system recommends a driving break again after 15 minutes.

Activation/deactivation

The system can be activated/deactivated via the MAXI DOT display in the **Wizards** menu option » [page 44](#).

Information messages

 Read and observe  on page 162 first.

In MAXI DOT display the icon appears for a few seconds  and the following message.

 **Fatigue detected. Take a break!**

An audible signal is also emitted.

Towing a trailer

Towing device

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Description	163
Adjusting the ready position	164
Fitting the ball head	164
Check proper fitting	165
Removing the ball head	165
Use and care	166

If your vehicle has already been factory-fitted with a towing device or is fitted with a towing device from ŠKODA Original Accessories, then it meets all of the technical requirements and national legal regulations for towing a trailer.

Your vehicle is fitted with a 13-pin power socket for the electrical connection between the vehicle and trailer. If the trailer that is to be towed has a **7-pin connector**, you can use a suitable adapter from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

The maximum trailer drawbar load is **80 kg**.

! WARNING

- Check that the tow bar is seated correctly and is secured in the mounting recess before the start of every journey.
- Do not use the tow bar if it is not correctly inserted and secured in the mounting recess.
- Do not use the towing device if it is damaged or if there are parts missing.
- Do not modify or adapt the towing device in any way.
- Never release the tow bar while the trailer is still coupled.

! CAUTION

Take care when handling the tow bar so as to avoid damaging the paintwork on the bumper.

Description

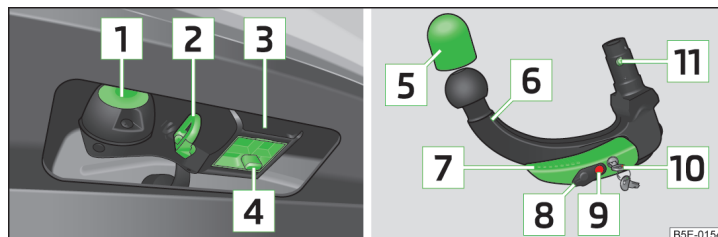


Fig. 153 Carrier for the towing device/tow bar

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 163 first.

The tow bar can be removed and is kept in the spare wheel compartment or in a compartment for the spare wheel in the boot » [page 201, Vehicle tool kit](#).

Image description » [Fig. 153](#)

- 1 13-pin power socket
- 2 Safety eyelet
- 3 Mounting recess
- 4 Cap
- 5 Dust cap
- 6 Tow ball
- 7 Operating lever
- 8 Lock cap
- 9 Release pin
- 10 Key
- 11 Locking ball

i Note

If you lose the key, please get in touch with a specialist garage.

Adjusting the ready position

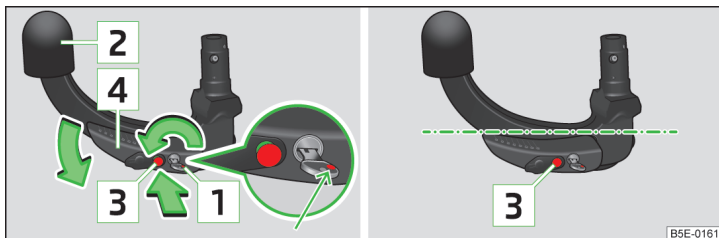


Fig. 154 Setting the ready position/ready position

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 163 first.

Always adjust the ball head in the ready position before fitting.

- › Turn the key **1** so that its red marking is visible » Fig. 154.
- › Grip the tow bar below the protective cap **2**.
- › Press the release pin **3** in the direction of the arrow to the stop, and simultaneously push the lever **4** downwards in the direction of the arrow to the stop.

The lever remains locked in this position.

! CAUTION

In the ready position, the key cannot be removed nor turned to a different position.

Fitting the ball head

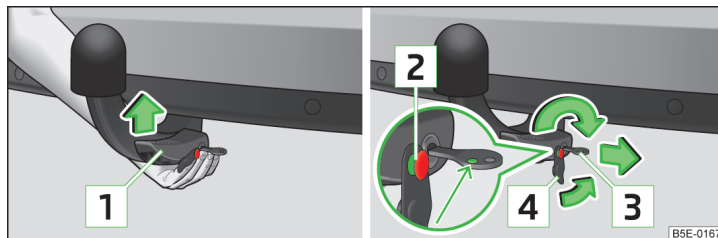


Fig. 155 Insert the ball head/lock the lock, and put the lock cover on

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 163 first.

- › Pull cap **4** » Fig. 153 on page 163 downwards.
- › Put the tow bar in the ready position » page 164.
- › Grip the tow bar **from underneath** » Fig. 155 and insert into the mounting recess until you hear it click into place » **!**.

The lever **1** automatically turns upwards and the release pin **2** pops out (its red and green parts are visible) » **!**.

If the lever **1** does not turn automatically, or if the release pin **2** does not pop out, remove the tow bar from the mounting recess by turning the lever downwards as far as it can go. Clean the tapered surfaces on the tow bar and the mounting recess.

- › Lock the lock on the operating lever by turning the key **3** by 180° to the right (see green marking 3 is visible) and remove the key in the direction of the arrow.
- › Insert the cap **4** onto the lock in the direction of the arrow » **!**.
- › Check that the tow bar is securely attached » page 165.

! WARNING

- Keep your hands outside the lever's range of motion when attaching the tow bar - risk of finger injuries!
- Never attempt to pull the operating lever upwards forcibly to turn the key. Doing so would mean the ball head is not attached correctly.

! CAUTION

- After removing the key, **always** replace the cap on the lock of the operating lever – risk of dirt getting into the lock.
- Keep the mounting recess of the towing equipment clean at all times. Such dirt prevents the ball head from being attached securely.
- After removing the ball head, always place the cap on the mounting recess.

Check proper fitting

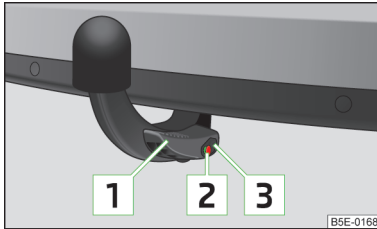


Fig. 156
Check that the tow bar is attached properly

📖 Read and observe ! and ! on page 163 first.

Check that the tow bar is fitted properly before each use.

Check the following points.

- ✓ Lever **1** is up as far as it goes » Fig. 156.
- ✓ The release pin **2** is completely exposed (both its red and green parts are visible).
- ✓ The key is removed.
- ✓ The cap **3** is on the lock of the operating lever.
- ✓ The tow bar does not come out of the mounting recess even after heavy "shaking".

! WARNING

Do not use the towing device unless the tow bar has been properly locked!

Removing the ball head

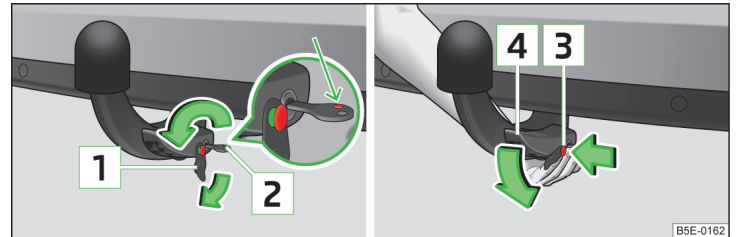


Fig. 157 Unlock the operating lever of the ball head/removing the ball head

📖 Read and observe ! and ! on page 163 first.

- Remove the cap **1** » Fig. 157 from the lock on the tow bar in the direction of the arrow.
- Unlock the lock on the operating lever by turning the key **2** 180° to the left so that the red marking becomes visible.
- Grasp the ball head from underneath.
- Press the release pin **3** in the direction of the arrow to the stop, and simultaneously push the lever **4** downwards in the direction of the arrow to the stop.

The ball head is released in this position and falls freely into the hand. If it does not fall freely into the hand, use your other hand to push it upwards.

At the same time, the tow bar latches into the ready position and is therefore ready to be re-inserted into the mounting recess » !.

- Place the cap **4** » Fig. 153 on page 163 onto the mounting recess.

! WARNING

Never allow the tow bar to remain unsecured in the boot. This could cause boot damage on sudden braking, and could put the safety of the occupants at risk.

! CAUTION

- If the lever is held firm and not pushed downwards as far as it can go, it will go back up after the ball head is removed and will not latch into the ready position. The tow bar will then need to be brought into this position before the next time it is fitted.
- Stow the ball head in the ready position with the key inserted in the box. When doing so, make the side opposite to the inserted key face downwards – there is a risk of damaging the key.
- Do not use excessive force when handling the operating lever (e.g. do not step on it).

i Note

- We recommend putting the protective cover onto the ball head before removing the tow bar.
- Clean any dirt from the tow bar before stowing it away in the box with the vehicle tool kit.

Use and care

📖 **Read and observe ! and ! on page 163 first.**

Close the mounting recess with the cover to prevent any dirt from getting in.

Always check the tow bar before hitching a trailer. Apply suitable grease where necessary.

Use the protective cover when stowing away the tow bar, in order to stop the boot from getting dirty.

In the event of dirt, clean the surfaces of the mounting recess and treat with a suitable preservative.

! CAUTION

Apply grease to the upper part of the mounting recess. Make sure you do not remove any grease.

Trailer

📖 Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Loading a trailer	166
Driving with a trailer	167

Trailer stabilisation (TSA)	168
Anti-theft alarm system	168

! WARNING

Always drive particularly carefully with the trailer.

Loading a trailer

📖 **Read and observe ! on page 166 first.**

The vehicle/trailer combination must be balanced, whereby the maximum permissible drawbar load must be utilised. If the drawbar load is too low, it jeopardises the performance of the vehicle/trailer combination.

Distribution of the load

Distribute the load in the trailer in such a way that heavy items are located as close to the axle as possible. Secure the items from slipping.

The distribution of the weight is very poor if your vehicle is unladen and the trailer is laden. Maintain a particularly low speed if you cannot avoid driving with this combination.

Tyre pressure

Correct the tyre inflation pressure on your vehicle for a "full load" » [page 194](#), *Service life of tyres*.

Trailer load

The permissible trailer load must not be exceeded under any circumstances » [page 224](#), *Technical data*.

The trailer loads specified apply only to **altitudes** up to 1 000 metres above mean sea level.

The engine output falls as altitude increases, as does the vehicle's climbing power. Therefore, for every additional 1000 m in height (or part), the maximum permissible towed weight must be reduced by 10%.

The towed weight is made up of the actual weights of the loaded towing vehicle and the loaded trailer.

The trailer and drawbar load information on the type plate of the towing device is merely a test value for the towing device. The vehicle-specific values are detailed in the vehicle documents. ▶

! WARNING

- Do not exceed the maximum permissible axle and drawbar load and the maximum permissible total or towed weight of the vehicle and the trailer – risk of accident and serious injury.
- Slipping loads can significantly impair the stability and safety of the vehicle/trailer combination – risk of accident and serious injury.

Driving with a trailer

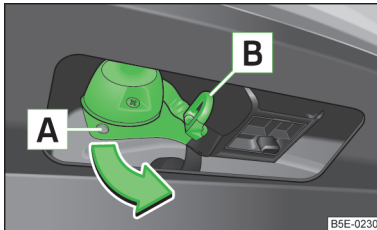


Fig. 158
Swivel out the 13-pin power socket

📖 Read and observe ! on page 166 first.

Before the journey

- Grip the 13-pin socket at point **A** and swing out in the direction of arrow » Fig. 158.
- Lift off protective cap **5** » Fig. 153 on page 163.

After the journey

- Grip the 13-pin socket at point **A** and swing in the opposite direction to the arrow » Fig. 158.
- Place the protective cover **5** » Fig. 153 on page 163 onto the tow bar.

Safety eyelet

The purpose of the safety eyelet **B** » Fig. 158 is to attach the breakaway cable of the trailer.

When attaching the breakaway cable to the safety eyelet, it must **sag** freely against the vehicle in all trailer positions (sharp bends, in reverse etc.).

Exterior mirrors

You have to have additional exterior mirrors fitted if you are not able to see the traffic behind the trailer with the standard rear-view mirrors. The national legal requirements must be observed.

Headlights

The front of the vehicle may lift up when a trailer is being towed and the headlights may dazzle other road users.

Adjust the headlights using the headlight beam control » page 66, *Parking and low beam lights*.

Driving speed

For safety reasons, do not drive faster than 80 km/h when towing a trailer.

Immediately reduce your speed as soon as even the slightest swaying of the trailer is detected. Never attempt to stop the trailer from "swaying" by accelerating.


Brakes

Apply the brakes in good time! If the trailer is fitted with a **trailer brake**, apply the brakes gently at first, then brake firmly. This will avoid brake jolts resulting from the trailer wheels locking.

On downhill sections shift down a gear in good time to also use the engine as a brake.

Engine overheating

The speed must be reduced immediately if the needle for the coolant temperature gauge moves into the right-hand area or the red area of the scale.

Stop and switch off the engine if the indicator light  in the instrument cluster lights up. Wait a few minutes and check the level of coolant » page 188, *Checking the coolant level*.

The following guidelines must be observed » page 34,  *Coolant*.

The coolant temperature can be reduced by switching on the heating.

! WARNING

- Never use the safety eyelet for towing!
- Adapt your speed to the conditions of the road surface and to the traffic situation.
- Improper or incorrectly connected electric cables can energise the trailer and cause functional faults to the vehicle's entire electrical system as well as accidents and severe injuries.
- Work on the electrical system must only be carried out by specialist garages.
- Never directly connect the trailer's electrical system with the electrical connections for the tail lights or other current sources.


i Note

- After coupling the trailer and connecting the power socket, check that the rear lights on the trailer are working correctly.
- If there is an error in the trailer lighting, check the fuses in the fuse box in the dash panel » [page 216](#).
- Contact between the breakaway cable and the safety eyelet can result in mechanical wear on the surface protection of the eyelet. Such wear does not impair the functioning of the safety eyelet and does not constitute a fault. It is excluded from the warranty coverage.
- If you tow a trailer frequently, you should also have your vehicle inspected between service intervals.
- The handbrake on the towing vehicle must be applied when coupling and uncoupling the trailer.



Trailer stabilisation (TSA)

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 166 first.

The trailer stabilisation is an extension of the stabilisation control that works in conjunction with the counter-steering assistance to reduce the amount the trailer "sways".

After turning on the ignition, the ESC indicator light  in the instrument cluster lights up for about 2 seconds longer than the ABS indicator light.

Function requirements for trailer stabilisation.

- ✓ The coupling device was factory-fitted or purchased from the ŠKODA Original Accessories.
- ✓ The ESC is active. (Warning lights  or  do **not** illuminate in the instrument cluster).
- ✓ The trailer is electrically connected to the towing vehicle via the trailer socket.
- ✓ The speed is higher than approx. 60 km/h.
- ✓ The trailer has a rigid drawbar.

! WARNING

The increased safety offered by the trailer stabilisation must not tempt you to take greater risks than otherwise.

! CAUTION

- The trailer stabilisation need not be able to correctly detect all of driving situations.
- Light trailers that sway are not always detected and therefore stabilised accordingly by the trailer stabilisation.
- Release the pressure on the accelerator pedal if the system is being regulated.
- Avoid abrupt and sudden driving/braking manoeuvres.

i Note

The trailer stabilisation works for both braked and unbraked trailers.

Anti-theft alarm system

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 166 first.

When the vehicle is locked, the alarm is activated when the electrical connection to the trailer is interrupted.

Always switch off the anti-theft alarm system before a trailer is coupled or uncoupled » [page 54](#).

Conditions for including a trailer in the anti-theft alarm system.

- ✓ The vehicle is factory-fitted with an anti-theft alarm system and towing device.
- ✓ The trailer is electrically connected to the towing vehicle via the trailer socket.
- ✓ The electrical system of the vehicle and trailer is functional.
- ✓ The vehicle is locked with the vehicle key and the anti-theft alarm system is activated.

i Note

For technical reasons, trailers with rear LED lights cannot be connected to the anti-theft alarm system.

General Maintenance

Car care

Services, modifications, and technical alterations

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Tests required by law	169
ŠKODA Service Partners	170
ŠKODA Original Parts	170
ŠKODA Original Accessories	170
Spoiler	171
Airbags	171

The instructions and guidelines from ŠKODA AUTO a.s. must be observed when carrying out any modifications, repairs or technical alterations to your vehicle.

Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep your vehicle in a good technical condition. After carrying out modifications, repairs or technical alterations, the vehicle will comply with German road transport regulations (StVZO)

Always consult a ŠKODA Partner » [page 170](#) before buying accessories or parts, or before carrying out any modifications, repairs or technical alterations to your vehicle.

WARNING

- If work on your vehicle is not carried out properly, this can lead to operational faults - risk of accident and serious injuries.
- We recommend only having these modifications and technical alterations carried out by a specialist garage.

WARNING (Continued)

- Interference on the electronic components and their software can lead to operational faults. This interference can also impair not directly affected systems because of the networking of the electronic components. The operational safety of the vehicle may be at significant risk and can lead to increased wear of parts.
- The ŠKODA Partner accepts no liability for products that have not been approved by ŠKODA AUTO a.s. even though these may be products with an operational approval or that have been approved by a government testing institute.

WARNING

- We advise you only to use ŠKODA Original Accessories and ŠKODA Original Parts which have been expressly approved for use on your vehicle. Reliability, safety and suitability for your vehicle are guaranteed with these.
- ŠKODA Original Accessories and ŠKODA Original Parts can be purchased from ŠKODA Partners, who will also perform the professional assembly of the purchased parts.

For the sake of the environment

Technical documents regarding alterations carried out on the vehicle must be kept by the vehicle user in order to be handed over to the recyclers at a later date. This ensures that the vehicle is recycled in an environmentally sound manner.

Note

Any damage caused by technical alterations made without the approval of the manufacturer is excluded from the warranty » *Service schedule*.

Tests required by law

 **Read and observe  on page 169 first.**

Many countries have legislation which require that the reliability and roadworthiness and/or exhaust gas composition of a vehicle must be tested at specific intervals. These tests can be carried out by workshops or checking stations that have been legally authorized for this purpose. ►

The ŠKODA service partners have been informed about the necessary legal tests and will prepare the vehicle for the tests in a service operation at the customer's discretion, or will ensure that these tests are carried out. The specialist garages can carry out the specified tests directly at the customer's discretion, if they are designated for such a procedure. This saves you time and money.

Even if you want to take your vehicle to an officially approved test centre for prior checking in preparation of a legally required test, we recommend that you consult the service consultant of your ŠKODA service partner beforehand.

The service consultant will tell you which areas, according to his appraisal, you should focus on in order that your vehicle may pass the technical test without any problems. In this way, you can avoid additional expenses resulting from a possible subsequent test.

ŠKODA Service Partners

 **Read and observe**  on page 169 first.

ŠKODA Service Partners feature modern, specially developed tools and equipment. Here, trained specialists have access to a comprehensive range of ŠKODA Original Parts and ŠKODA Original Accessories for carrying out modifications, repairs and technical alterations.

All ŠKODA service partners operate according to the most recent guidelines and instructions from ŠKODA AUTO a.s. All service and repair work is therefore carried out on time and at the appropriate quality. Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep your vehicle in a good technical condition.

ŠKODA Service Partners are therefore properly prepared to service your vehicle and to provide quality work. We therefore advise you to have all modifications, repairs and technical alterations to your vehicle carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

ŠKODA Original Parts

 **Read and observe**  on page 169 first.

We recommend the use of ŠKODA Genuine Parts for your vehicle, since these parts are approved by ŠKODA AUTO a.s. They correspond exactly to the ŠKODA AUTO a.s. regulations in regard to design, dimensional accuracy and material, and are identical to the components used in the batch production.

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. is able to warrant the safety, suitability, and long life of these products. Therefore, we recommend that you only use ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. supplies the market with a complete range of ŠKODA Genuine Parts not only while the model is still in production but for at least 15 years after the end of series production; the market is supplied with wear-and-tear parts and for at least 10 years with equipment parts.

ŠKODA service partners are liable for any ŠKODA original part defects for a period of 2 years after sale in accordance with the materials defect liability, provided that nothing else was agreed in the purchase agreement. You should keep the approved warranty certificate and the bill for these components for this period of time, so that the commencement of the term may be verified.

Body repairs

ŠKODA vehicles are designed so that if the body suffers damage, it is only necessary to replace those parts which are in fact damaged.

Before you decide to have damaged body parts replaced, however, you should first of all contact your specialist garage to determine whether or not such parts can also be repaired. Repairs to body parts are usually cheaper.

ŠKODA Original Accessories

 **Read and observe**  on page 169 first.

If you wish to fit accessories to your vehicle, you should remember the following:

We recommend that you use ŠKODA Genuine Accessories in your vehicle. ŠKODA AUTO a.s. has selected such accessories to ensure that they are reliable, safe and suitable for your particular vehicle. Although we constantly monitor the market, we are not able to assess or warrant the parts even though in some instances such parts may have a type approval or may have been approved by a nationally recognised testing laboratory.

All accessory products go through a fastidious process in the area of technical development (technical tests) and quality inspection (customer tests), and only if all tests are positive does the product become a ŠKODA Genuine Accessory.

Our ŠKODA Genuine Accessories service also provides expert advice, and professional fitting at the customer's discretion. ▶

ŠKODA service partners are liable for any ŠKODA Genuine Part defects for a period of 2 years after installation or delivery in accordance with the materials defect liability, provided that nothing else was agreed in the purchase contract or in any other agreements. You should keep the approved warranty certificate and the bill for these components for this period of time, so that commencement of the term may be verified.

In addition, ŠKODA Service Partners also stock a range of suitable car care products as well as those parts which are subject to natural wear-and-tear, such as tyres, batteries, bulbs and wiper blades.

I Note

The accessories authorized by the company ŠKODA AUTO a.s. will be offered by the ŠKODA partners in all countries where the company ŠKODA AUTO a.s. has a sales and service network. This will usually be in the form of a printed catalogue of Original ŠKODA Accessories, in the form of separate printed brochures or in the form of offers for ŠKODA Genuine Accessories on the ŠKODA partner web pages.

Spoiler

 **Read and observe  on page 169 first.**

If your new vehicle is fitted with a **spoiler** on the front bumper in combination with the **spoiler** on the luggage compartment lid, the following instructions must be adhered to.

- For safety reasons, the vehicle must only be fitted with a spoiler on the front bumper in combination with the associated spoiler on the luggage compartment lid.
- This kind of spoiler cannot be left on the front bumper either on its own, in combination with another spoiler not on the luggage compartment lid or in combination with an unsuitable spoiler on the luggage compartment lid.
- We recommend that you consult the ŠKODA Service Partner for any repairs to or replacement, addition or removal of spoilers.

! WARNING

If work on your vehicle's spoilers is not carried out properly, this can lead to operational faults - risk of accident and serious injuries.

Airbags

 **Read and observe  on page 169 first.**

The system components of the airbag system can be situated in the front bumper, doors, front seats, roof lining or body.

! WARNING

Any work on the airbag system including the installation and removal of system components due to other repair work (e.g. removal of the steering wheel) must only be carried out by a specialist garage.

- Modifications, repairs and technical alterations that have been carried out unprofessionally can cause damage and operational faults, and can also seriously impair the effectiveness of the airbag system - risk of accident and fatal injury!
- The airbag system must then be replaced if the airbag has been deployed. Airbag modules cannot be repaired.

! WARNING

Information on the use of the airbag system

- It is prohibited to manipulate individual parts of the airbag system, as this might result in the airbag being deployed.
- Never install any airbag parts into the vehicle that have been removed from old cars or have been recycled.
- Never install damaged airbag parts in the vehicle. The airbags may then not be deployed properly or even at all in the event of an accident.
- No modifications of any kind must be made to parts of the airbag system.

! WARNING

- A change to the vehicle's wheel suspension, including the use of non-approved wheels and tire combinations, can alter the functioning of the airbag system - risk of accident and fatal injury!
- Never make any changes to the front bumper or the bodywork.

WARNING

The airbag control unit operates using pressure sensors located in the front doors. For this reason, no adjustments may be carried out to the doors or door panels (e.g. installation of additional loudspeakers). Resulting damage can have a negative impact on the function of the airbag system. Any work on the front doors and door panels must be carried out by a specialist garage. The following guidelines must be observed.

- Never drive with inner door panels removed.
- Never drive if parts of the inner door panel have been removed and the resulting openings have not been properly sealed.
- Never drive if the loudspeakers in the doors have been removed, unless the loudspeaker openings have been properly sealed.
- Always make sure that the openings are covered or filled if additional loudspeakers or other equipment parts have been installed in the inner door panels.

Washing your car

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Washing by hand	172
Automatic car wash systems	173
Washing with a high-pressure cleaner	173

The best way to protect your vehicle against harmful environmental influences is **frequency** washing.

How often the vehicle should be washed depends on factors such as:

- Frequency of use.
- Parking situation (garage, under trees etc.).
- Season.
- Weather conditions.
- Environmental influences.

The longer insect residues, bird droppings, tree sap, road and industrial dust, tar, soot particles, road salt and other aggressive deposits remain adhering to the paintwork of your vehicle, the more detrimental their destructive effect can be. High temperatures, such as those caused by intensive sun's rays, accentuate this caustic effect.

It is essential to also thoroughly clean the **underside of the vehicle** at the end of the winter.

WARNING

- When washing your vehicle in the winter: Water and ice in the braking system can affect the braking efficiency – risk of accident!
- Only wash the vehicle when the ignition is switched off – risk of accident!

CAUTION

Do not wash your vehicle in bright sunlight – risk of paint damage.

For the sake of the environment

Only wash the vehicle at washing bays intended for this purpose.

Washing by hand

 Read and observe  and  on page 172 first.

Soak the dirt with plenty of water and rinse as well as possible.

Clean the vehicle with a soft **sponge**, a **washing glove** or a **washing brush**. Work from the top to the bottom – starting with the roof.

Only use a **car shampoo** for stubborn dirt.

Wash out the sponge or washing glove thoroughly at short intervals.

Clean wheels, door sills and similar parts last. Use a second sponge for such areas.

Give the vehicle a good rinse after washing it and dry it off using a chamois leather.

CAUTION

- When washing the car by hand, protect your hands and arms from sharp-edged metal parts (e.g. when cleaning the under floor, the inside of the wheel housings or the wheel trims, etc.). - There is a risk of cuts!
- Only apply slight pressure when cleaning the vehicle's paintwork.

Automatic car wash systems

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 172 first.

The usual precautionary measures must be taken before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash system (e.g. closing the windows and the sliding/tilting roof etc.).

If your vehicle is fitted with any particular attached parts, such as a spoiler, roof rack system, two-way radio aerial etc., it is best to consult the operator of the car wash system beforehand.

After an automatic wash with wax treatment, the lips of the wipers should be cleaned with cleaning agents specially designed for the purpose, and then degreased.

! WARNING

Fold in the exterior mirrors to prevent damage before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash system. Never manually fold in electric exterior mirrors - always use the electric controls.

Washing with a high-pressure cleaner

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 172 first.

When washing the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner, the instructions for use of the equipment must be observed. This applies in particular to the **pressure** used and to the **spraying distance**.

Maintain a sufficiently large distance to the parking aid sensors and soft materials such as rubber hoses or insulation material.

! WARNING

Never use circular spray nozzles or dirt cutters!

! CAUTION

- If washing the vehicle in the winter using a hose or high-pressure cleaner, ensure that the jet of water is not aimed directly at the locking cylinders or the door/panel joints - risk of freezing!
- To avoid damaging the parking aid sensors while cleaning with high-pressure cleaners or steam jets, the sensors must only be directly sprayed for short periods while a minimum distance of 10 cm must be observed.

- The temperature of the water used for cleaning must not exceed 60 °C - risk of damaging the vehicle.
- See also Washing cars with decorative films using a high-pressure cleaner » page 175 .

Taking care of your vehicle exterior

📖 Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Taking care of your vehicle's paintwork	174
Plastic parts	174
Rubber seals	174
Chrome parts	174
Decorative films	175
Windows and exterior mirrors	175
Headlight lenses	175
Door lock cylinders	175
Cavity protection	176
Wheels	176
Underbody protection	176

Regular and proper care help to retain the efficiency and **value** of your vehicle. It may also be one of the requirements for the acceptance of warranty claims relating to corrosion damage and paint defects on the bodywork.

We recommend using vehicle care products from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These are available from ŠKODA Partners. The usage instructions on the package must be observed.

! WARNING

- Vehicle care products may be harmful to your health if not used according to the instructions.
- Always keep the vehicle care products safe from people who are not completely independent, e.g. children - there is a danger of poisoning!
- Protect your hands and arms from sharp-edged metal parts when cleaning the underfloor, the inside of the wheel housings or the wheel trims - risk of cuts!

CAUTION

- Do not use any insect sponges, rough kitchen sponges or similar cleaning products – risk of damaging the paintwork surface.
- Cleaner that contain solvents can damage the material being cleaned.

For the sake of the environment

Used cans of vehicle care product represent hazardous waste that is harmful to the environment. These must be disposed of in accordance with national legislation.

Note

Because of the special tools and knowledge required, and to avoid any potential problems with the cleaning and care of the interior of your vehicle, we recommend that cleaning and care of the interior of your vehicle be carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

Taking care of your vehicle's paintwork

 Read and observe  and  on page 173 first.

Minor paint damage such as scratches, scuffs or stone chips should be treated immediately if possible, using **touch-up pens** or **sprays**.

Preserving the vehicle paintwork

A thorough wax treatment provides the vehicle's paintwork with highly effective protection against harmful environmental influences.

The vehicle must be treated with a high-quality hard wax polish at the latest, when no more drops form on the clean paintwork.

A new layer of a high-quality hard wax polish can be applied to the clean bodywork after it has dried thoroughly.

Even if you use a wax preserver regularly we still recommend that you treat the paintwork of the vehicle at least twice a year with hard wax.

Polishing

Polishing is necessary if the vehicle's paintwork has become unattractive and if it is no longer possible to achieve a gloss with wax preservatives.

If the polish does not contain any preserving elements, the paint must be treated with a preservative afterwards.

CAUTION

- Never apply wax to the windows.
- Mat painted or plastic parts must not be treated with polishing products or hard waxes.
- Do not polish the paintwork in a dusty environment - risk of paint scratches.
- Do not apply any paint care products to door seals or window guides.
- If possible, do not apply any paint care products to parts of the bodywork that come into contact with door seals or window guides.

Plastic parts

 Read and observe  and  on page 173 first.

Clean plastic parts with a damp cloth.

If this method does not completely clean the plastic parts, use cleaning products specially designed for this purpose.

CAUTION

Do not use paint care products on plastic parts.

Rubber seals

 Read and observe  and  on page 173 first.

All door seals and window guides are factory-treated with a colourless matt varnish layer to prevent the freezing of painted body parts and to protect against driving noise.

Do not treat the door seals and window guides with any products **whatsoever**.

CAUTION

Applying additional treatments to the seals can corrode the protective coating, and driving noise may occur.

Chrome parts

 Read and observe  and  on page 173 first.

First clean the chrome parts with a damp cloth and then polish them with a soft, dry cloth.

If this method does not completely clean chrome parts, use a specific chrome care product. ▶

CAUTION

Do not polish the chrome parts in a dusty environment - risk of surface scratches.

Decorative films

 Read and observe  and  on page 173 first.

Wash the films with a mild soap solution and clean, warm water. Never use harsh cleaning products or chemical solvents, as this could damage the films.

The following instructions must be followed when washing the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner:

- The minimum distance between the nozzle and the vehicle body should be 50 cm.
- Keep jet perpendicular to the film surface.
- The maximum water temperature is 50 °C.
- The maximum water pressure is 80 bar.

CAUTION

In the winter months, do not use an ice scraper to remove ice and snow from the areas with films. Do not use any other objects to remove frozen layers of snow or ice - risk of film damage.

Windows and exterior mirrors

 Read and observe  and  on page 173 first.

Use a plastic ice scraper for removing snow and ice from the windows and mirrors.

Regularly clean windows from the inside with clean water.

Dry the glass surfaces with a clean chamois leather or a cloth intended for this purpose.

When drying the windows after washing the vehicle, do not use window leathers that have been used to polish the bodywork. Residues of preservatives in the window leather can make the window dirty and reduce visibility.

CAUTION

- The ice scraper should not be moved forward and backward but in one direction to avoid any damage to the surface of the glass.
- Snow or ice that is contaminated with coarse dirt such as fine gravel, sand or salt must not be removed from the windows and mirrors - there is a risk of damage to the surface of the windows and mirrors.
- Do not remove snow or ice from glass parts using warm or hot water - risk of cracks forming in the glass.
- When removing snow or ice from windows and mirror lenses ensure that the paintwork of the vehicle is not damaged.
- Do not clean the inside of the windows with sharp-edged objects or corrosive and acidic cleaning agents - there is a risk of damaging the heating elements or window aerial.

Headlight lenses

 Read and observe  and  on page 173 first.

Clean plastic front headlight lenses using clean, warm water and soap.

CAUTION

- Never wipe headlights with a dry cloth.
- Do not use any sharp objects to clean the plastic lenses, as this may damage the protective paintwork and consequently cause cracks to form on the headlight lenses.
- Do not use any harsh cleaning products or chemical solvents to clean the headlights, as this could damage the headlight lenses.

Door lock cylinders

 Read and observe  and  on page 173 first.

Specific products must be used for de-icing door lock cylinders.

CAUTION

When washing your vehicle, ensure as little water as possible gets into the locking cylinders.

Cavity protection

 Read and observe  and  on page 173 first.

All the cavities of your vehicle which are at risk from corrosion are protected for life by a layer of **protective wax** applied in the factory.

This wax protection does not need to be inspected or re-applied.

If any small amount of wax flow out of the cavities at high temperatures, these must be removed with a plastic scraper and the stains cleaned using a petroleum cleaner.

WARNING

Safety regulations should be observed when using petroleum cleaner to remove wax - risk of fire!

Wheels

 Read and observe  and  on page 173 first.

Wheel rims

Also thoroughly wash the wheel rims when washing the vehicle on a regular basis.

Regularly remove salt and brake abrasion, otherwise the rim material will be corroded.

Damage to the paint layer on the wheel rims must be touched up immediately.

Light alloy wheels

After washing thoroughly and treat the wheel rims with a protective product for light alloy wheels. Products which cause abrasion must not be used to treat the wheel rims.

CAUTION

Severe layers of dirt on the wheels can also result in wheel imbalance. This may show itself in the form of a wheel vibration which is transmitted to the steering wheel which, in certain circumstances, can cause premature wear of the steering. This means it is necessary to remove the dirt.

Underbody protection

 Read and observe  and  on page 173 first.

The underside of your vehicle is protected for life against chemical and mechanical influences.

It is not possible to guarantee that the **protective coating** will not suffer any damage as the vehicle is driven.

We recommend having the protective coating underneath the vehicle and the chassis checked — preferably before the beginning of winter and at the end of winter.

WARNING

Never use additional underbody protection or anti-corrosion agents for exhaust pipes, catalytic converters, diesel particle filters or heat shields. When the engine reaches its operating temperature, these substances may ignite - risk of fire!

Taking care of the interior

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Natural leather	_____	177
Artificial leather, cloths and Alcantara®	_____	178
Seat covers	_____	178
Seat belts	_____	178

Regular and proper care help to retain the efficiency and **value** of your vehicle.

We recommend using vehicle care products from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These are available from ŠKODA Partners. The usage instructions on the package must be observed.

WARNING

- Vehicle care products may be harmful to your health if not used according to the instructions.
- Always keep the vehicle care products safe from people who are not completely independent, e.g. children - there is a danger of poisoning!

CAUTION

- Be sure to check clothing for colourfastness to avoid any damage or visible stains on the material (leather), panels and textiles.
- Remove fresh stains such as those from ball-point pens, ink, lipstick, shoe polish, etc., from the material (leather), panels and textiles as quickly as possible.
- Air fresheners and scents can be hazardous to health when the temperature inside the vehicle is high.
- Do not attach scents or air fresheners to the dash panel - there is a risk of damage to the dash panel.
- Do not stick any stickers on the inside of the rear windows, the rear side windows and in the vicinity of the heating elements on the windscreen or near the window aerial. These may get damaged.
- Do not clean the roof panelling with a brush - risk of damage to the surface of the panelling.
- Cleaner that contain solvents can damage the material being cleaned.
- Apply only a small amount of the cleaning and care product.

For the sake of the environment

Used cans of vehicle care product represent hazardous waste that is harmful to the environment. These must be disposed of in accordance with national legislation.

Note

Because of the special tools and knowledge required, and to avoid any potential problems with the cleaning and care of the interior of your vehicle, we recommend that cleaning and care of the interior of your vehicle be carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

Natural leather


 Read and observe  and  on page 176 first.

Leather is a natural material with specific properties, and requires regular cleaning and maintenance.

The leather should be cleaned on a regular basis depending on the amount of wear-and-tear.

Dust and dirt in the pores and folds act as abrasive materials. This leads to severe corrosion and the premature brittleness of the leather surface.

We recommend that you remove dust **regularly and at short intervals** using a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Clean soiled leather surfaces with a water-dampened cotton or woollen cloth and then dry with a clean, dry cloth » .

Clean **severely soiled areas** with a cloth soaked in a mild soap solution (2 tablespoons of neutral soap to 1 litre of water).

To **remove stains**, use a cleaning agent specially designed for this purpose.

Treat the leather regularly and at suitable intervals using a suitable leather care product.

CAUTION

- Ensure that no part of the leather is soaked through during cleaning and that no water gets into the seams. Otherwise, the leather could become brittle or cracked.
- Avoid leaving the vehicle for lengthy periods in bright sunlight to avoid the leather from bleaching. If the vehicle is parked in the open for lengthy periods, protect the leather from direct sunlight by covering it.
- Sharp-edged objects on items of clothing such as zip fasteners, rivets, sharp-edged belts, jewellery and pendants may leave permanent scratches or signs of rubbing on the surface. Such damage cannot be subsequently recognised as a justified complaint.
- The use of a mechanical steering wheel lock may damage the leather surface of the steering wheel.
- Use a care cream with light blocker and impregnation effect on a regular basis and each time after cleaning. The cream nourishes the leather, allows it to breathe and keeps it supple and also provides moisture. It also creates surface protection.
- Some clothing materials, e.g. dark denim, do not have sufficient colour fastness. This can cause damage or clearly visible discolouration to seat covers, even when used correctly. This applies particularly to light-coloured seat covers. This does not relate to a fault in the seat cover, but rather to poor colour fastness of the clothing textiles.

Note

When using the vehicle, minor visible changes may occur to the leather parts of the covers (e.g. wrinkles or creases) as a result of the stress applied to the covers.

Artificial leather, cloths and Alcantara®

 Read and observe  and  on page 176 first.

Artificial leather

Clean artificial leather with a damp cloth.

If this method does not completely clean the artificial leather, use a mild soap solution or cleaning products specially designed for this purpose.

Fabric

Clean upholstery cover materials and cloth trims on doors, boot cover, etc. using specific cleaning agents, e.g., dry foam.

Use a soft sponge, brush, or commercially available microfibre cloth.

Use a cloth and special detergent to clean the roof trim.

Remove any lumps on the cover fabric and any fabric residue using a brush.

Remove stubborn hair using a "cleaning glove".

Alcantara®

Dust and fine dirt particles in pores, creases and seams may chafe and damage the surface.

If you leave your vehicle parked in the open for lengthy periods, protect the Alcantara® seat covers from the direct rays of the sun to prevent fading.

Minor changes in colour caused by use are normal.

CAUTION

- Do not use any leather cleaners on Alcantara® seat covers.
- For Alcantara® seat covers do not use any solvents, floor wax, shoe cream, stain remover, or similar agents.
- Avoid leaving the vehicle in bright sunlight for long periods of time in order to stop the fabric from bleaching. If the vehicle is parked outside for long periods of time, cover the fabric to protect it from direct sunlight.
- Some clothing materials, e.g. dark denim, do not have sufficient colour fastness. This can cause damage or clearly visible discolouration to seat covers, even when used correctly. This applies particularly to light-coloured seat covers. This does not relate to a fault in the seat cover, but rather to poor colour fastness of the clothing textiles.

Seat covers

 Read and observe  and  on page 176 first.

Electrically heated seats

Do not clean the covers **by moistening**, as this can damage the seat heating system.

Use a specific cleaning agent such as dry foam or similar to clean the covers.

Seats without seat heating

Thoroughly vacuum the seat covers with a vacuum cleaner before cleaning.

Clean the seat covers with a damp cloth or cleaning products specially designed for this purpose.

Indented points arising on the fabrics by everyday use, can be removed by brushing against the direction of hair with a damp brush.

Always clean all parts of the covers, so that there are no visible edges. Then allow the seat to dry completely.

CAUTION

- Regularly remove dust from the seat covers using a vacuum cleaner.
- Electrically heated seats must not be dried after cleaning by switching on the heater.
- Do not sit on wet seats - risk of seat deformation.
- Always clean the seats "from seam to seam".

Seat belts

 Read and observe  and  on page 176 first.

The belt webbing must always be kept clean.

Wash dirty seat belts with mild soapy water.

Remove coarse dirt with a soft brush.

Dirty belt webbing may impair the correct functioning of the inertia reel.

WARNING

- The seat belts must not be removed for cleaning.
- Never clean the seat belts chemically as chemical cleaning products could destroy the fabric.

! WARNING (Continued)

- The seat belts must not be allowed to come into contact with corrosive liquids (e.g. acids).
- Check the condition of all the seat belts on a regular basis. If any damage to the belt webbing, seat belt connections, inertia reel or lock is detected, the seat belt must be replaced by a specialist garage.
- The seat belts must be fully dried before being rolled up.


Inspecting and replenishing

Fuel

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Refuelling	180
Unleaded petrol	180
Diesel fuel	181

The correct grades of fuel for your vehicle are stated on a sticker affixed to the inside of the fuel filler flap » [Fig. 159 on page 180](#) - .

! WARNING

The national legal requirements must be observed if carrying a spare canister in the vehicle. We do not recommend carrying any fuel canisters in your vehicle for safety reasons. In the event of an accident, these canisters can become damaged and fuel may escape - risk of fire!

! CAUTION

- Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring, which can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine and the exhaust system.
- Immediately remove any fuel that has spilled onto the vehicle's paintwork - risk of paint damage!
- If the vehicle was not purchased in the country where it was intended to be operated, you should check whether the fuel specified by the manufacturer is offered in the country where the vehicle will be operated. You should also perhaps check whether the manufacturer has recommended a different fuel for operation of the vehicle in the corresponding country. Is this not the case, then you must check whether it is permitted by the manufacturer to operate the vehicle with another fuel type.

Refuelling

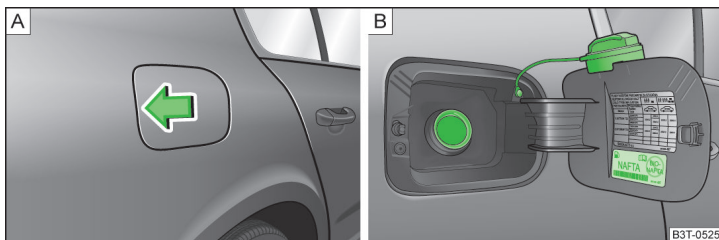


Fig. 159 Open fuel filler flap / tank cap

Read and observe **I** and **II** on page 179 first.

Before refuelling, switch off the auxiliary heating system (auxiliary heating and ventilation) » page 117.

- › Unlock the vehicle.
- › Press on the fuel filler flap in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 159 - A.
- › Unscrew the filler cap by turning it in a counter clockwise direction and place the cap onto the top of the fuel filler flap » Fig. 159 - B.
- › Insert the pump nozzle into the fuel filler tube as far as it will go.

The fuel tank is full just as soon as the pump nozzle switches off for the first time » **I**.

- › Remove the pump nozzle from the fuel filler tube and put it back in the pump.
- › Insert the filler cap onto the fuel filler neck and screw it in a clockwise direction until it clicks into place.
- › Close the fuel filler flap until it clicks into place.

Check that the fuel filler flap is closed properly.

I CAUTION

The fuel tank is full just as soon as the pump nozzle switches off for the first time, provided the nozzle has been operated properly. Do not continue filling the fuel tank otherwise the expansion volume is filled up.

i Note

The fuel tank has a capacity of about **60 litres**, including a reserve of approx. **10.5 litres**.

Unleaded petrol

Read and observe **I** and **II** on page 179 first.

The vehicle can only be operated with **unleaded petrol** that meets the **EN 228¹⁾** standard.

All petrol engines can be operated using petrol that contains at **most** 10% bio-ethanol (**E10**).

Required fuel - unleaded petrol 95/91 or 92 or 93 RON

Use unleaded fuel with the octane rating **95 RON**. Unleaded petrol with the octane ratings **91, 92 or 93 RON** can also be used, but may result in a slight loss in performance.

Prescribed fuel - unleaded petrol min. 95 RON

Use unleaded fuel with the octane rating **95 RON** or higher.

In case of necessity, you can refuel with petrol with the octane ratings **91, 92 or 93 RON**, if petrol with the octane rating **95 RON** is not available » **I**.

Prescribed fuel - unleaded fuel 98/95 RON

Use unleaded fuel with the octane rating **98 RON** or higher. Unleaded petrol **95 RON** can also be used but results in a slight loss in performance.

In case of necessity, you can refuel with petrol with the octane ratings **91, 92 or 93 RON**, if unleaded fuel with octane rating **98 RON** or **95 RON** is not available » **I**.

Fuel additives

Unleaded petrol in accordance with the EN 228 standard¹⁾ meets all the conditions for a smooth-running engine. We therefore recommend that no fuel additives are used. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine or the exhaust system. ▶

¹⁾ In Germany also DIN 51626-1 or E10 for unleaded petrol with octane number 91 or 95 or DIN 51626-2 or E5 for unleaded petrol with octane number 95 and 98.

⚠ CAUTION

- Even filling the tank with leaded petrol that does not meet the standards once can lead to serious damage to parts of the exhaust system!
- If a fuel other than unleaded fuel which complies to the above mentioned standards (e.g. leaded petrol) is used by mistake, do not start the engine or switch on the ignition! Extensive damage to engine parts can occur! We recommend that you have the fuel system cleaned by a specialist garage.

⚠ CAUTION

- If, in an emergency, the vehicle has to be refuelled with petrol of a lower octane number than the one prescribed, the journey must only be continued at medium engine speeds and a low engine load. Driving at high engine revs or a high engine load can severely damage the engine! Refuel using petrol of the prescribed octane number as soon as possible.
- Engine parts can be damaged if petrol with a lower octane number than the one prescribed is used.
- Even in the event of an emergency, petrol of a lower octane number than **91 RON** must not be used, otherwise the engine can be severely damaged!

⚠ CAUTION

- In no case may fuel additives with metal components be used, especially not with manganese and iron content. **LRP**(lead replacement petrol) fuels with metallic components may not be used. There is a risk of causing considerable damage to parts of the engine or exhaust system!
- Fuels with metallic content may not be used. There is a risk of causing considerable damage to parts of the engine or exhaust system!

📌 Note

- Unleaded petrol that has a higher octane number than that required by the engine can be used without limitations.
- On vehicles with prescribed unleaded petrol **95/91, 92 or 93 RON**, the use of petrol with a higher octane number than **95 RON** does not result in a noticeable power increase or a lower fuel consumption.
- On vehicles using prescribed unleaded petrol of **min. 95 RON**, the use of petrol with a higher octane number than **95 RON** can increase the power and reduce fuel consumption.

¹⁾ In Germany also DIN 51628, in Austria ÖNORM C 1590, in Russia GOST R 52368-2005 / EN 590:2004.

²⁾ In Germany according to the DIN 52638 standard, in Austria ÖNORM C 1590, in France EN 590.

Diesel fuel

📖 Read and observe **⚠** and **⚠** on page 179 first.

The vehicle can only be operated with **diesel fuel** that meets the **EN 590¹⁾** standard.

All diesel engines can be operated using diesel fuel with at **most 7% biodiesel (B7)²⁾**.

On the **Indian** market, your vehicle will only be able to run on **diesel fuel** compliant with standard **IS 1460/Bharat IV**. If diesel fuel which complies with this standard is not available, you can refuel with diesel fuel according to standard **IS 1460/Bharat III** in case of emergency.

Operation in winter - Winter-grade diesel fuel

In the cold season, only use "winter-grade diesel fuel" which will still operate properly even at a temperature of -20 °C.

It is often the case in countries with different climatic conditions that diesel fuels available have a different temperature characteristic. ŠKODA Partners and filling stations in the relevant country will be able to provide you with information regarding the diesel fuels available.

Preheating fuel

The vehicle is fitted with a fuel filter preheating system. This secures operation of a vehicle using diesel fuel down to an environmental temperature of -25 °C.

Diesel fuel additives

Additives, so-called "flow improvers" (petrol and similar agents) should not be mixed with the diesel fuel. This can cause serious damage to engine or exhaust system parts. ▶

! CAUTION

- Just filling the tank once with diesel fuel that does not comply with the standard, can cause severe damage to parts of the engine, the fuel and exhaust system!
- If a different fuel other than diesel fuel, which complies to the above mentioned standards (e.g. petrol) is used by mistake do not start the engine or switch on the ignition! Extensive damage to engine parts can occur! We recommend that you have the fuel system cleaned by a specialist garage.
- Water which has collected in the fuel filter can cause engine faults.

! CAUTION

- The vehicle cannot be operated with bio fuel **RME**, therefore this fuel must not be filled in the tank and used for driving the vehicle. The use of biofuel **RME** can cause considerable damage to parts of the engine or fuel system.
- Do not mix any fuel additives, so-called "flow improvers" (petrol and similar agents), into the diesel. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine or the exhaust system!

Engine compartment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Opening and closing the bonnet	183
Engine compartment overview	184
Radiator fan	184
Windscreen washer system	184

! WARNING

Injuries or scolding or risks of accident or fire may occur when working in the engine compartment. For this reason, it is essential to comply with the warning instructions outlined below and with the general applicable safety rules. The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area!

! WARNING

- Instructions before beginning work in the engine compartment
- Turn off the engine and withdraw the ignition key.
 - Firmly apply the handbrake.

! WARNING (Continued)

- If the vehicle is fitted with a manual gearbox, move the gearshift lever into Neutral, or if the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox, move the selector lever into position **P**.
- Allow the engine to cool.
- Never open the bonnet if you can see steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment – risk of scalding! Wait until no more steam or coolant is escaping.

! WARNING

Information for working in the engine compartment

- Keep all people, especially children, away from the engine compartment.
- Never touch the radiator fan while the engine is still warm. The fan might suddenly start running!
- Do not touch any hot engine parts – risk of burns!
- The coolant is harmful to health.
- Avoid contact with the coolant.
- Coolant vapours are harmful to health.
- Never open the end cover of the coolant expansion reservoir while the engine is still warm. The cooling system is pressurized!
- When opening the end cover of the coolant expansion reservoir, cover it with a cloth to protect your face, hands and arms from hot steam or hot coolant.
- If any coolant splashes into your eyes, immediately rinse out your eyes with clear water and contact a doctor as soon as possible.
- Always keep the coolant in the original container, safe from people who are not completely independent, especially children - there is a danger of poisoning!
- If coolant is swallowed, consult a doctor immediately.
- Never spill fluids on the hot engine. Such fluids (e.g. the antifreeze contained in the coolant) may ignite!

! WARNING

Information for working in the engine compartment with the engine running

- Pay particular attention to rotating engine parts (e.g. V-ribbed belt, generator, radiator fan) and the high-voltage ignition system – risk to life!
- Never touch the electric wiring on the ignition system.

! WARNING (Continued)

- Avoid short circuits in the electrical system - particularly on the vehicle's battery.
- Always make sure that no jewellery, loose clothing or long hair can get caught in rotating engine parts - risk to life! Always remove any jewellery, tie back long hair and wear tight fitting clothing before completing any work.

! WARNING

Information for working on the fuel system or the electrical system

- Always disconnect the vehicle battery from the electrical system.
- Do not smoke.
- Never work near open flames.
- Always have a functioning fire extinguisher nearby.

! WARNING

- Read and observe the information and warning instructions on the fluid containers.
- Keep the working fluids in sealed original containers and safe from people who are not completely independent, e.g. children.
- If you intend to work underneath the vehicle, you must secure the vehicle from rolling away and support it with suitable supporting blocks; the car jack is not sufficient - risk of injury!

! CAUTION

Always top up using the correct specification of fluids. This may result in major operating problems and also vehicle damage!

🌱 For the sake of the environment

In view of the requirements for the environmentally friendly disposal of fluids and the special tools and knowledge required for such work, we recommend that fluids be changed by a specialist garage.

I Note

- Please consult a specialist garage for any questions relating to fluids.
- Fluids with the proper specifications can be purchased from the ŠKODA Original Accessories or from the ŠKODA Genuine Parts ranges.

Opening and closing the bonnet

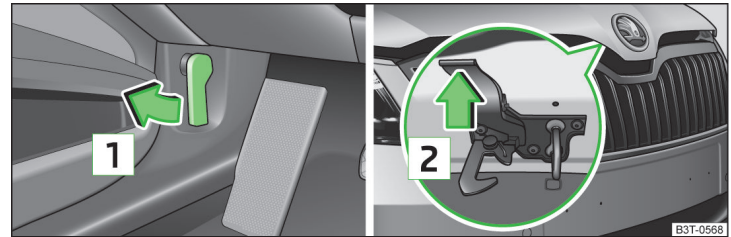


Fig. 160 Bonnet release lever/release lever

📖 Read and observe ! and ! on page 182 first.

Open flap

- Pull the release lever under the dash panel in the direction of the arrow **1** » Fig. 160.

Before opening the bonnet, ensure that the arms of the windscreen wipers are correctly in place against the windscreen otherwise the paintwork on the flap could be damaged.

- Press the release lever in the direction of the arrow **2** to unlock the bonnet.
- Grasp the bonnet and lift up until it is held open by the pressurised gas spring.

Close the flap

- Pull the bonnet down far enough to overcome the force of the pressurised gas spring.
- Close the bonnet from a height of approximately 20 cm with a slight swing

! WARNING

- Check that the bonnet is closed properly.
- If you notice that the lock is not properly engaged while driving, stop the vehicle immediately and close the bonnet - risk of accident!

! CAUTION

Never open the bonnet by the locking lever » Fig. 160.

Engine compartment overview

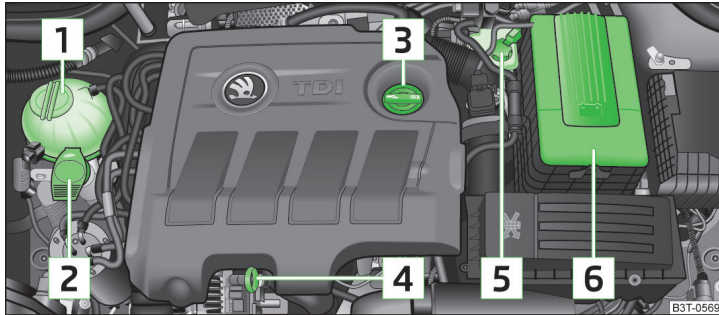


Fig. 161 Principle sketch: Engine compartment

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 182 first.

Image description » Fig. 161

- | | | |
|---|-----------------------------------|-----|
| 1 | Coolant expansion reservoir | 188 |
| 2 | Windscreen washer fluid reservoir | 184 |
| 3 | Engine oil filler opening | 187 |
| 4 | Engine oil dipstick | 186 |
| 5 | Brake fluid reservoir | 189 |
| 6 | Battery (below a cover) | 189 |

i Note

The location of the inspection points in the engine compartment of petrol and diesel engines is practically identical.

Radiator fan

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 182 first.

The radiator fan is powered by an electric motor. Operation is controlled according to the temperature of the coolant.

! WARNING

After switching off the ignition, the fan may intermittently continue to operate for approx. 10 minutes.

Windscreen washer system

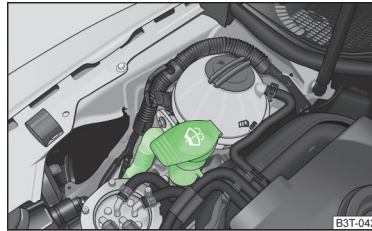


Fig. 162
Engine compartment: Wind-
screen washer fluid reservoir

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 182 first.

The windscreen washer fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment » Fig. 162.

This contains the cleaning fluid for the windscreen or rear window and for the headlight cleaning system.

The capacity of the reservoir is about 3 litres or about 5.5 litres on vehicles that have a headlight cleaning system¹⁾.

Clear water is not sufficient to intensively clean the windscreen and headlights. We recommend using clean water together with a screen cleaner from the range of ŠKODA Original Accessories (**with antifreeze in winter**), which will remove any stubborn dirt.

In Winter, the washing water should always be mixed with antifreeze even if the vehicle has heated windscreen washer nozzles.

Under exceptional circumstances, methylated spirits can also be used if no screen cleaner with antifreeze is available. The concentration of methylated spirits must not be more than 15 %. The freeze protection at this concentration is sufficient only to -5 °C.

¹⁾ In some countries, 5.5 ltr. applies for both variants.

! CAUTION

- Under no circumstances must radiator antifreeze or other additives be added to the windscreen washer fluid.
- If the vehicle is fitted with a headlight cleaning system, only cleaning products which do not attack the polycarbonate coating of the headlights must be added to the windscreen washer fluid.
- Do not remove the filter from the windscreen washer fluid reservoir when re-filling, as this may cause contamination of the liquid transportation system, leading in turn to a windscreen washer system malfunction.

Engine oil

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Specifications and capacity	185
Checking the oil level	186
Replenishing	187
Changing	187

The engine has been factory-filled with a high-grade oil that can be used throughout the year - except in extreme climate zones.

The engine oils are undergoing continuous further development. Thus the information stated in this Owner's Manual is only correct at the time of publication.

ŠKODA Service Partners are informed about the latest changes by the manufacturer. We therefore recommend that the oil change be completed by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

The specifications (VW standards) stated in the following can be indicated separately or together with other specifications on the bottle.

The oil capacities include oil filter change. Check the oil level when filling; do not over fill. The oil level must be between the markings » [page 186](#).

! WARNING

- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » [page 182](#).
- Do not continue your journey if for some reason it is not possible to top up the engine oil 🛑. Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- Do not drive on if the oil level is above range **A** » [Fig. 163 on page 186](#) 🛑. Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

! CAUTION

Do not pour any additives into the engine oil - risk of serious damage to the engine parts!

i Note

- Before a long drive we recommend that you purchase and carry with you engine oil which complies with the specification for your vehicle.
- We recommend that you use oils from ŠKODA Original Accessories.
- If your skin has come into contact with oil, it must be washed thoroughly.

Specifications and capacity

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on [page 185](#) first.

Specifications and capacity (in l) for vehicles with flexible service intervals

Petrol engines	Specification	Capacity
1.4 ltr./92 kW TSI	VW 503 00, VW 504 00	3.6
1.8 l/112, 118 kW TSI	VW 504 00	4.6
2.0 ltr./147 kW TSI	VW 504 00	4.6
3.6 l/191 kW FSI	VW 504 00	5.5

Diesel engines ^{a)}	Specification	Capacity
1.6 ltr./77 kW TDI CR	VW 507 00	4.3
2.0 ltr/103 kW TDI CR DPF	VW 507 00	4.3
2.0 ltr/125 kW TDI CR DPF	VW 507 00	4.3

^{a)} Engine oil VW 505 01 can optionally be used in diesel engines **without** a DPF. ▶

Specifications and capacity (in l) for vehicles with fixed service intervals

Petrol engines	Specification	Capacity
1.4 ltr./92 kW TSI	VW 501 01, VW 502 00	3.6
1.8 l/112, 118 kW TSI	VW 502 00	4.6
	applies to Russia SAE OW - 30 VW 502 00/505 00	
2.0 ltr./147 kW TSI	VW 502 00	4.6
	applies to Russia SAE OW - 30 VW 502 00/505 00	
3.6 l/191 kW FSI	VW 502 00	5.5

Diesel engines ^{a)}	Specification	Capacity
1.6 ltr./77 kW TDI CR	VW 507 00	4.3
2.0 ltr/103 kW TDI CR DPF	VW 507 00	4.3
2.0 ltr/125 kW TDI CR DPF	VW 507 00	4.3

^{a)} Engine oil VW 505 01 can optionally be used in diesel engines **without** a DPF.

! CAUTION

■ If the above engine oils are not available, a different engine oil can be used in an emergency. To prevent damage to the engine, a **maximum of 0.5 litres** only of the following engine oils may be used until the next oil change:

- For petrol engine models: ACEA A3/ACEA B4 or API SN/API SM;
- For diesel engine models: ACEA C3 or API CJ-4.

Checking the oil level

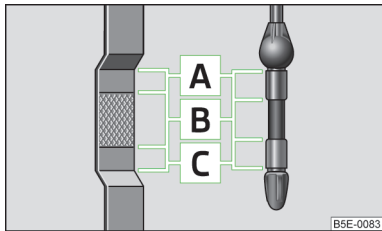


Fig. 163
Principle sketch: Dipstick

B5E-0083

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 185 first.

The dipstick indicates the engine oil level » Fig. 163.

Checking the oil level

Ensure that the vehicle is positioned on a level surface and the engine has reached its operating temperature.

➤ Switch off the engine.

Wait a few minutes until the engine oil flows back into the oil trough.

➤ Open the bonnet.

➤ Pull out the dipstick.

➤ Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth and insert it again to the stop.

➤ Pull the dipstick out again and check the oil level.

Oil level within range **A**

No oil must be refilled.

Oil level within range **B**

Oil **can** be refilled. Afterwards, the oil level can lie in the range **A**.

Oil level within range **C**

The engine **must** be topped up with oil so that the oil level at least reaches the range **B**.

The engine consumes a little oil. The oil consumption may be as much as 0.5 l/1 000 km depending on your style of driving and the conditions under which you operate your vehicle. Consumption may be slightly higher than this during the first 5 000 km.

The oil level must be checked at regular intervals. We recommend after each time you refuel or prior to making a long journey.

We recommend maintaining the oil level within the range **A**, **but not above**, if the engine has been operating at high loads, for example, during a lengthy motorway trip during the summer months, towing a trailer or negotiating a high mountain pass.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster will indicate whether the oil level is too low » page 35, 🚗 *Engine oil level*. Check the oil level using the dipstick as soon as possible. Add oil accordingly.

! CAUTION

The oil level must never be above the **A** range » Fig. 163 - there is a risk of damaging the exhaust system!

Replenishing

 Read and observe  and  on page 185 first.

- Check the oil level » page 186.
- Unscrew the cap of the engine oil filler opening » Fig. 161 on page 184.
- Replenish the oil in portions of 0.5 litres in accordance with the correct specifications » page 185.
- Check the oil level » page 186.
- Carefully screw on the oil filler opening cap and push the dipstick in fully.

Changing

 Read and observe  and  on page 185 first.

The engine oil must be changed according to prescribed service intervals or according to the service interval display » *Service plan*.

Coolant

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Capacity	188
Checking the coolant level	188
Replenishing	188

The coolant consists of water with coolant additive. This mixture guarantees antifreeze protection, protects the cooling/heater system against corrosion and prevents lime formation.


Vehicles exported to countries with a **mild climate** are already factory-filled with a coolant which offers antifreeze protection down to about -25 °C. In these countries, the concentration of coolant additive should be at least 40%.

Vehicles exported to countries with a **cold climate** are already factory-filled with a coolant which offers antifreeze protection down to about -35 °C. In these countries, the concentration of coolant additive should be at least 50%.

If a higher concentration of antifreeze is required for climatic reasons, the concentration of coolant additive can be increased up to a maximum of 60% (antifreeze protection down to approx. -40 °C).

When refilling, only use the same antifreeze identified on the coolant expansion vessel » Fig. 164 on page 188.

WARNING

- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » page 182.
- Do not continue your journey if for some reason it is not possible to fill with coolant under the current circumstances . Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

CAUTION

- The concentration of coolant additive in the coolant must never be under 40%.
- Over 60% of coolant additive in the coolant reduces the antifreeze protection and cooling effect.
- A coolant additive that does not comply with the correct specifications can significantly reduce the corrosion protection.
- Any faults resulting from corrosion may cause a loss of coolant and can consequently result in major engine damage!
- Do not fill the coolant above the mark **A** » Fig. 164 on page 188.
- If a fault causes the engine to overheat, we recommend visiting a specialist garage, as otherwise serious engine damage may occur.
- Additional headlights and other attached components in front of the air inlet impair the cooling efficiency of the coolant.
- Never cover the radiator - there is a risk of the engine overheating.

Capacity

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 187 first.

Coolant capacity (in litres)¹⁾

Petrol engines	Capacity
1.4 ltr./92 kW TSI	7.7
1.8 ltr./112 kW TSI	8.6
1.8 ltr./118 kW TSI	8.6
2.0 ltr./147 kW TSI	8.6
3.6 l/191 kW FSI	9.0

Diesel engines	Capacity
1.6 ltr./77 kW TDI CR	8.4
2.0 ltr./103 kW TDI CR	8.4
2.0 ltr./125 kW TDI CR	8.4

Checking the coolant level

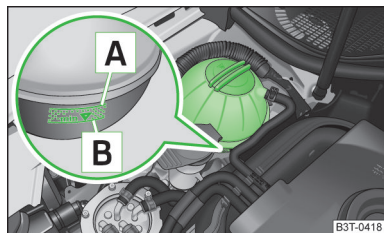


Fig. 164
Engine compartment: Coolant expansion reservoir

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 187 first.

The coolant expansion reservoir is located in the engine compartment » Fig. 164.

Image description » Fig. 164

- A** Mark for the **maximum** permissible coolant level.
- B** Mark for the **lowest** permissible coolant level.

¹⁾ The coolant capacity is approximately 1 l greater on vehicles that are fitted with an auxiliary heater (auxiliary heating and ventilation).

The coolant level should be kept between the marks **A** and **B**.

If the coolant level is above the mark **A**, **no coolant may** be topped up.



If the coolant level is below the mark **B**, the coolant **must** be topped up.

Checking the level

- Switch off the engine.
- Open the bonnet.
- Check the level of coolant in the coolant expansion bottle. » Fig. 164.

Check the coolant level only when the engine is cold.

If the engine is warm, the test result may be inaccurate. The level can also be above the mark **A** » Fig. 164.

If the coolant level in the coolant expansion tank is too low, this is indicated by the warning light  lighting up in the instrument cluster » page 34,  *Coolant*. We still recommend inspecting the coolant level directly at the reservoir from time to time.

Loss of coolant

A loss of coolant is first and foremost an **indication of a leak** in the system. Do not merely top up the coolant. Have the cooling system checked by a specialist garage.

Replenishing

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 187 first.

Only top up with new coolant.

- Switch off the engine.
- Allow the engine to cool.
- Place a cloth over the cap of the coolant expansion tank and unscrew the cap **carefully**.
- Replenish the coolant.
- Turn the cap until it clicks into place.

Do not use an alternative additive if the specified coolant is not available in an emergency. In this case, use just water and have the correct mixing ratio of water and coolant additive restored by a specialist garage as soon as possible.


Brake fluid

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Checking the brake fluid level	189
Changing	189

! WARNING

- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » [page 182](#).
- Do not continue your journey if the fluid level has fallen below the MIN marking » [Fig. 165 on page 189](#),  - there is a risk of an accident. Seek help from a specialist garage.
- Do not use used brake fluid - the function of the brake system may be impaired - risk of accident!

! CAUTION

Brake fluid damages the paintwork of the vehicle.

i Note

- The brake fluid is changed as part of a compulsory inspection service.
- We recommend using brake fluids from the ŠKODA Original Accessories range.

Checking the brake fluid level

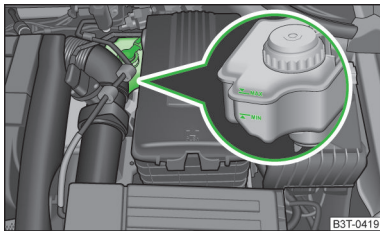


Fig. 165
Engine compartment: Brake fluid reservoir

 Read and observe  and  on page 189 first.



The brake fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment » [Fig. 165](#).

- Switch off the engine.
- Open the bonnet.
- Check the level of brake fluid in the reservoir » [Fig. 165](#).

The level must be between the "MIN" and "MAX" markings.

A slight drop in the fluid level results when driving due to normal wear-and-tear and automatic adjustment of the brake pads.

There may be an indication of a leak in the brake system, however, if the fluid level drops significantly within a short time or if it drops below the "MIN" marking.

If the brake fluid level is too low, this is shown by the indicator light  » [page 33](#),  Brake system lighting up in the instrument cluster.

Changing

 Read and observe  and  on page 189 first.

Brake fluid absorbs moisture. Over time it therefore absorbs moisture from the environment.

Excessive water in the brake fluid may be the cause of corrosion in the brake system.

The water content lowers the boiling point of the brake fluid.

The brake fluid must comply with the following standards or specifications:

- VW 50114;
- FMVSS 116 DOT4.






Vehicle battery

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Open cover	191
Checking the battery electrolyte level	191
Charging	192
Replace	192
Disconnecting or reconnecting	192
Automatic load deactivation	193

Warning symbols on the vehicle battery

Symbol	Importance
	Always wear eye protection.
	Battery acid is severely caustic. Always wear gloves and eye protection.
	Keep fire, sparks, open flames and lit cigarettes well clear of the vehicle battery.
	When charging the vehicle battery, a highly explosive gas mixture is produced.
	Keep children away from the vehicle battery.

WARNING

There is risk of injuries, poisoning, chemical burns, explosions or fire when working on the battery and on the electrical system. It is essential to comply with the general applicable safety rules as well as the warning instructions outlined below.

- Keep the vehicle battery away from people who are not completely independent, especially children.
- Do not tilt the battery otherwise battery electrolyte may flow out of the battery vent openings. Protect your eyes by wearing safety goggles or a face shield – risk of blindness!
- Always wear protective gloves, eye and skin protection when handling the vehicle battery.
- The battery acid is strongly corrosive and must, therefore, be handled with the greatest of care.
- Corrosive fumes in the air irritate the air passages and lead to conjunctivitis and inflammation of the air passages in the lungs.
- Battery acid corrodes dental enamel and, if it comes into contact with the skin, causes deep wounds that take a long time to heal. Repeated contact with diluted acids causes skin diseases (inflammations, ulcers, skin cracks).
- If any battery acid comes into contact with your eyes, rinse the affected eye immediately with clean water for several minutes and consult a doctor immediately!
- Splashes of acid on your skin or clothes should be neutralised as soon as possible using soap suds and then rinsed with plenty of water. If you swallow battery acid, consult a doctor immediately!

WARNING

- It is prohibited to work with naked flames or lights.
- It is prohibited to smoke or carry out any activities that produce sparks.
- Never use a damaged vehicle battery – risk of explosion!
- Never charge a frozen or thawed vehicle battery – risk of explosion and chemical burns!
- Replace a frozen vehicle battery.
- Never jump-start vehicle batteries with insufficient acid levels – risk of explosion and chemical burns.

WARNING

- When you charge a battery, hydrogen is released, and a highly explosive gas mixture is also produced. An explosion can be caused through sparking over during unclamping or loosening of the cable plug while the ignition is on.
- Creating a bridge between the poles on the battery (e.g. with a metal object or cable) creates a short circuit - risk of melting the lead bars, and risk of explosion, battery fire and acid splashes.
- Avoid creating sparks when working with cables and electrical devices. Strong sparking represents a risk of injury.
- Before carrying out any work on the electrical system, switch off the engine, the ignition and all electrical components and disconnect the negative terminal (-) on the battery.

CAUTION

Improper handling of the battery can lead to damage. We recommend having all work on the vehicle battery carried out by a specialist garage.

CAUTION

- The vehicle battery must only be disconnected if the ignition is switched off, otherwise the vehicle's electrical system (electronic components) can be damaged. When disconnecting the battery from the electrical system, first of all disconnect the negative terminal (-) of the battery, and then the positive terminal (+).
- When connecting the battery to the electrical system, first of all connect the positive terminal (+) of the battery, and then the negative terminal (-). Under no circumstances must the battery cables be connected incorrectly – risk of a cable fire.
- Ensure that battery acid does not come into contact with the bodywork – risk of damage to the paintwork. ▶

- Do not place the battery in direct daylight in order to protect the vehicle battery housing from the effects of ultra-violet light.
- If the vehicle has not been driven for more than 3 to 4 weeks, the battery will discharge. This is because certain electrical components consume electricity (e. g. control units) also in idle state. Prevent the battery from discharging by disconnecting the battery's negative terminal (-) or continuously charging the battery with a very low charging current.
- If the vehicle is frequently used for making short trips, the vehicle battery will not have time to charge up sufficiently and may discharge.

For the sake of the environment

A vehicle battery that has been removed is a special type of hazardous waste. These must be disposed of in accordance with national legal regulations.

Note

You should replace batteries older than 5 years.

Open cover

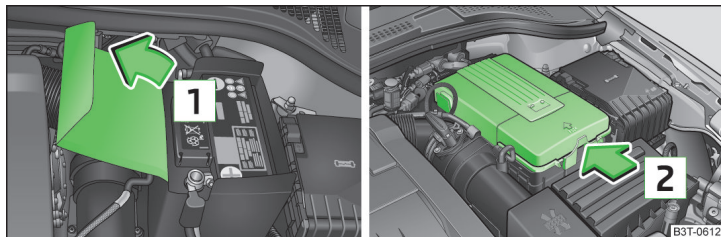







Fig. 166 Engine compartment: Polyester cover of the vehicle battery/
plastic cover of the vehicle battery

 Read and observe  and  on page 190 first.

The battery is located in the engine compartment in a polyester cover  » Fig. 166, in a plastic cover  » Fig. 166 or in the left side of the boot » page 99.


When working on the battery, the edge of the polyester battery cover  » Fig. 166 is inserted between the battery and the side wall of the battery cover.

Battery in the engine compartment

- Open the battery cover in the direction of the arrow  or press the interlock on the side of the battery cover in the direction of the arrow  » Fig. 166, fold the cover up and remove.

The battery cover is installed in reverse order.

Battery in the boot

The battery is located in the left side compartment with the symbol  » page 99.

Checking the battery electrolyte level

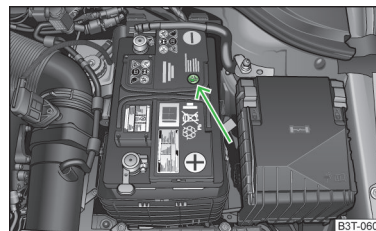


Fig. 167
Vehicle battery: Electrolyte level
indicator

 Read and observe  and  on page 190 first.

On vehicles with a vehicle battery fitted with a colour indicator » Fig. 167, the electrolyte level can be determined by looking at the change in colour.

Air bubbles can influence the colour of the indicator. For this reason carefully knock on the indicator before carrying out the check.

- Black colour - electrolyte level is correct.
- Colourless or light yellow colour - electrolyte level too low, the battery must be replaced.

Vehicles with a START-STOP system are fitted with a battery control unit for checking the energy level for the recurring engine start.

We recommend that you have the acid level checked regularly by a specialist garage, especially in the following cases.

- High external temperatures.
- Longer day trips.
- After each charge.

Winter time

The vehicle battery only has a proportion of the starting power in lower temperatures. **A discharged vehicle battery may already freeze at temperatures just below 0 °C.**

We therefore recommend that you have the battery checked and, if necessary, recharged by a specialist garage before the start of the winter.

i Note

- The battery acid level is also checked regularly by a specialist garage as part of the inspection service.
- For technical reasons, on vehicles with the description "AGM", the electrolyte level cannot be checked.

Charging

 **Read and observe  and  on page 190 first.**

A properly charged vehicle battery is essential for reliably starting the engine.

- > Switch off the ignition and all of the electrical components.
- > Only when performing a "quick-charge", disconnect both battery cables (first "negative", then "positive").
- > Attach the terminal clamps of the charger to the battery terminals (red = "positive", black = "negative").
- > Plug the mains cable of the charger into the power socket and switch on the device.
- > After charging has been successful: Switch off the charger and remove the mains cable from the power socket.
- > Only then disconnect the charger's terminal clamps.
- > Reconnect the cables to the battery (first "positive", then "negative").

It is not necessary to disconnect the cables of the battery if you recharge the vehicle battery using low amperages (for example from a mini-charger). **Refer to the instructions of the charger manufacturer.**

A charging current of 0.1 multiple of the total vehicle battery capacity (or lower) must be used until full charging is achieved.

It is necessary to disconnect both cables before charging the battery with high amperages, known as "**rapid charging**".

The vent plugs of the vehicle battery should not be opened for charging.

! WARNING

"Quick-charging" the vehicle battery is **dangerous** and requires a special charger and specialist knowledge.

! CAUTION

On vehicles with the START/STOP system, the pole terminal of the charger must not be connected directly to the negative terminal of the vehicle battery, but only to the engine earth » [page 208](#), *Jump-starting in vehicles with the START-STOP system.*

i Note

We therefore recommend that vehicle batteries be rapid charged by a specialist garage.

Replace

 **Read and observe  and  on page 190 first.**

The new vehicle battery must have the same capacity, voltage, current and size as the original battery. Suitable vehicle battery types can be purchased from a specialist garage.

We recommend having the battery replaced by a specialist garage, where the new vehicle battery will be installed properly and the original battery will be disposed of in accordance with national regulations.

Disconnecting or reconnecting

 **Read and observe  and  on page 190 first.**

On disconnecting and reconnecting the vehicle battery the following functions are initially deactivated or are no longer able to operate fault-free.

Operation	Operating measure
Electrical power window (operational faults)	» page 62
Panoramic sliding roof (operational faults)	» page 214
Enter the radio/navigation system code number	» <i>User manual of the radio or » user manual of the navigation system</i>

Operation	Operating measure
Setting the clock	» page 30
Data in the multifunction display are deleted.	» page 41

i Note

We recommend having the vehicle checked by a specialist garage in order to ensure full functionality of all electrical systems.

Automatic load deactivation

 **Read and observe**  and  on page 190 first.

The vehicle voltage control unit automatically prevents the battery from discharging when the battery is put under high levels of strain. This manifests itself by the following.

- The idling speed is raised to allow the generator to deliver more electricity to the electrical system.
- Where necessary, large convenience consumers such as seat heaters and rear window heaters have their power limited or are shut off completely in the event of an emergency.

! CAUTION

- Despite such intervention by the vehicle electric system management, the vehicle battery may be drained. For example, when the ignition is switched on a long time with the engine turned off or the side or parking lights are turned on during longer parking.
- Consumers that are supplied via a 12-V power socket can cause the vehicle battery to discharge when the ignition is switched off.

i Note

Driving comfort is not impaired by consumers being deactivated. The driver is often not aware of it having taken place.

Wheels

Tyres and wheel rims

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Service life of tyres	194
New tyres	195
Unidirectional tyres	196
Tyre pressure monitor	196
Spare and temporary spare wheel	197
Full wheel trim	198
Wheel bolts	198
Wheel bolts	198

! WARNING

The national legal regulations must be observed for the use of tyres.

! WARNING

Instructions for the use of tyres

- For the first 500 km, new tyres do not yet provide optimum grip, and appropriate care should therefore be taken when driving – risk of accident!
- Only use radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and tread pattern on all four wheels.
- For reasons of driving safety, do not replace tyres individually.
- Never exceed the maximum permissible **load bearing capacity** for fitted tyres – risk of accident!
- Never exceed the maximum permissible **speed** for fitted tyres – risk of accident!
- Incorrect wheel alignment at the front or rear impairs handling – risk of accident!
- Unusual vibrations or pulling of the vehicle to one side could be a sign of tyre damage. If there is any doubt that a wheel is damaged, immediately reduce your speed and stop! If no external damage is evident, drive slowly and carefully to the nearest specialist garage to have the vehicle checked.
- Only use tyres or wheel rims that have been approved by ŠKODA for your model of vehicle. Failure to observe this instruction may impair the road safety of your vehicle – risk of accident!

! WARNING

Information regarding tyre damage or wear

- Never use tyres if you do not know anything about the condition and age.
- Never drive with damaged tyres – risk of accident!
- Immediately replace damaged wheel rims or tyres.
- You must have your tyres replaced with new ones at the latest when the wear indicators have been worn down.
- Worn tyres impair necessary adhesion to the road surface, particularly at high speeds on wet roads. This could lead to “aquaplaning” (uncontrolled vehicle movement – “swimming” on a wet road surface).

! WARNING

Information on tyre pressure

- The tyre control display does not absolve the driver of the responsibility to ensure the correct tyre inflation pressure. Check the tyre inflation pressure at regular intervals.
- Insufficient or excessive inflation pressure impairs handling – risk of accident!
- If the inflation pressure is too low, the tyre will have to overcome a higher rolling resistance. This will cause a significant increase in the temperature of the tyre, especially at higher speeds. This can result in tread separation and a tyre blowout.

! WARNING

Information on the wheel bolts

- The wheel bolts must be clean and must turn easily. Never treat them with grease or oil.
- The prescribed tightening torque of the wheel bolts for steel and light alloy wheels is 120 Nm.
- If the wheel bolts are tightened to a too low tightening torque, the rims could come loose when the car is moving – risk of accident! A tightening torque which is too high can damage the bolts and threads and this can result in permanent deformation of the contact surfaces on the rims.
- In case of incorrect treatment of the wheel bolts, the wheel can loosen when the car is moving – risk of accident!

! WARNING

Information on the temporary spare wheel

- Only use the temporary spare wheel when absolutely necessary.
- Never drive with more than one temporary spare wheel mounted.
- The snow chains cannot be used on the temporary spare wheel.

! CAUTION

- If a spare wheel is used that is not identical to the fitted tyres, the following must be observed » [page 197](#), *Spare and temporary spare wheel*.
- Protect the tyres from contact with oil, grease and fuel.
- Replace lost valve caps.
- If, in the event of a puncture, it is necessary to fit a spare wheel with a tyre without a dedicated running direction or with the opposite direction of rotation, drive carefully as the optimal characteristics of the tyre are no longer applicable in this situation.

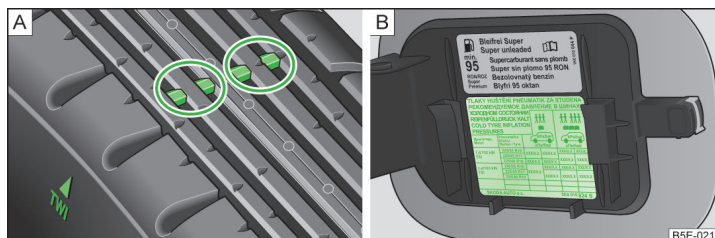
🌱 For the sake of the environment

Tyres that are insufficiently inflated increase your fuel consumption.

i Note

- We recommend that any work on the wheels or tyres be carried out by a specialist garage.
- We recommend that you use wheel rims, tyres, full wheel trims and snow chains from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Service life of tyres



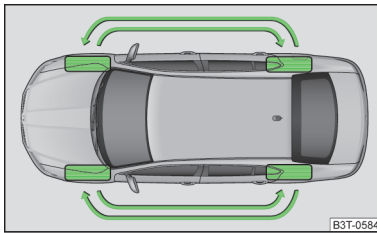


Fig. 169
Replacing wheels

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 193 first.

The service life of tyres depends on the inflation pressure, driving style and other circumstances. Following the advice below can extend the service life of your tyres.

Tyre pressure

Check the tyre pressure, including that of the spare wheel, at least once a month and also before setting off on a long journey.

The tyre pressures for **tyres** are shown on the inside of the fuel filler flap » Fig. 168 - [B].

The tyre pressure should be at the highest pressure specified for your vehicle at all times.

Always check the inflation pressure when the tyres are cold. Do not reduce the higher pressure on warm tyres.

With greater additional load, adjust the tyre inflation pressure accordingly.

Driving style

Fast cornering, sharp acceleration and braking increase the wear of your tyres.

Balancing wheels

The wheels of a new vehicle are balanced. When driving, however, there are a range of factors that may result in an imbalance. This may become apparent by a "vibration" in the steering.

Have the wheels rebalanced after replacing the tyres.

Wheel alignment errors

Incorrect wheel alignment at the front or rear leads to excess wear of the tyres.

Tyre damage

Drive over kerbs and other such obstacles slowly and at right angles wherever possible in order to avoid damage to tyres and wheel trims.

We recommend checking your tyres and wheel rims for damage (punctures, cuts, splits and bulges, etc.) on a regular basis. Remove foreign bodies (e.g. small stones) from the tyre tread immediately.

Replacing wheels

If significantly greater wear is present on the front tyres, we recommend swapping the front wheels with the rear wheels as shown in the diagram » Fig. 169. You will then obtain approximately the same life for all the tyres.

We recommend that you swap the tyres every 10,000 km in order to achieve even wear on all tyres and to ensure optimal service life for the tyres.

Storing tyres

Identify disassembled tyres so that the previous direction of rotation can be maintained if the tyres are reassembled.

Always store wheels or tyres in a cool, dry place that is as dark as possible. Tyres which are not fixed to a wheel trim should be stored upright.

Wear indicators

The base of the tread of the tyres has 1.6 mm high wear indicators installed. These wear indicators are arranged evenly spaced around the circumference of the tyre a number of times depending on the make » Fig. 168 - [A]. Markings on the walls of the tyres through the letters "TWI", triangular symbols or other symbols identify the position of the wear indicators.

Tyre age

Tyres age and lose their original characteristics, even if they are not being used. Therefore, we recommend not using summer or winter tyres older than 6 or 4 years old respectively.

New tyres

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 193 first.

Only use radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and tread pattern on one axle on all four wheels.

The tyre/wheel combinations which are approved for your vehicle are indicated in your vehicle documents. ▶

Where possible, replace tyres by axle. Always fit the tyres with the deeper tread depth to the front wheels.

Explanation of tyre markings

205/55 R 16 94 V

What this means is:

205	Tyre width in mm » Fig. 168 on page 194 - [B]
55	Height/width ratio in % » Fig. 168 on page 194 - [B]
R	Code letter for the type of tyre - Radial » Fig. 168 on page 194 - [B]
16	Diameter of wheel in inches » Fig. 168 on page 194 - [B]
94	Load index » [!]
V	Speed symbol » [!]

The **date of manufacture** is stated on the tyre wall (possibly on the **inside**). e.g.

DOT ... 11 14...

means, for example, that the tyre was manufactured in the 11th week of 2014.

Load index

This indicates the maximum permissible load for each individual tyre.

91	615 kg
92	630 kg
93	650 kg
94	670 kg
95	690 kg
97	730 kg
99	775 kg

Speed symbol

This indicates the maximum permissible vehicle speed with fitted tyres in each category.

M	130 km/h
Q	160 km/h
R	170 km/h
S	180 km/h
T	190 km/h
U	200 km/h
H	210 km/h

V 240 km/h

W 270 km/h

Y 300 km/h

[!] CAUTION

The information about the load index and the speed symbol is listed in your vehicle documents.

Unidirectional tyres

[!] Read and observe [!] and [!] on page 193 first.

The direction of rotation of the tyres is marked by **arrows on the wall of the tyre**.

The indicated direction of rotation must be adhered to in order to ensure the optimal characteristics of these tyres.

These characteristics mainly relate to the following:

- Increased driving stability.
- Reduced risk of aquaplaning.
- Reduced tyre noise and tyre wear.

Tyre pressure monitor



Fig. 170
Button for setting the tyre inflation pressure control value

[!] Read and observe [!] and [!] on page 193 first.

System settings

After changing the tyre inflation pressure, after changing one or several wheels, the position of a wheel on the vehicle (e.g. exchanging the wheels between the axles) or when the warning light lights up while driving, a **system configuration** must be carried out as follows.


- Inflate all of the tyres to the specified inflation pressure » page 195.

- › Switch on the ignition.
- › Press the  » Fig. 170 symbol button for longer than 2 seconds.

If the warning light  in the instrument cluster lights up and does not go out after the system configuration, this indicates a system fault.



If the warning light  in the instrument cluster flashes, there is a system fault.

Tyre pressure indicator

The warning light  in the instrument cluster lights up when any of the following conditions are met.

- › The tyre inflation pressure is low.
- › The structure of the tyre is damaged.
- › The vehicle is loaded on one side.
- › The wheels of one axle are loaded more heavily (e.g. when towing a trailer or when driving uphill or downhill).
- › Snow chains are mounted.
- › The spare wheel is mounted.
- › One wheel per axle was changed.

WARNING

- When the warning light  in the instrument cluster lights up, immediately reduce the speed and avoid sudden steering and brake manoeuvres. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible and inspect the tyres and their inflation pressure.
- Under certain circumstances (e.g. sporty style of driving, wintry or unpaved roads) the warning light  in the instrument cluster can be delayed or does not light up at all.

CAUTION

- The system cannot warn in case of very rapid tyre inflation pressure loss, e.g. in case of sudden tyre damage. In this case carefully bring the vehicle to a standstill without sudden steering movements or sharp braking.
- To ensure a proper functioning of the tyre control display, it is necessary to repeat the basic setting every 10000 km or once a year.
- The tyre pressure monitor does not replace the need to check tyre pressure regularly.

Spare and temporary spare wheel

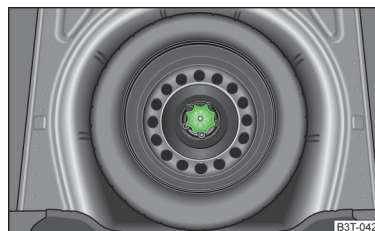


Fig. 171
Fixing the spare or temporary spare wheel

 **Read and observe  and  on page 193 first.**

The spare or temporary spare wheel is located in a well under the floor covering in the boot and is fixed in place with a special bolt » Fig. 171.


Take out the wheel

- › Open the tailgate.
- › Raise the floor covering in the boot » page 98.
- › Remove the box with the tool kit.
- › Unscrew the nut » Fig. 171 anticlockwise.
- › Take out the wheel.

Stow the wheel

- › Place the wheel into the spare wheel well with the wheel rim pointing downward.
- › Screw on the nut » Fig. 171 clockwise until the wheel is safely secured.
- › Place the box with the tool kit back into the spare wheel and secure it with the tape.
- › Fold back the floor in the luggage compartment.
- › Close the boot lid.

Fit a wheel in the appropriate dimensions and design as soon as possible.

If the dimensions or design of the spare wheel differ from the tyres fitted to the vehicle (e.g. winter tyres or low-profile tyres), it must only be used briefly in the event of a puncture and if an appropriately cautious style of driving is adopted » .

Temporary spare wheel

A warning label is displayed on the rim of the temporary spare wheel. ▶

Please note the following if you intend to use the temporary spare wheel.

- The warning label must not be covered after installing the wheel.
- Be particularly observant when driving.
- The temporary spare wheel is inflated to the maximum inflation pressure for the vehicle » Fig. 168 on page 194.
- The tyre inflation pressure of the spare wheel R 18 is 420 kPa.
- Only use this temporary spare wheel to reach the nearest specialist garage, as it is not intended for long-term use.

! WARNING

- Never drive with more than one temporary spare wheel mounted!
- Never use the temporary spare wheel if it is damaged.
- If the dimensions or design of the temporary spare wheel differ from the fitted tyres, never drive faster than 80 km/h (or 50 mph).
- Avoid accelerating at full throttle, sharp braking and fast cornering.

! CAUTION

Observe the instructions on the warning sign of the temporary spare wheel.

Full wheel trim

📖 Read and observe ! and ! on page 193 first.

Pulling off

- Hook the clamp found in the vehicle tool kit » page 201 into the reinforced edge of the wheel trim.
- Push the wheel wrench through the clamp, support on the tyre and pull off the wheel trim.

Fitting

- Press the wheel trim onto the wheel rim at the designated valve opening.
- Then press the trim into the wheel rim until its entire circumference locks correctly in place.

! CAUTION

- Use the pressure of your hand only, do not strike the full wheel trim. Avoid heavy impacts when the trim has not yet been inserted into the wheel rim. This could cause damage to the guide and centring elements of the trim.
- When using the anti-theft wheel bolt, ensure that it is in the hole in the valve area » page 204, *Securing wheels against theft*.
- If **wheel trims** are retrofitted it must be ensured that an adequate flow of air is assured to cool the brake system.

Wheel bolts



Fig. 172
Remove the cap

📖 Read and observe ! and ! on page 193 first.

Pulling off

- Push the extraction pliers » page 201 sufficiently far onto the cap until the inner catches of the pliers are positioned at the collar of the cap.
- Remove the cap in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 172.

Fitting

- Push the cap onto the wheel bolt up to the stop.

The wheel bolt caps are housed in a plastic box in the spare wheel or in the storage space for the spare wheel.

Wheel bolts

📖 Read and observe ! and ! on page 193 first.

Wheels and **wheel bolts** are matched to each other in terms of design. Each time you fit other wheels rims, e.g. light alloy wheel rims or wheels with winter tyres, you must also use the matching wheel bolts with the correct length and dome shape. The right fastening of wheels depends on this.

Winter operation

📖 Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Winter tyres	199
Snow chains	199

Winter tyres

Fitting winter tyres will significantly improve the handling of your vehicle when driving in wintry road conditions. Summer tyres have less grip on ice, snow and at temperatures below 7 °C. This is especially true of vehicles fitted with **wide tyres** or **high-speed tyres**.

In order to achieve the best possible handling properties, winter tyres must be fitted on all 4 wheels, the minimum tread depth must be 4 mm and tyres must be no older than 4 years.

Winter tyres of a lower speed category can be used provided that the permissible maximum speed of these tyres is not exceeded even if the possible maximum speed of the vehicle is higher.

The speed limit for winter tyres can be set in the MAXI DOT display in the menu item **Winter tyres** » [page 45](#).



For the sake of the environment

Fit the summer tyres on again in good time as they provide better handling properties, a shorter braking distance, less tyre noise, and reduced tyre wear on roads which are free of snow and ice as well as at temperatures above 7 °C. The fuel consumption is also lower.

Snow chains

When driving in wintry road conditions, snow chains improve not only traction, but also the braking performance.

Snow chains must only be mounted on the front wheels.

For technical reasons, it is only permissible to fit snow chains with the following wheel/tyre combinations.

Wheel size	Depth (D)	Tyre size
7J x 16 ^{a)}	45 mm	205/55
6J x 16 ^{a)}	50 mm	205/55
6J x 17	45 mm	205/50

^{a)} Not valid for vehicles with 3.6 l/191 kW FSI engine.

Only use **fine-link snow chains**. They must not project more than 9 mm - including the chain lock.

! CAUTION

- The chains must be removed when driving on roads which are free of snow. They adversely affect the handling of your vehicle, damage the tyres and are rapidly destroyed.
- Remove the **full wheel trims** » [page 198](#) before fitting the snow chains.

Do-it-yourself

Emergency equipment and self-help

Emergency equipment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

First aid kit and warning triangle	200
fire extinguisher	200
Vehicle tool kit	201

First aid kit and warning triangle



Fig. 173 Stowage compartment for the first aid kit: Superb / Superb Combi

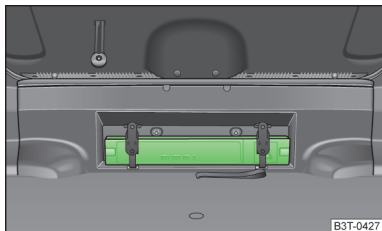


Fig. 174
Placing of the warning triangle

First-aid box

The compartment for stowing the first-aid box is located in the right of the boot » Fig. 173.

Warning triangle

The warning triangle can be attached to the rear wall trim panel with rubber straps » Fig. 174.

! WARNING

The first-aid kit and warning triangle must always be secured safely so that they do not come loose when making an emergency braking or in a vehicle collision which could cause injuries to occupants.

i Note

- Pay attention to the expiration date of the first-aid kit.
- We recommend using a first-aid kit from ŠKODA Original Accessories, which are available from a ŠKODA Partner.

fire extinguisher

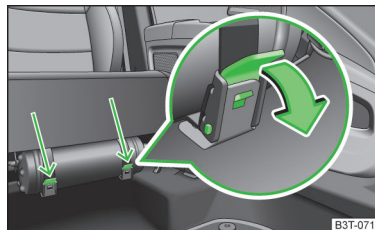


Fig. 175
Fire extinguisher

The fire extinguisher is attached by two straps in a holder under the driver seat.

Removing / attaching

- Loosen the two straps by pulling the buckles in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 175.
- Remove the fire extinguisher.

Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

Please read carefully the instructions which are attached to the fire extinguisher.

The fire extinguisher must be checked by an authorised person once a year. The national legal requirements must be observed.

! WARNING

The fire extinguisher must always be secured safely so that they do not come loose when making an emergency braking or in a vehicle collision which could cause injuries to occupants.

1 Note

- The fire extinguisher must comply with national legal requirements.
- Pay attention to the expiration date of the fire extinguisher. Proper functioning of the fire extinguisher is not assured once it has passed its expiry date.
- The fire extinguisher is part of the scope of delivery in certain countries only.

Vehicle tool kit

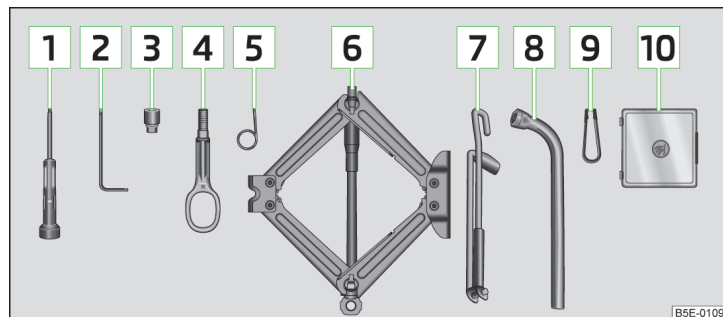


Fig. 176 Vehicle tool kit

The vehicle tool kit and the lifting jack are housed in a plastic box in the spare wheel or in the storage space for the spare wheel. There is also space here for the removable ball rod for the trailer towing device. The box is attached with a strap on the spare wheel.

The components of the vehicle tool kit (if included in the vehicle) » Fig. 176.

- 1 Screwdriver
- 2 Key for removing and installing the tail light
- 3 Adapter for anti-theft wheel bolts

- 4 Towing eye
- 5 Clamps for removing the wheel trims
- 6 Car jack
- 7 Crank for the jack
- 8 Wheel wrench
- 9 Extraction pliers for wheel bolt caps
- 10 Replacement bulb set

Screw the car jack back into its initial position after use in order to store it back in the box with the vehicle tool kit.

! WARNING

- The factory-supplied lifting jack is only intended for your model of vehicle. Under no circumstances use it to lift heavier vehicles or other loads – risk of injury!
- Ensure that the vehicle tool kit is safely secured in the boot.
- Ensure that the box is always secured with the strap.

Changing a wheel

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Preliminary work	202
Changing a wheel	202
Follow-up work	202
Loosening/tightening wheel bolts	203
Raising the vehicle	203
Securing wheels against theft	204

! WARNING

- If you are in flowing traffic, switch on the hazard warning light system and set up the warning triangle at the prescribed distance! The national legal requirements must be observed.
- Park the vehicle as far away as possible from the flow of traffic. Park on as flat and firm a surface as possible.
- The following instructions must be followed if the vehicle is subsequently fitted with tyres or rims that differ from the factory-fitted ones » page 195, New tyres.

! WARNING

Notes for vehicle lifting

- If the wheel has to be changed on a slope, first of all block the opposite wheel with a stone or similar object to prevent the vehicle from unexpectedly rolling away.
- Secure the base plate of the lifting jack with suitable means to prevent possible moving. A soft and slippery ground under the base plate may move the lifting jack, causing the vehicle to fall down. It is therefore always necessary to place the lifting jack on a solid surface or use a wide and stable base. Use a non-slip base (e.g. a rubber foot mat) if the **surface is smooth**, such as cobbled stones, tiled floor, etc.
- Only attach the lifting jack to the attachment points provided for this purpose.
- Always raise the vehicle with the doors closed.
- Never position any body parts, such as arms or legs under the vehicle, while the vehicle is raised with a lifting jack.
- Never start the engine when the vehicle is raised – risk of injury.

! WARNING

Information on the wheel bolts

- The wheel bolts must be clean and must turn easily. Never treat them with grease or oil.
- The prescribed tightening torque of the wheel bolts for steel and light alloy wheels is 120 Nm.
- If the wheel bolts are tightened to a too low tightening torque, the rims could come loose when the car is moving – risk of accident! A tightening torque which is too high can damage the bolts and threads and this can result in permanent deformation of the contact surfaces on the rims.
- In case of incorrect treatment of the wheel bolts, the wheel can loosen when the car is moving – risk of accident!

i Note

The national legal requirements must be observed when changing a wheel.

Preliminary work

 **Read and observe !** on page 201 first.

Always change a wheel on a level surface as far as possible.

The following steps must be carried out before actually changing the wheel:

202 Do-it-yourself

- Have **all the occupants get out**. The passengers should not stand on the road (instead they should remain behind a crash barrier, for instance) while the wheel is being changed.
- Switch off the engine.
- Move the gearshift lever into **Neutral** or move the selector lever for the automatic gearbox **into position P**.
- Apply the **handbrake** firmly.
- Uncouple a trailer.
- Remove the **vehicle tool kit** » page 201 and the **spare wheel** » page 197 from the boot.

Changing a wheel

 **Read and observe !** on page 201 first.

- Remove the full wheel trim » page 198 or caps » page 198.
- First of all slacken the anti-theft wheel bolt and then the other wheel bolts » page 203.
- Jack up the vehicle until the wheel that needs changing is clear of the ground » page 203.
- Unscrew the wheel bolts and place them on a clean surface (cloth, paper, etc.).
- Remove the wheel carefully.
- Attach the spare wheel and slightly screw on the wheel bolts.
- Lower the vehicle.
- Alternately tighten wheel bolts opposite (diagonally) with the wheel wrench. Tighten the anti-theft wheel bolt last » page 203.
- Replace the wheel trim or the caps.

i Note

- All bolts must be clean and must turn easily.
- Under no circumstances grease or oil the wheel bolts!
- When fitting unidirectional tyres, ensure that the direction of rotation is correct » page 193.

Follow-up work

 **Read and observe !** on page 201 first.

The following steps must also be performed after changing the wheel.

- Stow and attach the replaced wheel in the spare wheel well using a special bolt » page 197. ▶

- Stow the tool kit in the space provided and secure using the band.
- **Check the tyre pressure** on the installed spare wheel as soon as possible.
- Have the **tightening torque** of the wheel bolts **checked** with a torque wrench as soon as possible.
- Replace the damaged wheel or consult a specialist garage about repair options.

i Note

- If it is determined that the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to turn when changing the wheel, the bolts must be replaced before checking the tightening torque.
- Drive cautiously and only at a moderate speed until the tightening torque has been checked.

Loosening/tightening wheel bolts

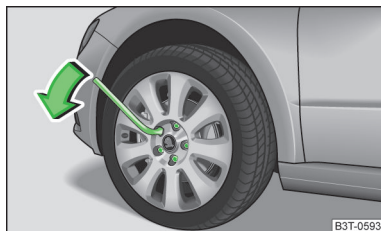


Fig. 177
Changing a wheel: Loosening the wheel bolts

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 201 first.

Releasing

- Push the wheel wrench onto the wheel bolt as far as the stop¹⁾.
- Grip the wrench at its end and turn the bolt about **one** turn in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 177.

Tightening

- Push the wheel wrench onto the wheel bolt as far as the stop¹⁾.
- Grip the wrench at its end and turn the bolt against the direction of the arrow » Fig. 177 until it is tight.

¹⁾ Use the appropriate adapter for undoing and tightening the anti-theft wheel bolts » page 204.

! WARNING

Undo the wheel bolts only a little (about one turn) provided that the vehicle has not yet been jacked up. Otherwise the wheel could come off and fall down – risk of injury!

i Note

If it proves difficult to undo the bolts, carefully apply pressure to the end of the wrench with your **foott**. Keep hold of the vehicle when doing so, and make sure you keep your footing.

Raising the vehicle

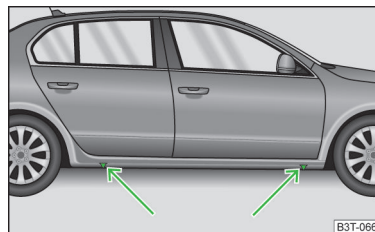


Fig. 178
Jacking points for positioning lifting jack

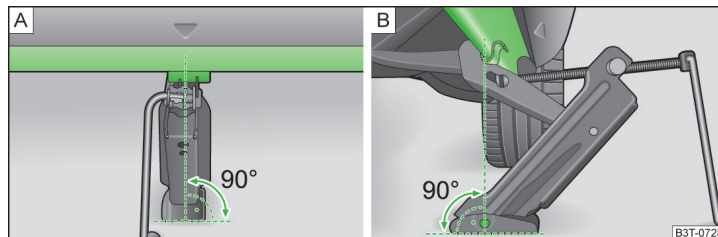


Fig. 179 Attach lifting jack

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 201 first.

Position the car jack below the jacking point closest to the flat tyre » Fig. 178. The jacking point is located directly below the engraving in the lower sill. ▶

- > Insert the crank into the mount on the car jack » page 201.
- > Position the lifting jack below the jacking point with the crank and move it up until its claw is positioned below the vertical web of the lower sill.
- > Offer the jack up so that its claw encloses the web » Fig. 179 - [B].
- > Support the base plate of the jack with its full area resting on level ground and ensure that the jack is located in a vertical position at the point where the claw encloses the web » Fig. 179 - [A].
- > Continue turning up the jack until the wheel is just about lifted off the ground.

! WARNING

- Only raise the vehicle at the attachment points.
- Choose a flat and firm surface for jacking the vehicle.

Securing wheels against theft

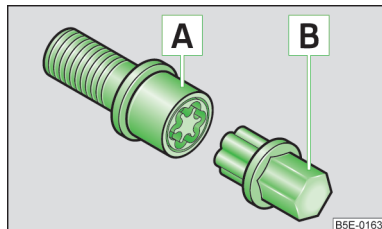


Fig. 180
Principle sketch: Anti-theft
wheel bolt with adapter

Read and observe ! on page 201 first.

The anti-theft wheel bolts can only be removed/tightened with the aid of the adapter » page 201, *Vehicle tool kit*.

- > Pry the cover off the anti-theft wheel bolt.
- > Insert adapter [B] » Fig. 180 with its toothed end fully into the inner tooting of the anti-theft wheel bolt [A] to the stop so that only the outer hexagon projects.
- > Push the wheel wrench onto the adapter [B] up to the stop.
- > Loosen or tighten the wheel bolt » page 203.
- > After removing the adapter replace the cap on the anti-theft wheel bolt.
- > Have the **tightening torque checked** with a torque wrench as soon as possible.

i Note

- Make a note of the code number hammered into the rear side of the adapter or the rear side of the anti-theft wheel bolt. This number can be used to purchase a replacement adapter from ŠKODA Original Parts if necessary.
- We recommend that you always carry the adapter for the wheel bolts with you in the vehicle. It should be stowed in the vehicle tool kit.
- The anti-theft wheel bolt set and adapter can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.

Tyre repair

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Breakdown kit	205
Preparations for using the breakdown kit	205
Sealing and inflating the tyre	206
Check after 10 minutes' driving	206

Use the breakdown kit to reliably repair tyre damage caused by foreign bodies or a puncture with diameters up to approx. 4 mm.

A repair made using the breakdown kit is **never intended to replace** a permanent repair on the tyre. Its purpose is to get you to the nearest specialist garage.

The wheel must not be removed during repair.

Do not remove foreign bodies, e.g. screws or nails, from the tyre.

The breakdown kit must not be used under the following circumstances.

- > There is damage to the rim.
- > The outside temperature is less than -20 °C.
- > The tears or punctures are greater than 4 mm in size.
- > There is damage to the tyre wall.
- > Driving with very low tyre pressure or with a completely flat tyre.
- > If the use-by-date (see inflation bottle) has passed.

! WARNING

- A tyre filled with sealant has the same driving characteristics as a standard tyre.
- Do not travel faster than 80 km/h.
- Avoid accelerating at full throttle, sharp braking and fast cornering.
- Check the tyre pressure after driving for 10 minutes.
- The sealant is hazardous to health. Remove immediately if it comes into contact with the skin.

♻️ For the sake of the environment

Used sealant or sealant whose expiry date has passed must be disposed of in accordance with environmental protection regulations.

i Note

- Observe the manufacturer's usage instructions for the breakdown kit.
- A new bottle of sealant can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Parts.
- Immediately replace the tyre that was repaired using the breakdown kit, or consult a specialist garage about repair options.

Breakdown kit

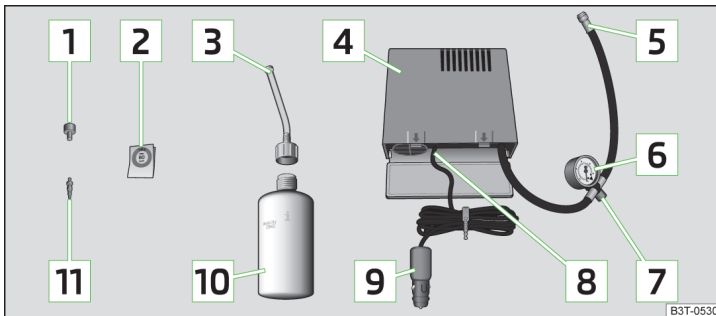


Fig. 181 Principle sketch: Components of the breakdown kit

📖 Read and observe ! on page 205 first.

The kit is located in a box under the floor covering in the luggage compartment.

Components of the breakdown kit » Fig. 181

- 1 Valve remover
- 2 Sticker with speed designation "max. 80 km/h"/"max. 50 mph"
- 3 Inflation hose with plug
- 4 Air compressor
- 5 Tyre inflation hose
- 6 Tyre inflation pressure indicator
- 7 Air release valve
- 8 ON and OFF switch
- 9 12 volt cable connector
- 10 Tyre inflator bottle with sealing agent
- 11 Replacement valve core

The valve remover **1** has a slot at its lower end which fits into the valve core. This is the only way in which you can remove and re-install the valve core from the tyre valve. The same also applies to the replacement valve core **11**.

Preparations for using the breakdown kit

📖 Read and observe ! on page 205 first.

The following preparatory work must be carried out before using the breakdown kit.

- Park the vehicle as far away as possible from the flow of traffic. Park on as flat and firm a surface as possible.
- If you are in flowing traffic, switch on the hazard warning light system and set up the warning triangle at the prescribed distance! The national legal requirements must be observed.
- Have **all the occupants get out**. The passengers should not stand on the road (instead they should remain behind a crash barrier, for instance) while the wheel is being changed.
- Switch off the engine and move the gearshift lever into **Neutral** or move the selector lever on the automatic gearbox **into position P**.
- Apply the **handbrake** firmly.
- Check that you can carry out the repairs with the breakdown kit » [page 204](#).

Uncouple a trailer.

- Remove the **breakdown kit** from the boot.
- Stick the sticker **2** » [Fig. 181 on page 205](#) on the dashboard in the driver's field of view.

- Do not remove the foreign body, e.g. screw or nail, from the tyre.
- Unscrew the valve cap.
- Use the valve remover **1** to unscrew the valve core and place it on a clean surface (rag, paper, etc.).

Sealing and inflating the tyre

📖 **Read and observe **!** on page 205 first.**

Sealing

- Shake the tyre inflator bottle **10** » Fig. 181 on page 205 vigorously several times.
- Firmly screw the inflation hose **3** onto the tyre inflator bottle **10** in a clockwise direction. The film on the cap is pierced automatically.
- Remove the plug from the inflation hose **3** and plug the open end fully onto the tyre valve.
- Hold the bottle **10** with the bottom facing upwards and fill all of the sealing agent from the tyre inflator bottle into the tyre.
- Remove the empty tyre inflator bottle from the valve.
- Screw the valve core back into the tyre valve using the valve remover **1**.

Inflating

- Screw the air compressor tyre inflation hose **5** » Fig. 181 on page 205 firmly onto the tyre valve.
- Check that the air release valve **7** is closed.
- Start the engine and run it in idle.
- Plug the connector **9** into 12 Volt socket » page 89, *Cigarette lighter*.
- Switch on the air compressor with the ON and OFF switch **8**.
- Allow the air compressor to run until a pressure of 2.0 - 2.5 bar is achieved. Maximum run time of 8 minutes » **!**
- Switch off the air compressor.
- If you cannot reach an air pressure of 2.0 - 2.5 bar, unscrew the tyre inflation hose **5** from the tyre valve.
- Drive the vehicle 10 metres forwards or backwards to allow the sealing agent to "distribute" in the tyre.
- Firmly screw the tyre inflation hose **5** back onto the tyre valve and repeat the inflation process.
- If you cannot reach the required tyre inflation pressure here either, this means the tyre has sustained too much damage. You cannot seal with tyre with the breakdown kit » **!**
- Switch off the air compressor.
- Remove the tyre inflation hose **5** from the tyre valve.

Once a tyre inflation pressure of 2.0 - 2.5 bar is reached, continue the journey at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).

Check the tyre inflation pressure after driving for 10 minutes » page 206.

! WARNING

- The tyre inflation hose and air compressor may get hot as the tyre is being inflated - there is a risk of injury.
- Do not place the hot tyre inflation hose or hot air compressor on flammable materials - there is a risk of fire.
- If you cannot inflate the tyre to at least 2.0 bar, this means the damage sustained was too serious. The sealing agent cannot be used to seal the tyre. 🚫 Do not drive the vehicle. Seek help from a specialist garage.

! CAUTION

Switch off the air compressor after running 8 minutes at the latest - there is a risk of overheating. Allow the air compressor to cool a few minutes before switching it on again.

Check after 10 minutes' driving

📖 **Read and observe **!** on page 205 first.**

Check the tyre inflation pressure after driving for 10 minutes!

If the tyre pressure is 1.3 bar or less

- 🚫 **Do not drive the vehicle!** You cannot properly seal with tyre with the breakdown kit.

If the tyre pressure is 1.3 bar or more

- Adjust the tyre inflation pressure to the correct value (see inside of fuel filler cap).
- Continue driving carefully to the nearest specialist garage at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).

Jump-starting

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- Jump-starting using the battery from another vehicle _____ 207
- Jump-starting in vehicles with the START-STOP system _____ 208
- Jump-starting vehicles with the vehicle battery in the boot _____ 208

! WARNING

- A discharged vehicle battery may already freeze at temperatures just below 0 °C. If the battery is frozen, do not jump start with the battery of another vehicle – there is a risk of explosion.
- Pay attention to the warning instructions relating to working in the engine compartment » [page 182](#).
- The non-insulated parts of the terminal clamps must never touch each other – there is a risk of short circuit.
- The jump-start cable connected to the positive terminal of the battery must not come into contact with electrically conducting parts of the vehicle – there is a risk of short circuit.
- Do not clamp the jump-start cable to the negative terminal of the discharged battery. There is the risk of detonating gas seeping out the battery being ignited by the strong spark which results from the engine being started.
- Route the jump-start cables so that they cannot be caught by any rotating parts in the engine compartment.
- Do not bend over the battery – there is a risk of caustic burns.
- The vent screws of the battery cells must be tightened firmly.
- Keep any sources of ignition (naked flame, smouldering cigarettes, etc.) away from the battery – risk of explosion!
- Never jump-start vehicle batteries with insufficient acid levels – risk of explosion and chemical burns.

! CAUTION

- There must not be any contact between the two vehicles otherwise current may flow as soon as the negative terminals are connected.
- The discharged battery must be properly connected to the system of the vehicle.
- We recommend you buy jump-start cables from a car battery specialist.

Jump-starting using the battery from another vehicle

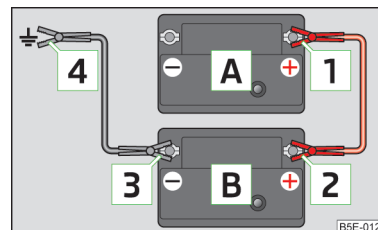


Fig. 182
Jump-starting: A – flat battery, B – battery providing current

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 207 first.

The battery of another vehicle can be used to jump-start your vehicle if the engine will not start because the battery is flat. Jump-start cables are required for this purpose.

The jump-start cables must be attached in the following sequence.

- Attach clamp **1** to the positive terminal of the discharged battery **A** » [Fig. 182](#).
- Attach clamp **2** to the positive terminal of the battery supplying power **B**.
- Attach clamp **3** to the negative terminal of the battery supplying power **B**.
- Attach the clamp **4** to a solid metal component firmly connected to the engine block or to the engine block itself.

Starting engine

- Start the engine on the vehicle providing the power and allow it to idle.
- Start the engine of the vehicle with the discharged battery.
- If the engine does not start, halt the attempt to start the engine after 10 seconds and wait for 30 seconds before repeating the process.
- Disconnect the cables in exactly the **reverse order** to the one described above.

Both batteries must have a rated voltage of 12 V. The **capacity** (Ah) of the battery supplying the power must not be significantly less than the capacity of the discharged battery in your vehicle.

Jump-start cables

Only use jump-start cables which have an adequately large cross-section and insulated terminal clamps. Observe the instructions of the jumper lead manufacturer.

Positive cable - colour coding in the majority of cases is red. ▶

Negative cable - colour coding in the majority of cases is black.

Jump-starting in vehicles with the START-STOP system

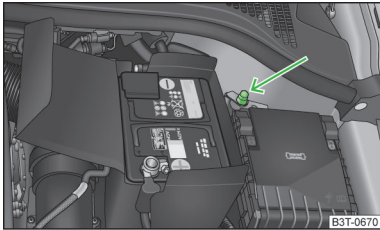


Fig. 183
Engine earth: START-STOP system

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 207 first.

On vehicles with the START-STOP system, the jump-start cable of the charger must never be connected directly to the negative pole of the vehicle battery, but only to the engine earth » Fig. 183.

Jump-starting vehicles with the vehicle battery in the boot

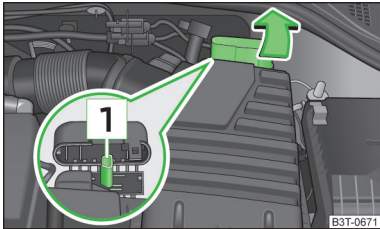


Fig. 184
Detail of the engine compartment: Jump-starting point

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 207 first.

On vehicles with the vehicle battery in the boot, the positive terminal of the battery supplying the power can only be connected to the jump-starting point in the engine compartment of the vehicle being started by means of a jump-start cable » Fig. 184.

- › Open the protective cap of the jump-starting point in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 184.
- › Connect the positive terminal of the battery supplying the power with the jump-starting point.

- › Attach the negative terminal of the battery supplying the power to a solid metal part firmly connected to the engine block or to the engine block itself.
- › Start the engine.
- › After starting the engine, close the protective cap of the jump-starting point.

Towing the vehicle

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front towing eye	209
Rear towing eye	210
Vehicles with a tow hitch	210

Vehicles with **manual transmission** may be towed in with a tow bar or a tow rope or with the front or rear wheels raised.

Vehicles with **automatic transmission** may be towed in with a tow bar or a tow rope or with the front wheels raised. If the vehicle is raised at rear, the automatic gearbox is damaged!

A **tow bar** is the safest way of towing a vehicle and also minimises any shocks. Only use a **tow rope** if a suitable tow bar is not available.

When towing, the following guidelines must be observed.

Driver of the tow vehicle

- › Release the clutch particularly gently when starting off or depress the accelerator particularly gently if the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox.
- › On vehicles with a manual transmission, only push down on the accelerator pedal once the rope is taught.

The maximum towing speed is **50 km/h**.

Driver of the towed vehicle

- › Switch on the ignition so that the steering wheel is not locked and so that the turn signal lights, horn, windscreen wipers and windscreen washer system can be used.
- › Take the vehicle out of gear or move the selector lever into position **N** if the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox.

Please note that the brake servo unit and power steering only operate if the engine is running. If the engine is not running, significantly more physical force is required to depress the brake pedal and steer the vehicle. ▶

If using a tow rope, ensure that it is always kept taught.

! CAUTION

- Do not tow start the engine – there is a risk of damaging the engine and the catalytic converter. The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » [page 207, Jump-starting](#).
- If the gearbox no longer contains any oil because of a defect, your vehicle must only be towed with the driven wheels raised clear of the ground or on a special breakdown vehicle or trailer.
- The vehicle must be transported on a special breakdown vehicle or trailer if it is not possible to tow in the vehicle in the way described or if the towing distance is greater than 50 km.
- To protect both vehicles when tow-starting or towing, the tow rope should be elastic. Thus one should only use plastic fibre rope or a rope made out of a similarly elastic material.
- While towing, take care to avoid impermissibly high tensile forces or jerky loads. There is always a risk of excessive stresses and damage resulting at the points to which you attach the tow rope or tow bar when you attempt to tow a vehicle which is not standing on a paved road.
- Attach the tow rope or the tow bar to the **towing eyes** » [page 209, Front towing eye](#) or » [page 210, Rear towing eye](#) to the **detachable ball head of the towing equipment** » [page 163](#).

I Note

- We recommend using a tow rope from ŠKODA Original Accessories, which is available from a ŠKODA Partner.
- Towing another vehicle requires a certain amount of practice. Both drivers should be familiar with the particular points about towing a vehicle. Unskilled drivers should not attempt to tow in another vehicle or to be towed in.
- When towing, respect the national legal provisions, especially those which relate to the identification of the towing vehicle and the vehicle being towed.
- The tow rope must not be twisted as it may in certain circumstances result in the front towing eye being unscrewed out of your vehicle.

Front towing eye

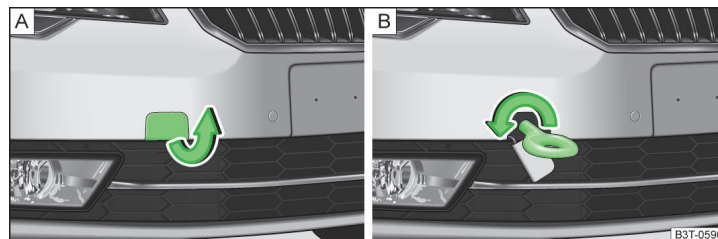


Fig. 185 Removing the cap / installing the towing eye

📖 Read and observe ! on page 209 first.

- Remove the cap from the front bumper » [Fig. 185 - A](#).
- Screw in the towing eye by turning to the left up to the stop » [Fig. 185 - B](#) and tighten as much as possible. For tightening purposes, we recommend, for example, using the wheel wrench, towing eye from another vehicle or a similar object that can be pushed through the eye.
- After unscrewing the towing eye, put the cap on and press into place. The cap must engage firmly.

! CAUTION

The towing eye must always be screwed in fully and firmly tightened, otherwise the towing eye can tear when towing in or tow-starting.

Rear towing eye

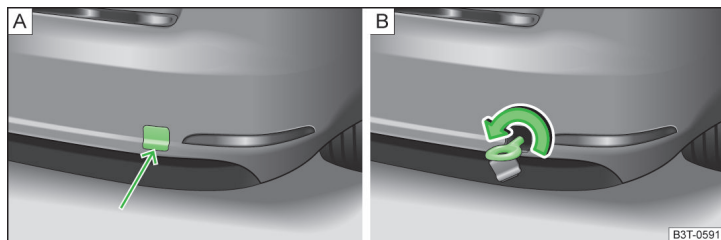


Fig. 186 Removing the cap / installing the towing eye

Read and observe on page 209 first.

- ▶ Press onto the bottom part of the cap in the rear bumper » Fig. 186 - A and remove it.
- ▶ Screw in the towing eye by turning to the left up to the stop » Fig. 186 - B and tighten as much as possible. For tightening purposes, we recommend, for example, using the wheel wrench, towing eye from another vehicle or a similar object that can be pushed through the eye.
- ▶ After unscrewing the towing eye, put the cap on and press into place. The cap must engage firmly.

On vehicles with a factory-fitted towing device, there is no mount for the screw-in towing eye behind the cap » page 210, *Vehicles with a tow hitch*.

CAUTION

The towing eye must always be screwed in fully and firmly tightened, otherwise the towing eye can tear when towing in or tow-starting.

Vehicles with a tow hitch

Read and observe on page 209 first.

On vehicles with a factory-fitted towing device, there is no mount for the screw-in towing eye behind the cap.

Use the built-in detachable ball rod for towing » page 163, *Towing device*.

Towing the vehicle using the towing device is a viable alternative solution to using the towing eye.

If the towing device is removed completely, it must be replaced with the standard reinforcement of the rear bumper which is part of the mount for the towing eye.

If this procedure is not observed, the vehicle may not meet the national legal provisions.

CAUTION

The detachable ball rod and/or the vehicle can be damaged if an unsuitable tow bar is used.

Note

The detachable ball rod must always be in the vehicle so that it can be used for towing, if necessary.

Radio remote control

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Replacing the battery in the remote control key	211
Synchronising the remote control	211
Replace the battery in the remote control of the auxiliary heater (parking heater)	211

CAUTION

- The replacement battery must have the same specification as the original battery.
- We recommend having faulty rechargeable batteries replaced by a ŠKODA service partner.
- When replacing the battery, pay attention to the correct polarity.

For the sake of the environment

Dispose of the used battery in accordance with national legal provisions.

Replacing the battery in the remote control key

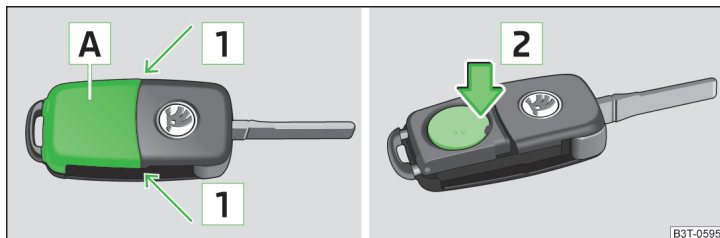


Fig. 187 Remove cover/take out battery

Read and observe **I** on page 210 first.

The battery is located under a cover **A** » Fig. 187.

We recommend having the key batteries replaced by a specialist garage. However, if you would like to replace the discharged battery yourself proceed as follows.

- Flip out the key.
- Press off the battery cover with your thumb or using a flat screwdriver in the region of the arrows **1**.
- Remove the discharged battery from the key by pressing the battery down in the region of the arrow **2**.
- Insert the new battery.
- Place the battery cover on the key and press it down until it clicks into place.

I Note

- The key has to be synchronised if the vehicle cannot be unlocked or locked with the remote control key after replacing the battery » page 211.
- If a key has an affixed decorative cover, this will be destroyed when the battery is replaced. A replacement cover can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.

Synchronising the remote control

Read and observe **I** on page 210 first.

If the vehicle does not unlock when pressing the remote control, the key may not be synchronised. This can occur when the buttons on the remote control key are actuated a number of times outside of the operative range of the equipment or the battery in the remote control key was replaced.

Synchronise the key as follows.

- Press any button on the remote control key.
- Pressing of the button means that the door will unlock with the key within 1 minute.

Replace the battery in the remote control of the auxiliary heater (parking heater)

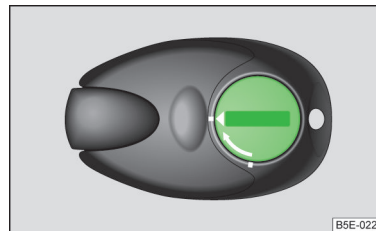


Fig. 188
Radio remote control: Battery cover

Read and observe **I** on page 210 first.

The battery is located under a cover on the back of the radio remote control » Fig. 188.

- Insert a flat, blunt object, such as a coin, into the gap of the battery cover.
- Turn the cover against the direction of the arrow up to the mark to open the cover.
- Replace the battery.
- Return the battery cover.
- Turn the cover in the direction of the arrow up to the initial marking, engage.

Emergency unlocking/locking

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Unlocking/locking the driver's door	212
Locking a door	212
Unlocking the tailgate	212
Selector lever-emergency unlocking	213

Unlocking/locking the driver's door

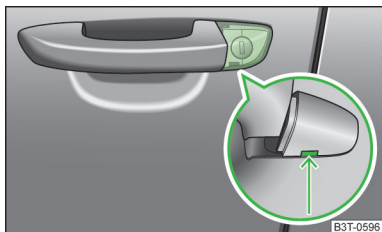


Fig. 189
Handle on the driver's door: covered locking cylinder

- Pull on the handle.
- Push the vehicle key into the recess on the bottom side of the cover in the region of the arrow and fold it upwards » Fig. 189.
- Insert the vehicle key (the buttons facing upward) into the locking cylinder and lock/unlock the vehicle.

! CAUTION

Make sure you do not damage the paint when performing an emergency locking/unlocking.

Locking a door

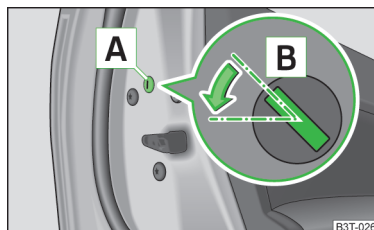


Fig. 190
Left rear door: Emergency locking

An emergency locking mechanism is located on the face side of the doors which have no locking cylinder, it is only visible after opening the door.

- Remove the cover **A** » Fig. 190.
- Insert the key into the slot **B** and turn it into the horizontal position in the direction of the arrow (mirror-inverted on the right doors).
- Replace the cover.

After closing the door, it cannot be opened from the outside. The door is unlocked by pulling on the door opening lever and is then opened from the outside.

Unlocking the tailgate

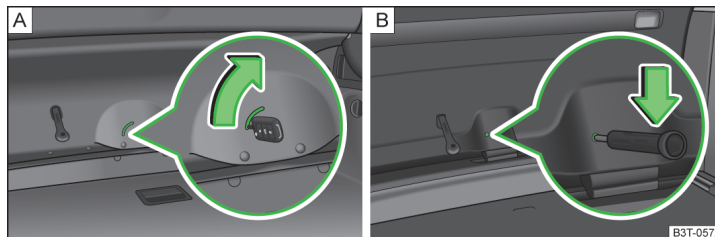


Fig. 191 Emergency unlocking: Superb / Superb Combi

Unlocking (Superb)

- Fold the rear seat backrest forward » page 85, *Seat backrests*.
- Insert the vehicle key into the slot in the trim panel as far as the stop » Fig. 191 - **A**.

- Unlock the lid by moving it in the direction of the arrow.
- Open the tailgate.

Unlocking (Superb Combi)

- Fold the rear seat backrest forward » page 85, *Seat backrests*.
- Insert a screwdriver or similar tool into the opening of the trim as far as it goes » Fig. 191 - B.
- Unlock the lid by moving it in the direction of the arrow.
- Open the tailgate.

Selector lever-emergency unlocking

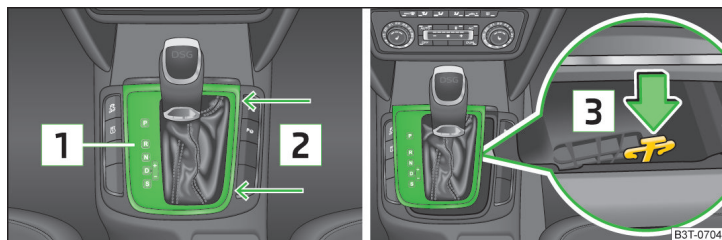


Fig. 192 Selector lever-emergency unlocking

- Firmly apply the handbrake.
- Grasp the cover [1] in the area of arrow [2] » Fig. 192 and carefully pull upwards.
- Also unlock the cover on the other side.
- Use a finger to press the yellow plastic part in the direction of the arrow [3].
- At the same time, press the locking button in the selector lever and move the selector lever to position N.

If the selector lever is moved again to position P, it is once again blocked.

Emergency operation of the sliding/tilting roof

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation	213
Activation after un-clamping and re-clamping the battery	214

Operation

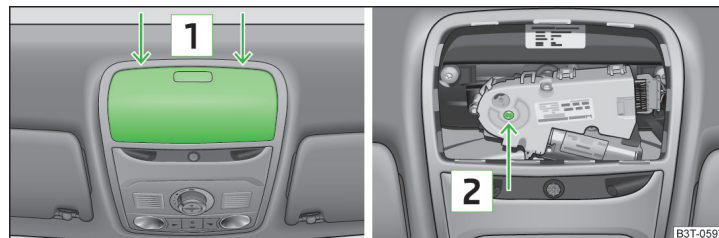


Fig. 193 Point for positioning screwdriver/opening for positioning the key

The sliding/tilting roof can be closed or opened manually if a fault occurs. The emergency operation of the sliding/tilting roof is located underneath the glasses storage box [1] » page 91, *Glasses storage box*.

- Open the glasses storage box.
- Carefully insert an approximately 5 mm wide screwdriver into the slot in the positions shown by the arrows [1] » Fig. 193.
- Carefully fold the glasses storage box downwards by gently pressing down and turning the screwdriver.
- Insert an Allen key, SW 4, up to the stop into the opening [2] and close or open the sliding/tilting roof.
- Reinstall the glasses storage box by first inserting the plastic plugs and then pushing the entire part upwards.

Have the fault on the sliding tilting roof rectified as soon as possible by a specialist garage. ▶

i Note

- It is necessary after each emergency operation to move the sliding/tilting roof into the basic position.¹⁾ This is why the rotary switch must be set to position **A** » Fig. 45 on page 62 and pressed forwards for about 10 seconds.
- After each emergency operation, it is necessary to activate the roof²⁾ » page 214.

Activation after un-clamping and re-clamping the battery

The panoramic sliding/tilting roof (referred to from now on as just the sliding/tilting roof) and the sun screen must be activated after disconnecting and re-connecting the battery.

To activate the sliding/tilting roof, press the notch on the control dial downwards and forwards for approx. 10 seconds.

To activate the sun screen, press and hold the switch **G** » Fig. 47 on page 64 for approx. 10 seconds.

If the sliding/tilting roof or sun screen is not fully closed or pushed shut when disconnecting and reconnecting the battery, they must first be closed or pushed shut » page 64, *Opening/closing the sun screen* » page 64, *Operation*. Only then is it possible to perform the activation.

Replacing windscreen wiper blades

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Replacing the windscreen wiper blades	214
Replacing the rear window wiper blade	215

! WARNING

Replace the windscreen wiper blades once or twice a year for safety reasons. These can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.

Replacing the windscreen wiper blades

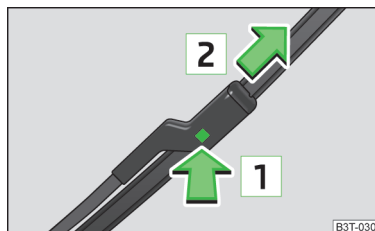


Fig. 194
Windscreen wiper blade

Read and observe **!** on page 214 first.

Before replacing the windscreen wiper blade, put the windscreen wiper arms into the service position.

Service position for changing wiper blades

- Closing the bonnet.
- Switch the ignition off and on again.
- Within 10 seconds, press the lever in position **4** and hold it for around 2 seconds » Fig. 62 on page 76.

The windscreen wiper arms move into the service position.

Removing the wiper blade

- Lift the windscreen wiper arm away from the windscreen.
- Hold the upper part of the wiper arm and unlock the securing mechanism **1** » Fig. 194.
- Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow **2**.

Fitting the wiper blade

- Push the wiper blade in until it latches on the stop.
- Check that the wiper blade is correctly attached.
- Fold the wiper arm back to the windscreen.
- Turn on the ignition and press the lever into position **4** » Fig. 62 on page 76.

The windscreen wiper arms move into the home position.

¹⁾ Applies to emergency operation of the Superb sliding/tilting roof.

²⁾ Applies to emergency operation of the Superb Combi sliding/tilting roof.

Replacing the rear window wiper blade

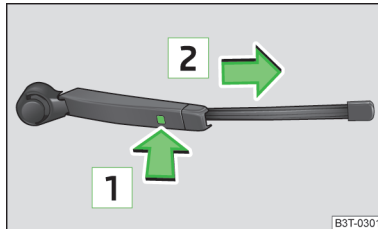


Fig. 195
Rear window wiper blade

Read and observe on page 214 first.

Removing the wiper blade

- Lift the windscreen wiper arm away from the windscreen.
- Hold the upper part of the wiper arm and unlock the securing mechanism » Fig. 195.
- Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow .

Fitting the wiper blade

- Push the wiper blade in until it latches on the stop.
- Check that the wiper blade is correctly attached.
- Fold the wiper arm back to the windscreen.

Fuses and light bulbs

Fuses

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Fuses in the dash panel	216
Fuses in the engine compartment	217
Assignment of fuses in the engine compartment	218

Individual electrical circuits are protected by fuses.

Switch off the ignition and the corresponding power consuming device before replacing a fuse.

Find out which fuse belongs to the component that is not operating » page 216, *Fuses in the dash panel* or » page 218, *Assignment of fuses in the engine compartment*.

Electrically adjustable seats are protected by **automatic circuit breakers**, which switch on again automatically after a few seconds after the overload has been eliminated.

Fuse colour	Maximum amperage
light brown	5
dark brown	7.5
red	10
blue	15
yellow	20
white	25
green	30
orange	40
red	50

WARNING

Always read and observe the warnings before completing any work in the engine compartment » page 182.

! CAUTION

- "Never repair" fuses or replace them with a fuse of a higher amperage - risk of fire! This may also cause damage at another part of the electrical system.
- If a newly inserted fuse blows again after a short time, have the electrical system checked as quickly as possible by a specialist garage.
- A blown fuse is recognisable by the molten metal strip. Replace the faulty fuse with a new one of the **same** amperage.

i Note

- We recommend always carrying replacement fuses in the vehicle. A box of replacement fuses can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.
- There can be several power consuming devices for one fuse.
- Multiple fuses may exist for a single power consuming device.

Fuses in the dash panel

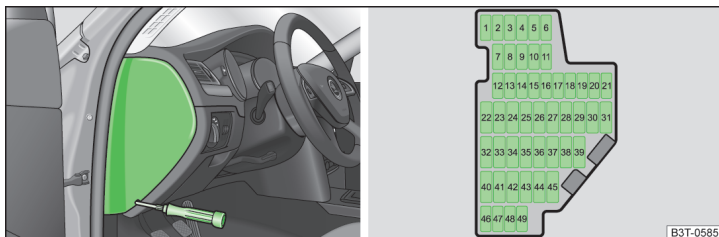


Fig. 196 Cover of the fuse box in the control panel / fuses

📖 Read and observe **i** and **!** on page 215 first.

The fuses are located on the left side of the dash panel behind a cover.

Replacing fuses

- Remove the cover. » Fig. 196
- Remove the plastic clip from the holder in the fuse box cover in the dash panel.
- Clip it onto the respective fuse and pry out.
- Insert a new fuse.
- Return the clip to its original place.
- Re-insert the cover of the fuse box .

Fuse assignment in the dash panel

No.	Power consumer
1	Diagnostic socket, engine control unit, fuel pump relay, fuel pump control unit
2	ABS control unit, ESC switch for tyre pressure warning, brake sensor, for START-STOP coil of the starter relay only
3	Switch and airbag control unit
4	WIV, tail lights, dimming mirrors, pressure sensor, telephone preinstallation
5	Control unit for headlight beam adjustment and headlight swivel, control unit for parking aid, control unit for park assist
6	Instrument cluster, control unit for electromechanical power steering, selector lever lock, power supply for data bus
7	Heated opening of the crankcase ventilation, air flow meter
8	Control unit for trailer detection
9	Relay for auxiliary heating and ventilation
10	Adaptive left main headlight
11	Adaptive right main headlight
12	Not assigned
13	Diagnostic socket, light switch, rain sensor, clock
14	Central locking system and bonnet lid
15	Central control unit - interior lights
16	The air conditioning system
17	Not assigned
18	Phone
19	Instrument cluster, wind-shield wiper lever and turn signal lever, the relay coil for heating wind-shield
20	KESSY
21	KESSY ELV
22	Air blower for Climatronic
23	Front power window, central locking of the front doors
24	Selector lever lock
25	Rear window heater, relay for auxiliary heating and ventilation
26	Power socket in the boot

No.	Power consumer
27	Fuel pump relay, control unit for fuel pump, injection valves
28	Electric boot lid
29	Haldex
30	Climate controlled front seats
31	DVD pre-installation
32	Front power window, central locking system of the rear doors
33	Electric sliding/tilting roof
34	Alarm, spare horn
35	front and rear lighter
36	Headlight cleaning system
37	Heated front seats
38	Heated rear seats
39	Rear window wiper
40	Fan air-conditioning system, relay for auxiliary heating and ventilation
41	Not assigned
42	Light switch
43	Control unit for trailer detection
44	Control unit for trailer detection
45	Control unit for trailer detection
46	Switch for seat heating
47	Telephone preinstallation
48	Preparation for the aftermarket radio
49	Only for START-STOP: Central control unit, DC-DC converter, the engine control unit

Fuses in the engine compartment

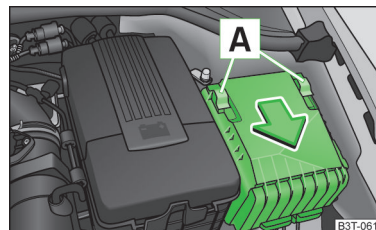


Fig. 197
Cover for the fuse box in the engine compartment

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 215 first.

On some vehicles, the battery cover must be removed before removing the cover for the fuse box » page 191.

Replacing fuses

➤ Move the safety catch of the cover of the fuse box **A** » Fig. 197 in the direction of the arrow.

The symbol is displayed behind the catches. 🔒

➤ Remove the cover.

➤ Replace the appropriate fuse.

➤ Replace the cover on the fuse box and the safety clip **A** move against the arrow.

The symbol is displayed behind the catches 🔒.

The cover is locked into position.

⚠ CAUTION

The cover for the fuse box in the engine compartment must always be applied correctly. If the cover is not replaced properly, water may get into the fuse box - leading to a risk of vehicle damage!

Assignment of fuses in the engine compartment

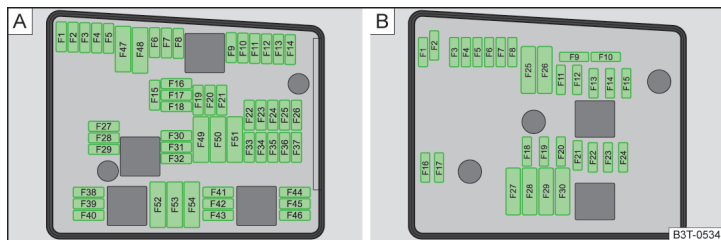


Fig. 198 Fuses: Type A / Type B

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 215 first.

Fuse assignment in the engine compartment - version A

No.	Consumer
1	Front right main headlight, right tail light
2	Valves for ABS
3 - 4	Not assigned
5	Horn
6 - 12	Not assigned
13	Control unit for automatic gearbox
14	Not assigned
15	Coolant pump
16	Not assigned
17	Instrument cluster, windscreen wiper lever, and turn signal lever
18	Audio amplifier (sound system)
19	Radio
20 - 22	Not assigned
23	Engine control unit
24	Data bus control unit
25 - 26	Not assigned
27	Fuel dosage valve
28	Engine control unit

No.	Consumer
29	Main relay
30	Auxiliary heating and ventilation control unit
31	Windscreen wipers
32 - 37	Not assigned
38	Radiator fan, valves
39	Clutch/brake pad sensor
40	Lambda probe
41	AKF valve
42	Lambda probe
43	Ignition
44 - 46	Not assigned
47	Front left main headlight, left tail light
48	Pump for ABS
49	Power supply for terminal 15 (ignition on)
50 - 51	Not assigned
52	Power supply relay - terminal X ^{a)}
53	Power to the internal fuse carrier
54	Not assigned

^{a)} In order not to drain the battery unnecessarily when starting the engine, the electrical components of this terminal are automatically switched off.

Fuse assignment in the engine compartment - version B

No.	Consumer
1	Not assigned
2	Control unit for automatic gearbox DSG
3	Measuring circuit
4	Valves for ABS
5	Control unit for automatic gearbox DSG
6	Not assigned
7	Power supply relay - terminal X ^{a)}
8	Radio
9	Not assigned
10	Engine control unit, Main relay

No.	Consumer
11	Auxiliary heating and ventilation control unit
12	Data bus control unit
13	Engine control unit
14	Ignition
15	Lambda probe (petrol engine), glow plug system relay and fuel pump (diesel engine)
16	Front right main headlight, right tail light
17	Horn
18	Audio amplifier (sound system)
19	Windscreen wipers
20	Valve for metering fuel, coolant pump, high pressure pump
21	Lambda probe
22	Clutch pedal switch
23	Coil of the coolant pump relay valves, high-pressure pump
24	Radiator fan
25	Pump for ABS
26	Front left main headlight, left tail light
27	Control unit for glow plug system
28	Windscreen heater
29	Power to the internal fuse carrier
30	Power supply for terminal 15 (ignition on)

a) In order not to drain the battery unnecessarily when starting the engine, the electrical components of this terminal are automatically switched off.

Bulbs

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Headlights	220
Replacing the low beam bulb	220
Replacing bulb for main beam and daytime running lights	220
Replacing bulb for main beam	221
Replacing the bulb for the fog light	221

Replacing the bulb for the licence plate light	222
Rear light (Superb Combi)	222
Replacing bulbs in rear light (Superb Combi)	223

Some manual skills are required to change a bulb. For this reason, we recommend having bulbs replaced by a specialist garage or seeking other expert help in the event of any uncertainties.

- Switch off the ignition and all of the lights before replacing a bulb.
- Faulty bulbs must only be replaced with the same type of bulbs. The designation is located on the light socket or the glass bulb.
- A stowage compartment for replacement bulbs is located in a plastic box in the spare wheel or underneath the floor covering in the boot.

! WARNING

- Always read and observe the warnings before completing any work in the engine compartment » [page 182](#).
- Accidents can be caused if the road in front of the vehicle is not sufficiently illuminated and the vehicle cannot or can only be seen with difficulty by other road users.
- Bulbs H7 H8 and H15 are pressurised and may burst when changing the bulb - risk of injury! We therefore recommended wearing gloves and safety glasses when changing a bulb.
- Gas discharge bulbs (xenon bulbs) operate with a high voltage, professional knowledge is required - risk of death!
- Switch off the respective vehicle light when changing the bulb.

! CAUTION

Do not take hold of the glass bulb with naked fingers (even the smallest amount of dirt reduces the working life of the light bulb). Use a clean cloth, napkin, or similar.

i Note

- This Owner's Manual only describes the replacement of bulbs where it is possible to replace the bulbs on your own without any complications arising. Other bulbs must be replaced by a specialist garage.
- We recommend that a box of replacement bulbs always be carried in the vehicle. Replacement bulbs can be purchased from ŠKODAOriginal Accessories.
- We recommend having the headlight settings checked by a specialist garage after replacing a bulb in the main, low or fog beam.
- In case of failure of a xenon gas discharge lamp or an LED diode, visit a specialist garage.

Headlights

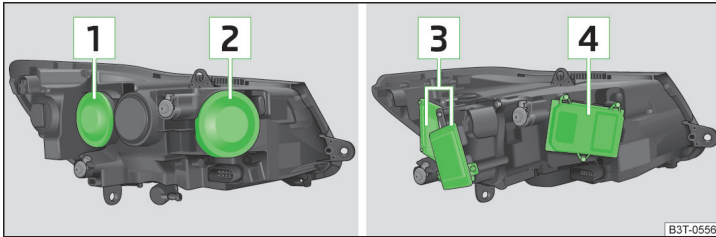


Fig. 199 Bulb arrangement: Headlight with halogen bulb/with Xenon bulb

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 219 first.

Headlight with halogen bulb

- 1** Low beam
- 2** Main beam, separate daytime running lights, and parking light

Headlights with Xenon light

- 3** Xenon gas discharge bulbs
- 4** Main beam

Replacing the low beam bulb

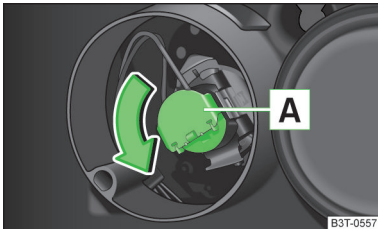


Fig. 200
Halogen headlight: Changing the bulb for the low beam

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 219 first.

- Remove the rubber cover **1** » Fig. 199 on page 220.
- Turn the plug with the bulb **A** » Fig. 200 as far as the stop in the direction of the arrow.

- Change the bulb.
- Insert the bulb holder with the new bulb and turn in an anti-clockwise direction as far as the stop.
- Insert the rubber cover **1**.

Replacing bulb for main beam and daytime running lights

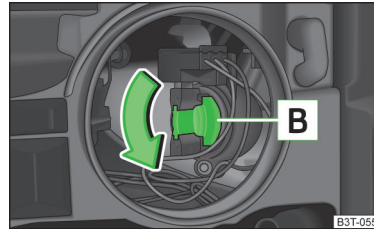


Fig. 201
Halogen headlight: Replacing the bulb for main beam and separate daytime running lights

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 219 first.

- Remove the rubber cover **2** » Fig. 199 on page 220.
- Turn the bulb holder **A** » Fig. 201 in the direction of the arrow as far as the stop.
- Replace the bulb, insert the bulb holder with the new bulb and turn in the opposite direction to that of the arrow as far as it goes.
- Insert the rubber cover **2**.

Replacing bulb for main beam

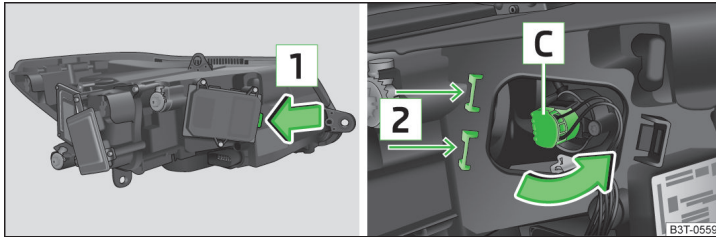


Fig. 202 Headlights with Xenon light: Changing the bulb for the main beam

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 219 first.

- Unlock the protective cap in the direction of arrow **1** » Fig. 202 and remove.
- Turn the plug with bulb **C** anti-clockwise to the stop and remove it.
- Change the bulb.
- Insert the bulb holder with the new bulb and turn in an anti-clockwise direction as far as the stop.
- Insert the protective cap in holder **2** and carefully push in.

The protective cover must engage firmly.

Replacing the bulb for the fog light

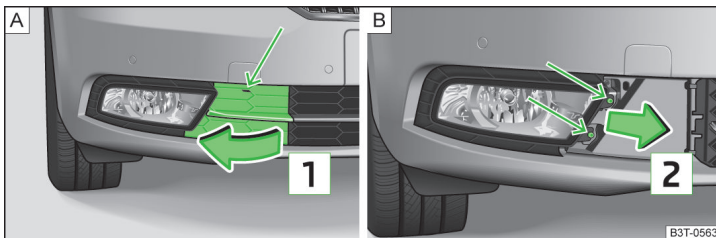


Fig. 203 Front bumper: Remove the protective grille/fog light

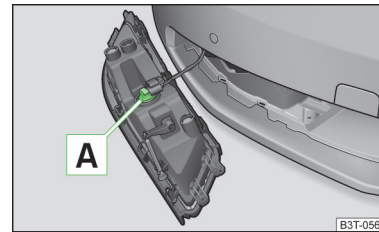


Fig. 204
Replacing the light bulb

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 219 first.

Removing the protective grille

- Undo the protective grille in the area of the arrow » Fig. 203 - **A** using the clamp for removing the wheel trims » page 201, *Vehicle tool kit*.
- Remove the protective grille in the direction of the arrow **1**.

Changing light bulbs for fog lights

- Use the screwdriver from the tool kit to unscrew the fog lamp » Fig. 203 - **B**.
- Remove the headlight in the direction of arrow **2**.
- Remove the connector.
- Turn bulb holder **A** » Fig. 204 in an anti-clockwise direction up to the stop and remove.
- Insert the bulb holder with the new bulb into the headlight and turn in a clockwise direction as far as the stop.
- Fit the connector.
- Replace the fog lamp by inserting it in the opposite direction of the arrow **2** » Fig. 203 - **B** and screw tight.
- Insert the protective grille and carefully press it in.

The protective grille must engage firmly.

Replacing the bulb for the licence plate light

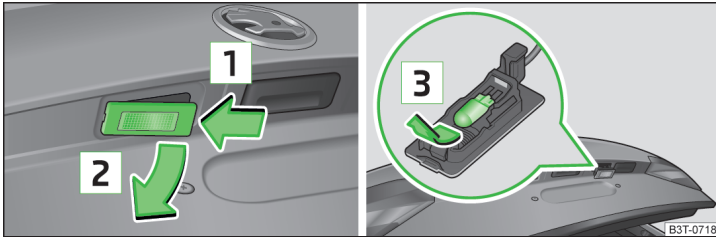


Fig. 205 Remove the number plate light/replace the bulb

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 219 first.

- Open the boot lid.
- Push in the lamp in the direction of the arrow **1** » Fig. 205.

The lamp comes loose.

- Swivel out the lamp in the direction of the arrow **2** and remove it.
- Remove the faulty bulb from the holder in the direction of the arrow **3**.
- Insert a new bulb into the holder.
- Reinsert the lamp in the opposite direction to the arrow **1**.
- Push on the light until the spring clicks into place.

Check that the light is securely inserted.

Rear light (Superb Combi)

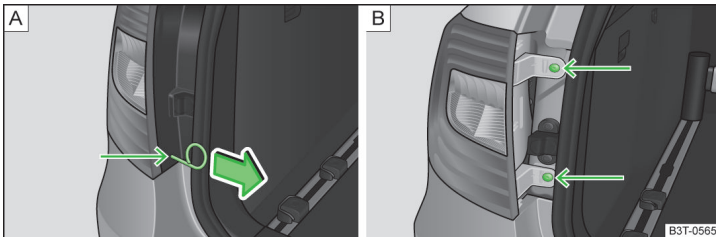


Fig. 206 Removing: Cover/light

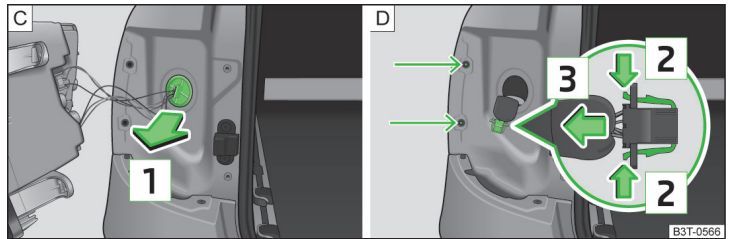


Fig. 207 Seal expand / lighting connector

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 219 first.

Removing

- Open the tailgate.
- Insert the clamp for removing the wheel trims » page 201, *Vehicle tool kit* into the hole at the position indicated by the arrow » Fig. 206 - [A].
- Remove the cover in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 206 - [A].
- Use the screwdriver from the tool kit to unscrew the lamp » Fig. 206 - [B].
- Grasp the rear light and carefully remove away from the direction of travel.
- Remove the rubber seal in the direction of arrow **1** » Fig. 207 - [C].
- Pull off the cable bundle with the plug cap » Fig. 207 - [D].
- Press together the interlocks on the connector in the direction of arrow **2** » Fig. 207 - [D].
- Carefully remove the connector from the tail lamp assembly in the direction of the arrow **3**.

Fitting

- Insert the connector into the lamp and lock it securely.
- Install the rubber seal in the body in the opposite direction to arrow **1** install » Fig. 207 - [C].
- Insert the tail lamp with the holes **1** » Fig. 208 on page 223 into the bolts on the body » Fig. 207 - [D].
- Carefully press the tail light into the bolts on the bodywork.

Be careful not to pinch the cable bundle between the bodywork and light.

- Screw the tail lamp into place and install the cover.
- Ensure that the cover engages firmly.

! CAUTION

Ensure that the vehicle paintwork and the tail lamp are not damaged when removing and installing the tail lamp.

Replacing bulbs in rear light (Superb Combi)

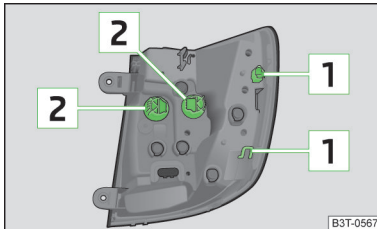


Fig. 208
Replacing the light bulb

Read and observe and on page 219 first.

- Turn the bulb holder [2] » Fig. 208 in an **anti-clockwise** direction and remove it from the lamp housing.
- Push the faulty bulb into the holder, turn in **anti** -clockwise direction up to the stop and remove.
- Insert a new bulb into the holder and turn **in a clockwise direction** to the the stop.
- Replace the holder with the bulb into the lamp housing and turn **in a clockwise** direction to the stop.

Technical data

Technical data

Vehicle data

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Vehicle identification data	224
Operating weight and payload	224
Measurement of fuel consumption and CO ₂ emissions according to ECE Regulations and EU Directives	225
Dimensions	226
Vehicle-specific information depending on engine type	227
Multi-purpose vehicles (AF)	231

The details given in the vehicle's technical documentation always take precedence over the details in the Owner's Manual.

The listed performance values were determined without performance-reducing equipment, e.g. air conditioning system.

Vehicle identification data

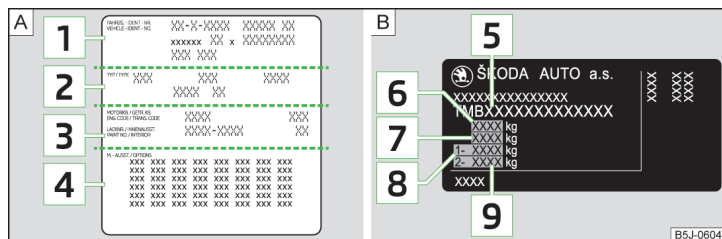


Fig. 209 Vehicle data sticker/type plate

Vehicle data sticker

The vehicle data sticker » Fig. 209 - [A] is located on the base of the luggage compartment and is also fixed into the service schedule.

The vehicle data sticker contains the following data.

- 1 Vehicle identification number (VIN)
- 2 Vehicle type
- 3 Gearbox code/paint number/interior equipment/engine output/engine code
- 4 Partial vehicle description

Type plate

The type plate » Fig. 209 - [B] is located at the bottom of the B-pillar on the right driver's side.

The type plate contains the following data.

- 5 Vehicle identification number (VIN)
- 6 Maximum permissible gross weight
- 7 Maximum permissible towed weight (towing vehicle and trailer)
- 8 Maximum permissible front axle load
- 9 Maximum permissible rear axle load

Vehicle identification number (VIN)

The vehicle identification number - VIN (vehicle body number) is stamped into the engine compartment on the right hand suspension strut dome. This number is also located on a sign on the lower left hand edge below the windscreen (together with a VIN bar code), and on the type plate.

Engine number

The engine number (three-digit code letter and serial number) is stamped onto the engine block.

! WARNING

Do not exceed the specified maximum permissible weights - risk of accident and damage!

Operating weight and payload

Operating weight

This value represents the minimum operating weight without additional weight-increasing equipment such as air conditioning system, spare wheel, or trailer hitch.

The specified operating weight is for orientation purposes only. ▶

The operating weight also contains the weight of the driver (75 kg), the weight of the operating fluids, the tool kit, and a fuel tank filled to 90 % capacity.

Operating weight of the vehicle » [page 227](#), *Vehicle-specific information depending on engine type*.

Payload

It is possible to calculate the approximate maximum payload from the difference between the permissible total weight and the operating weight.

The payload consists of the following weights.

- The weight of the passengers.
- The weight of all items of luggage and other loads.
- The weight of the roof, including the roof rack system.
- The weight of the equipment that is excluded from the operating weight.
- Trailer drawbar load when towing a trailer (max. 80 kg).

Note

If required, you can find out the precise weight of your vehicle at a specialist garage.

Measurement of fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions according to ECE Regulations and EU Directives

The data on fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions were not available at the time of going to press.

The data on fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions are given on the ŠKODA websites or in the sales and technical vehicle documentation.

The measurement of the intra-urban cycle begins with a cold start of the engine. Afterwards urban driving is simulated.

In the extra-urban driving cycle, the vehicle is accelerated and decelerated in all gears, corresponding to daily routine driving conditions. The driving speed varies between 0 and 120 km/h.

The calculation of the combined fuel consumption considers a weighting of about 37 % for the intra-urban cycle and 63 % for the extra-urban cycle.

Note

- The fuel consumption and emission levels given on the ŠKODA websites or in the commercial and technical vehicle documentation have been established in accordance with rules and under conditions that are set out by legal or technical rules for the determination of operational and technical data of motor vehicles.
- Depending on the extent of the equipment, the driving style, traffic conditions, weather influences and vehicle condition, consumption values can in practice result in fuel economy figures in the use of the vehicle that differ from the fuel consumption values listed on the ŠKODA websites or in the commercial and technical vehicle documentation.

Dimensions

Vehicle dimensions (mm)

	Superb	Superb GreenLine	Superb Combi	Superb Combi GreenLine
Length	4833	4833	4833	4833
Width	1817	1817	1817	1817
Width including exterior mirror	2009	2009	2009	2009
Height	1462/1482 ^{a)} / 1447 ^{b)}	1464/1449 ^{b)}	1511/1529 ^{a)} / 1497 ^{b)}	1511/1496 ^{b)}
Clearance	139/159 ^{a)} / 124 ^{b)} / 141 ^{c)}	140/125 ^{b)}	141/159 ^{a)} / 127 ^{b)} / 140 ^{c)}	141/126 ^{b)}
Wheel base	2761	2761	2761	2761
Track gauge front/rear	1545/1518 (1537/1510) ^{c)}	1545/1518	1545/1517 (1537/1510) ^{c)}	1545/1517

^{a)} Applies to vehicles with a rough road package.

^{b)} Applies to vehicles with a sport chassis.

^{c)} Applies to vehicles with a 3.6 l/191 kW FSI engine.

Vehicle-specific information depending on engine type

The specified values have been determined in accordance with rules and under conditions set out by legal or technical requirements for determining operational and technical data for motor vehicles.

1.4 ltr./92 kW TSI engine

Output (kW at rpm)	Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm ³)
92/5000	200/1500-4000	4/1390
Performance and Weights		
	Superb MG6	Superb Combi MG6
Top speed (km/h)	204	203
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	10.5	10.6
Operating weight (in kg)	1467	1489
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1400 ^{a)} / 1500 ^{b)}	
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	730	740

^{a)} Uphills up to 12 %

^{b)} Uphills up to 8 %

1.8 l/112 kW TSI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm at rpm)			Number of cylinders/Displacement (cm ³)		
112/4300-6200	250/1500-4200			4/1798		
Performance and Weights						
	Superb MG6	Superb DSG7	Superb MG6 4x4	Superb Combi MG6	Superb Combi DSG7	Superb Combi MG6 4x4
Top speed (km/h)	219	218	215	217	216	213
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.8	8.7	8.8	8.9	8.8	8.9
Operating weight (in kg)	1496	1508	1587	1518	1530	1609
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1500 ^{a)} / 1700 ^{b)}		1600 ^{a)} / 1800 ^{b)}	1500 ^{a)} / 1700 ^{b)}		1600 ^{a)} / 1800 ^{b)}
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	750					

^{a)} Uphills up to 12 %

^{b)} Uphills up to 8 %

1.8 ltr./118 kW TSI engine

Output (kW at rpm)	Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)			Number of cylinders/displacement (cm ³)		
118/4500-6200	250/1500-4500			4/1798		
Performance and Weights	Superb MG6	Superb DSG7	Superb MG6 4x4	Superb Combi MG6	Superb Combi DSG7	Superb Combi MG6 4x4
Top speed (km/h)	222	222	219	221	221	218
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.2	8.4	8.4	8.3	8.5	8.5
Operating weight (in kg)	1496	1508	1587	1518	1530	1609
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1500 ^{a)} / 1700 ^{b)}		1600 ^{a)} / 1800 ^{b)}	1500 ^{a)} / 1700 ^{b)}		1600 ^{a)} / 1800 ^{b)}
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	750					

^{a)} Uphills up to 12 %

^{b)} Uphills up to 8 %

2.0 ltr./147 kW TSI engine

Output (kW at rpm)	Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)		Number of cylinders/displacement (cm ³)	
147/5100-6000	280/1700-5000		4/1984	
Performance and Weights	Superb DSG6		Superb Combi DSG6	
Top speed (km/h)	240		238	
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	7.7		7.8	
Operating weight (in kg)	1540		1562	
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1600 ^{a)} / 1800 ^{b)}			
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	750			

^{a)} Uphills up to 12 %

^{b)} Uphills up to 8 %

3.6 ltr/191 kW FSI engine

Output (kW at rpm)	Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm ³)
191/6000	350/2500-5000	6/3597
Performance and Weights		
	Superb DSG6 4x4	Superb DSG6 4x4
Top speed (km/h)	250	250
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	6.4	6.5
Operating weight (in kg)	1704	1726
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	2000	
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	750	

1.6 ltr./77 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW at rpm)	Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)			Number of cylinders/displacement (cm ³)
77/4400	250/1500-2500			4/1598
Performance and Weights				
	Superb MG6	Superb DSG7	Superb Combi MG6	Superb Combi DSG7
Top speed (km/h)	194/197 ^{a)}	193	192/195 ^{a)}	192
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	12.1/12.2 ^{a)}	12.2	12.2/12.3 ^{a)}	12.3
Operating weight (in kg)	1512/1519 ^{a)}	1519	1534/1541 ^{a)}	1541
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1500 ^{b)} / 1700 ^{c)}	1200 ^{b)} / 1400 ^{c)}	1500 ^{b)} / 1700 ^{c)}	1200 ^{b)} / 1400 ^{c)}
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	750			

^{a)} GreenLine

^{b)} Uphills up to 12 %

^{c)} Uphills up to 8 %

2.0 ltr./103 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW at rpm)	Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)			Number of cylinders/displacement (cm ³)		
103/4200	320/1750-2500			4/1968		
Performance and Weights	Superb MG6	Superb DSG6	Superb MG6 4x4	Superb Combi MG6	Superb Combi DSG6	Superb Combi MG6 4x4
Top speed (km/h)	212	212	210	211	210	208
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	10.0	10.1	10.3	10.1	10.2	10.4
Operating weight (in kg)	1532	1554	1609	1554	1576	1631
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1800		2000	1800		2000
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	750					

2.0 ltr./125 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW at rpm)	Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)			Number of cylinders/displacement (cm ³)		
125/4200	350/1750-2500			4/1968		
Performance and Weights	Superb MG6	Superb DSG6	Superb DSG6 4x4	Superb Combi MG6	Superb Combi DSG6	Superb DSG6 4x4
Top speed (km/h)	228	222	219	226	221	218
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.6	8.6	8.7	8.7	8.7	8.8
Operating weight (in kg)	1540	1557	1634	1562	1579	1656
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1800		2000	1800		2000
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	750					

Multi-purpose vehicles (AF)

Engine	Maximum permissible gross weight (kg)		
1.4 ltr./92 kW TSI	MG6		
	2032		
1.8 ltr./118 kW TSI	MG6	DSG7	MG6 4x4
	2061	2073	2152
2.0 l/147 kW FSI	DSG6		
	2105		
3.6 l/191 kW FSI	DSG6 4x4		
	2267		
1.6 ltr./77 kW TDI CR	MG6	DSG7	
	2077/2084 ^{a)}	2084	
2.0 ltr./103 kW TDI CR	MG6	DSG6	MG6 4x4
	2097	2119	2174
2.0 ltr./125 kW TDI CR	MG6	DSG6	DSG6 4x4
	2105	2122	2199

^{a)} GreenLine

Index

A

Abroad

Driving abroad	150
Unleaded petrol	150

ABS

Operation	152
Warning light	36

Accessories

	169
--	-----

Adaptive headlights (AFS)

	68
--	----

Adjust

Auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation)	117
---	-----

Adjusting

Belt height	13
Exterior mirrors	78
Head restraints	81
Interior mirror	77
Manual air conditioning	112
Seats	79, 80
Steering wheel	8

Adjusting the seats

	7, 79
--	-------

Adjustment

Headlight beam	66
----------------	----

Aerial

See windows	175
-------------	-----

AFS

Warning light	36
---------------	----

Airbag

Deactivating	19
Deactivating the front passenger airbag	20
Deployment	14
Front airbag	15
Head airbag	18
Indicator light	38
Knee airbag	16
Modifications and damage to the airbag system	171
Side airbag	17

Airbag system

	14
--	----

Air conditioning system

	108
--	-----

Air outlets

	108
--	-----

Climatronic

	113
--	-----

Manual air conditioning system

	110
--	-----

Air outlets

	108
--	-----

Air recirculation

	115
--	-----

Alarm

	115
--	-----

Switching off

	54
--	----

Triggering

	54
--	----

Anti-theft alarm system

	54
--	----

Activating/deactivating

	54
--	----

Trailer

	168
--	-----

Antilock brake system (ABS)

	152
--	-----

Armrest

	85
--	----

front

	85
--	----

rear

	85, 94
--	--------

Artificial leather

	178
--	-----

Ashtray

	89
--	----

ASR

	35
--	----

Warning light

	35
--	----

Assist systems

	151
--	-----

ABS

	36, 152
--	---------

ASR

	35
--	----

Cruise Control System

	158
--	-----

DSR

	152
--	-----

EDL

	152
--	-----

ESC

	35, 151
--	---------

HBA

	152
--	-----

HHC

	153
--	-----

Park assist

	154
--	-----

Parking aid

	153
--	-----

START-STOP

	159
--	-----

TCS

	152
--	-----

Auto Check Control

	31
--	----

Automatic driving lamp control

	68
--	----

Automatic gearbox

	142
--	-----

Selector lever-emergency unlocking

	213
--	-----

Starting-off and driving

	144
--	-----

Tiptronic

	143
--	-----

Using the selector lever

	142
--	-----

Automatic gearbox modes

	142
--	-----

Automatic load deactivation

	193
--	-----

Automatic retractable cargo cover (Superb

Combi)	99
--------	----

Automatic transmission

	144
--	-----

Kickdown

	144
--	-----

Malfunction

	144
--	-----

Selector lever lock

	143
--	-----

AUX

	90
--	----

Installation in the storage compartment

	90
--	----

Auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation)

	116
--	-----

Adjust

	117
--	-----

Radio remote control

	118
--	-----

Switching on/off

	117
--	-----

Avoiding damage to the vehicle

	149
--	-----

Driving through water

	149
--	-----

Avoiding damage to your vehicle

	149
--	-----

B

Ball head

	165
--	-----

Check fitting

	165
--	-----

Fitting

	164
--	-----

Ready position

	164
--	-----

Removing

	165
--	-----

Battery

	211
--	-----

In the remote control key

	211
--	-----

iReplace the remote control of the auxiliary heater (parking heater)

	211
--	-----

Belts

	10
--	----

Belt tensioners

	13
--	----

Bonnet

	183
--	-----

Closing

	183
--	-----

Opening

	183
--	-----

Warning light

	34
--	----

Boot

	99
--	----

Automatic retraction (Superb Combi)

	99
--	----

Extending variable loading floor

	103
--	-----

Folding hook	97	Car park ticket holder	87	Cleaning	169
Non-closable side pocket (Superb Combi)	100	Carrier	106	Alcantara	178
Removable Light (Superb Combi)	101	Cavity protection	176	Artificial leather	178
Roll-up boot cover (Superb Combi)	99	CD changer	133	cloths	178
Side compartment with battery	100	Central locking	48	Covers of electrically heated seats	178
Boot cover (Superb Combi)	99	Central locking button	52	Headlight lenses	175
Boot lid	55	Changing		Natural leather	177
automatic locking	56	Brake fluid	189	Plastic parts	174
Warning light	34	Engine oil	187	Wheels	176
(Superb Combi)	56	Wheels	201	Climatronic	113
Brake		Changing a wheel		Air recirculation	115
Information messages	33	Follow-up work	202	automatic mode	114
Warning light	33	Preliminary work	202	Control elements	113
Brake booster	141	Remove and attaching a wheel	202	Controlling blower	116
Brake fluid	189	Charging a vehicle battery	192	Cooling system	114
Changing	189	Check		Defrosting windscreen	116
Checking	189	Fit ball head properly	165	Setting the temperature	114
Information messages	33	Checking		Clothes hook	92
Brake pads		Battery electrolyte level	191	Cockpit	
warning light	38	Brake fluid	189	12-Volt power outlet	90
Brakes		Coolant	188	Ashtray	89
Brake assist systems	151	Engine oil	186	Cigarette lighter	89
Brake booster	141	Oil level	186	General view	27
Brake fluid	189	Windscreen washer fluid	184	Lighting	71
Handbrake	141	Children and safety	21	Practical equipment	86
Running in	145	Child safety		Storage compartments	86
Braking		Side airbag	22	Comfort control	
Information on braking	140	Child safety lock	53	window	61
Breakdown kit	205	Child seat		COMING HOME	70
Break recommendation		Classification	23	Compartments	86
See Fatigue detection	162	ISOFIX	23	Computer	
Bulbs		on the front passenger seat	21	See multifunction display	41
Replacing	219	TOP TETHER	24	Convenience operation	
Button in the driver's door		Use of child seats	23	sliding / tilting roof	63
Electric power windows	59	Use of ISOFIX child seats	24	sliding / tilting roof (Superb Estate)	65
C		Chrome parts		convenience turn signal	67
Car care	169	refer to Taking care of your vehicle	174	Coolant	187
Car computer		Cigarette lighter	89	Checking	188
See multifunction display	41			Information messages	34
				Replenishing	188

Unlocking the driver's door	212	Extending variable loading floor		Fuel consumption	146, 225
Unlocking the tailgate	212	Partial extension	103	Fuel reserve	
Emergency equipment		Extending variable loading floor	103	Warning light	37
Fire extinguisher	200	Divide boot	103	Fuses	
First aid kit	200	Movable lashing eyes	105	Assignment	215
Jack	201	Extending variable loading floor		Colour coding	215
Vehicle tool kit	201	Fixing set	104	Fuse assignment in the engine compartment	218
Warning triangle	200			Replacing	215
Emissions	225				
Engine		F		G	
Running in	145	Fastening elements	97	Gearbox	
Engine compartment	182	Fatigue detection	162	Warning messages	31
Brake fluid	189	Function	162	Gear change	
Coolant	188	Information messages	162	Gear recommendation	40
Overview	184	Films	175	Information on the selected gear	40
Vehicle battery	189	Fire extinguisher	200	Gear changing	
Engine number	224	First aid kit	200	Gear stick	141
Engine oil	185	Floor covering		General view	
Capacity	185	Fixing	98	Cockpit	27
Changing	187	Fog lights	69	Generator	
Checking	186	Warning light	39	Indicator light	33
Information message	34	Fog lights with CORNER function	69	Glasses storage box	91
Replenishing	187	Folding hook	97	Glow plug system	
Specifications	185	Fold in passenger's mirror	78	Warning light	36
Engine oil level		Footmats	142	GSM	122, 124
Warning light	35	see footmats	142		
Engine oil pressure		Force limit		H	
Warning light	34	Electric boot lid (Superb Combi)	57	Handbrake	141
Entry lighting	73	Power windows	61	Warning light	33
Environment	146	Sliding/tilting roof	62	Hands-free system	
Environmental compatibility	148	Sliding/tilting roof (Superb Combi)	64	Voice control	129
Environmentally friendly driving	146	Front airbag	15	Hazard warning light system	70
EPC		Front door warning light	72	HBA	152
Warning light	37	Front interior light	71	Head airbag	18
ESC		Fuel	179	Headlight cleaning system	
Function	151	Diesel	181	Headlight cleaning system	77
Warning light	35	Fuel gauge	30		
Exhaust inspection system		refer to Fuel	179		
Warning light	36	Refuelling	180		
		Unleaded petrol	180		

Headlights		Fuel gauge	30	Lever	
Driving abroad	150	Overview	28	Main beam	67
Headlight cleaning system	77	Revolutions counter	29	Turn signal	67
Replacing a bulb	220	see instrument cluster	28	Windscreen wipers	76
Head restraint	81	Speedometer	29	Licht	
Heater		Temperature gauge	29	COMING HOME / LEAVING HOME	70
Windscreen and rear window	73	Warning lights	32	Light	
Heating		Interior monitor	54	Cockpit	71
Exterior mirrors	78	Internet connection	127	Fog lights with CORNER function	69
Seats	83	ISOFIX	23	Replacing bulbs	219
HHC	153			Travel mode	69
Hill Hold Control (HHC)	153	J		Light bulbs	
Horn	27	Jack	201	Rear light (Superb Combi)	222
Hydraulic Brake Assist (HBA)	152	Jacking points		Lighting	
		Raise vehicle	203	Luggage compartment	95
		Jump-starting	207	Lights	65
I				Adaptive headlights (AFS)	68
Ignition	136	K		Automatic driving lamp control	68
Immobilizer	136	KESY	50	Daylight running	67
Individual settings		Information message	51	Fog lights	69
Locking	52	Lock / unlock the steering	138	Hazard warning light system	70
Unlocking	52	Locking	50	Headlight beam adjustment	66
Inertia reels	13	Starting the engine	139	Headlight flasher	67
Information message		Switching off the engine	139	Instrument lighting	66
see KESY	51	Switch off ignition	138	Low beam lights	66
Information system	39	Switch on ignition	138	Main beam	67
Compass point display	46	Unlocking	50	Parking lights	66, 71
Display a low temperature	40	Key		Rear fog light	69
Door warning	41	Starting the engine	136	Switching on and off	66
Gear recommendation	40	Stopping the engine	137	Tourist lights	69
MAXI DOT display	44	Knee airbag	16	Turn signal	67
Multifunction display	41			Warning lights	32
Operation	40	L		Lock	
Service interval display	46	Lamp		Remote control	49
instrument cluster		Warning light	36	Vehicle key	49
Auto Check Control	31	Lamp failure		Locking	
Instrument cluster	28	Warning light	36	Individual settings	52
Counter for distance driven	30	LEAVING HOME	70	KESY	50
Display	29			Locking and unlocking the vehicle from the inside	52
Display of the second speed	31				

Passive safety		Rear-view mirror		Bulbs	219
Before setting off	6	Exterior mirrors	78	Fuses	215
Driving safety	6	Fold in passenger mirror	78	Fuses in the dash panel	216
Safety equipment	6	Synchronous adjustment of the rear-view mirror	78	Fuses in the engine compartment	217
Passive Safety	6	Rear fog light	69	Low beam bulb	220
Payload	224	Warning light	36	Wiper blades	214
Pedals	142	Rear interior light	72	Replenishing	
Footmats	142	Rear mirror	77	Coolant	188
Petrol		Interior mirror	77	Engine oil	187
refer to Fuel	180	Rear seats		Windscreen washer fluid	184
Polishing the paintwork		Seat folded forward Combi	86	Revolutions counter	29
See Taking care of your vehicle	174	Rear window - heater	73	Roof luggage rack	
Power outlet		Recirculated air mode		Attachment points	107
12 V	90	Manual air conditioning	112	Roof rack system	106
Power Steering / steering lock (KESY system)		Refuelling	180	Roof load	107
warning light	34	Fuel	180	Running-in	
Power windows		Remote control		The first 1500 km	145
Button in the front passenger door	61	lock	49	Running in	
Practical features	86	Replacing the battery	211	Brake pads	145
12-Volt power outlet	90	Synchronisation process	211	Engine	145
Storage compartment for umbrella	93	unlock	49	Tyres	145
Storage compartment in rear centre console	93	Remote control key			
Storage compartment on the passenger side	92	Replacing the battery	211	S	
Storage compartment under the armrest, front seat	90	Removable lights (Superb Combi)		SAFE	
Storage compartment under the passenger seat	92	Changing rechargeable light batteries	101	see Safe securing	51
Storage net in the front centre console	91	Removable Light (Superb Combi)		SAFELOCK	
Storage pockets on the front seats	93	Remove light	101	see Safe securing	51
		Removable ski bag	95	Safe securing	51
R		Removable variable loading floor		Safety	6
Radiator fan	184	Fit and remove	104	Child safety	21
Radio reception		Repairs and technical alterations	169	Child safety seats	21
See windows	175	Replace		Correct seated position	7
Radio remote control		Vehicle battery	192	Head restraints	81
Auxiliary heating	118	Replacing		ISOFIX	23
Raise vehicle	203	Bulb for main beam	221	TOP TETHER	24
		Bulb for main beam and daytime running lights	220	Saving electrical energy	146
		Bulb for the fog light	221	Screens	
		Bulb for the licence plate light	222	see Sun screen in the rear doors	74
		Bulb in rear light (Superb Combi)	223	Seals	
				Taking care of your vehicle	174

Seat belt		Side compartment in boot with battery	100	Steering lock / unlock	
warning light	33	Side compartments in the luggage compartment		see KESSY	138
Seat belts	10	ment	99	Steering wheel	8
Belt tensioners	13	ski bag	95	Stopping the engine	
Cleaning	178	Sliding/tilting roof		Key	137
fastening and unfastening	12	Close (Superb Combi)	64	Storage compartment in rear centre console	93
Height adjustment	13	Closing	62	Storage compartment on the passenger side	92
Inertia reels	13	Closing the sun screen (Superb Combi)	64	Storage compartments	86
The physical principle of a frontal collision	11	Electric sliding/tilting roof	62	Storage compartment under the passenger seat	92
Seat features	83	Emergency operation	213	Storage pockets on the front seats	93
Seats		Opening/closing the sun screen (Superb Combi)	64	Storing skis	94
Armrest rear	85	Opening and tilting	62	Sun screen	74
Armrest, front	85	Opening and tilting (Superb Combi)	64	Sun screen in the rear doors	74
Convenience features of passenger seat	85	Operation	62	Sun visors	74
Electric adjustment	80	Operation (Superb Combi)	64	Switch	
Head restraints	81	Snow chains	199	see Ignition	136
Heating	83	Spare wheel	197	Switching lights on and off	66
Manually adjusting	80	Speedometer	29	Switching off the engine	
save	82	see speedometer	29	see KESSY	139
Seat backrests	85	Speed symbol		Switch off ignition	
Storing in memory of remote control key	82	See Wheels	196	Refer to KESSY	138
Ventilated front seats	84	Spoiler	171	Switch on ignition	
Seats and useful equipment	79	START-STOP	159	Refer to KESSY	138
Adjusting the seats	79	Manually deactivating/activating the system	161	Synchronous adjustment of the rear-view mirror	78
see automatic gearbox		Operating conditions of the system	160		
Manual shifting of gears on the multifunction steering wheel	143	operation in vehicles with automatic gearbox	160		
Selector lever		operation in vehicles with manual gearbox	160		
Refer to Selector lever	142	system-related automatic start-up	161		
Selector lever lock / starter (system KESSY)		Starting and stopping the engine - KESSY	137		
Warning light	39	Starting and stopping the engine using the key	135		
Service	170	Starting engine			
Service interval display	46	Jump-starting	207	Tailgate	
Service intervals	169	Starting the engine		TwinDoor	56
Setting	30	Jump-starting	207	Taking care of the vehicle	
Setting the	30	Key	136	Natural leather	177
Shelves	86	see KESSY	139	Seat belts	178
Shifting gears		START STOP		Taking care of your vehicle	
Driving and saving energy	146	Information messages	161	Automatic car wash system	173
Side airbag	17	Jump-starting	208	Cavity protection	176
				Chrome parts	174
				Cleaning the wheels	176
				Decorative films	175

T

Door lock cylinders	175	Trailer stabilisation	168	Unlocking	
Headlight lenses	175	Transport		Individual settings	52
High-pressure cleaner	173	Luggage compartment	95	KESSY	50
Plastic parts	174	Roof rack system	106	Unlocking and locking	48
Polishing the paintwork	174	Transporting children safely	21	Useful equipment	
Rubber seals	174	TSA	168	Ashtray	89
Taking care of the interior	176	Turn signal	67	Car park ticket holder	87
Taking care of your vehicle exterior	173	Turn signal system		Cigarette lighter	89
Washing	172	Warning light	38	Clothes hook	92
Washing by hand	172	Twindoor		Cup holders	88
Wash system	173	see boot lid	55	Glasses storage box	91
Wax treatment	174	Two-way radio systems	119	Removable ski bag	95
Taking care of your vehicles		Type plate	224	Seat backrest with long-cargo channel	94
Fabric covers	178	Tyre inflation pressure		Storage compartment in the front centre console	88
TCS		Warning light	38	Storage compartment on the driver's side	87
Operation	152	Tyre load-bearing capacity		Storage compartments in the doors	88
Technical data	224	See Wheels	196	Using the information system	40
Telephone	122, 124	Tyre pressure monitor		Using the selector lever	142
Temporary spare wheel	197	Setting	196	V	
Tilting roof		Tyre repair		Variable loading floor	102
see Electric sliding/tilting roof	62	Check pressure	206	Dividing the luggage compartment	102
Tiptronic	143	Preparations	205	Remove	102
Tools	201	Sealing and inflating the tyre	206	slides off on aluminium rails	103
TOP TETHER	24	Tyres	193	Vehicle battery	
Towing	208	Inflation pressure	194	Automatic load deactivation	193
Towing a trailer	163	New	195	charging	192
Towing device		See Wheels	195	Checking the battery electrolyte level	191
Description	163	Sizes	194	Cover	191
Drawbar load	163	Tyre wear indicator	194	Disconnecting and reconnecting	192
Use and care	166	U		Operation in winter	191
Towing eye		Umbrella		Replace	192
Front	209	Tray	93	Safety instructions	189
Rear	210	Underbody protection	176	Vehicle care	
Towing protection	54	Unleaded petrol	150	Alcantara	178
Traction Control System (TCS)	152	Unlock		Artificial leather	178
Trailer	163, 166	Remote control	49	Cloths	178
13-pin power socket	167	Vehicle key	49	Vehicle Condition	
driving with a trailer	167			see Auto Check Control	31
Loading	166				
Safety eye	167				

Vehicle data sticker	224
Vehicle dimensions	226
Vehicle height	226
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)	224
Vehicle key	
lock	49
unlock	49
Vehicle length	226
Vehicle tool kit	201
Vehicle width	226
Visibility	73
Visors	
see Sun screen	74
see Sun visors	74
W	
Warning at excessive speeds	43
Warning lights	32
warning messages	
Diesel particulate filter	37
Warning symbols	
see Warning lights	32
Warning triangle	200
Washing	169
Automatic car wash system	173
by hand	172
Chrome parts	174
High-pressure cleaner	173
Water	
Driving through	149
Wax treatment	
See Taking care of your vehicle	174
Weights	
Maximum permissible weights	224
Wheel bolts	
Anti-theft wheel bolt	204
Caps	198
Loosening and tightening	203
Wheel rims	193

Wheels

Bolts	198
Changing	201
Full trim	198
General information	193
Load index	196
Replacing wheels	194
Service life of tyres	194
Snow chains	199
Spare wheel	197
Speed symbol	196
Storing wheels	194
Temporary spare wheel	197
Tyre pressure	194
Tyre sizes	194
Tyre wear indicator	194
Unidirectional tyres	196
Winter tyres	199
Wi-Fi	127
Windows	175
Deicing	175
See electric power windows	59
Windscreen	
Deicing	175
Heater	73
Windscreen washer fluid	
Checking	184
Replenishing	184
Warning light	38
Winter	184
Windscreen washers	
Windscreen washers	76
Windscreen washer system	184
Windscreen wiper	
Replacing the rear window wiper blade	215
Windscreen wipers	
Operating	76
Replacing the windscreen wiper blades	214
Windscreen washer fluid	184
Windscreen wipers and washers	75

Winter

Deicing windows	175
Winter operation	198
Snow chains	199
Winter tyres	199
Winter tyres	
See Wheels	199
WLAN	127
MAXI DOT	128
Network connection	128
Switching off	128
Switching on	128

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. pursues a policy of constant product and model development. We trust that you will understand that changes to models in terms of shape, equipment and engineering, may be introduced at any time. The information about appearance, performances, dimensions, weight, standards and functions of the vehicle is correct at the time of publication. Some equipment might only be introduced at a later date, or might only be offered in certain markets; information is provided by ŠKODA Partners. It is therefore not possible for legal claims to be made based on the data, illustrations and descriptions contained in this Owner's Manual.

Reprinting, reproduction, translation, or any other use, either in whole or in part, is not permitted without the written consent of ŠKODA AUTO a.s..

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. expressly reserves all rights relating to copyright laws.

Subject to change.

Issued by: ŠKODA AUTO a.s.

© ŠKODA AUTO a.s. 2014

ŠKODA Service App - ŠKODA Service in your pocket

The ŠKODA Service application is designed for smartphones operating on iOS and Android systems, and its purpose is to help ŠKODA AUTO customers in any difficult situation they may encounter on their travels.

My dealer - choose your nearest or preferred Service Centre.

Assistance - contact the Assistance Service or your favourite dealer.

My car - complete Owner's Manual and summary list of all control lamps for quick review



Available to download from AppStore for iOS and Google Play for Android.

ŠKODA Manual App - Know your vehicle

The ŠKODA Manual application aims on users of tablet PCs who are interested in ŠKODA vehicles or already own one. The application contains full featured digital version of the Owner's Manual for all current ŠKODA models.

- › Navigation through the **list of content**
- › Classical **reading page by page**
- › **Full text search** throughout the whole manual
- › **Bookmarks** for fast access to favourite chapters




www.skoda-auto.com

You also can do something for the environment!

The fuel consumption of your ŠKODA and the related pollutant emissions are determined crucially on how you drive.

The noise and the wear of the vehicle depend on the way how you deal with your vehicle.

This Owner's Manual shows you how to use your ŠKODA vehicle with utmost care for the environment while driving economically at the same time.

Also please pay attention to those parts in the Owner's Manual that are marked  below.

Work with us - for the sake of the environment.

Návod k obsluze
Superb anglicky 05.2014
S74.5610.16.20
3T0 012 720 AG